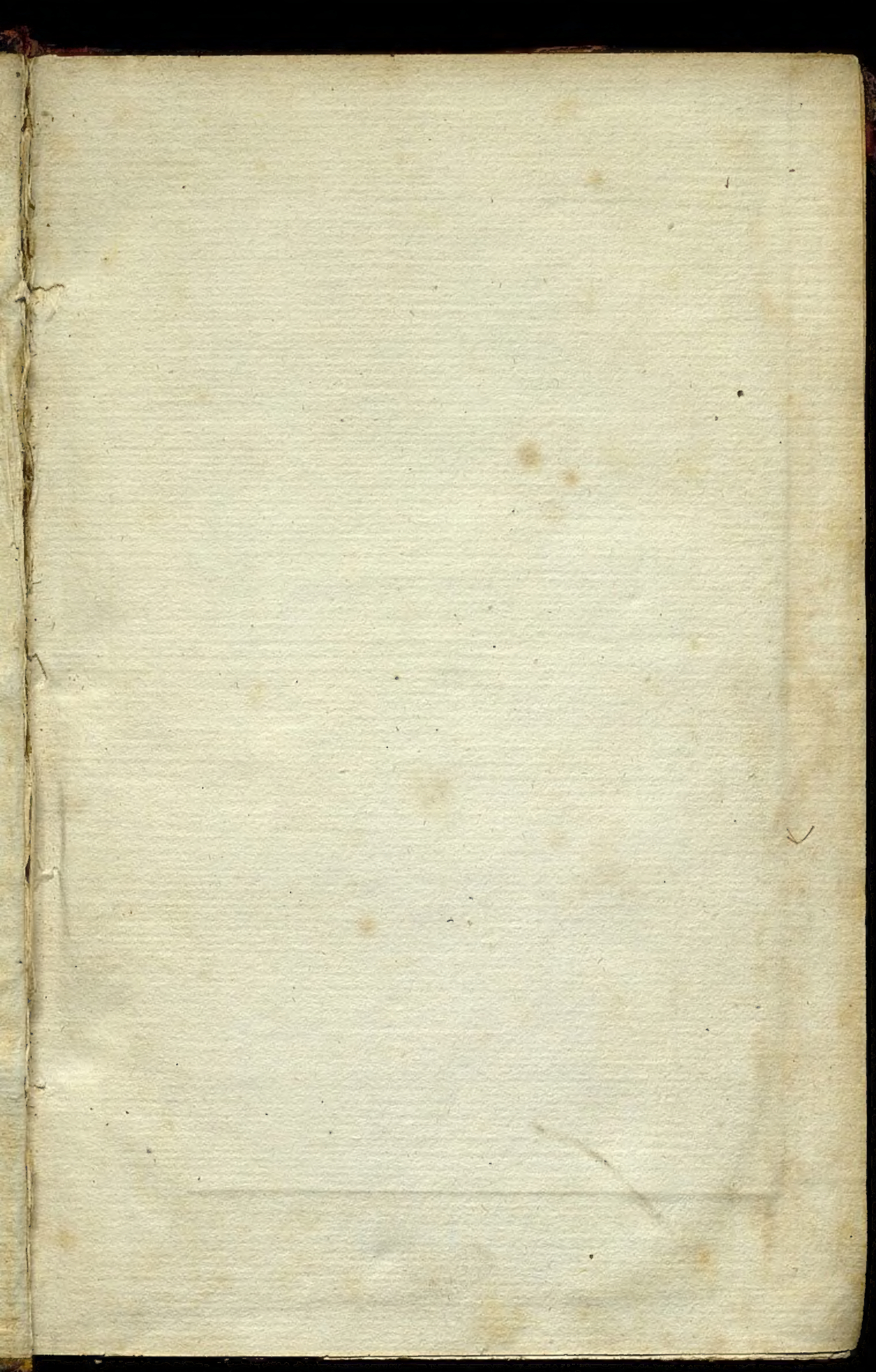


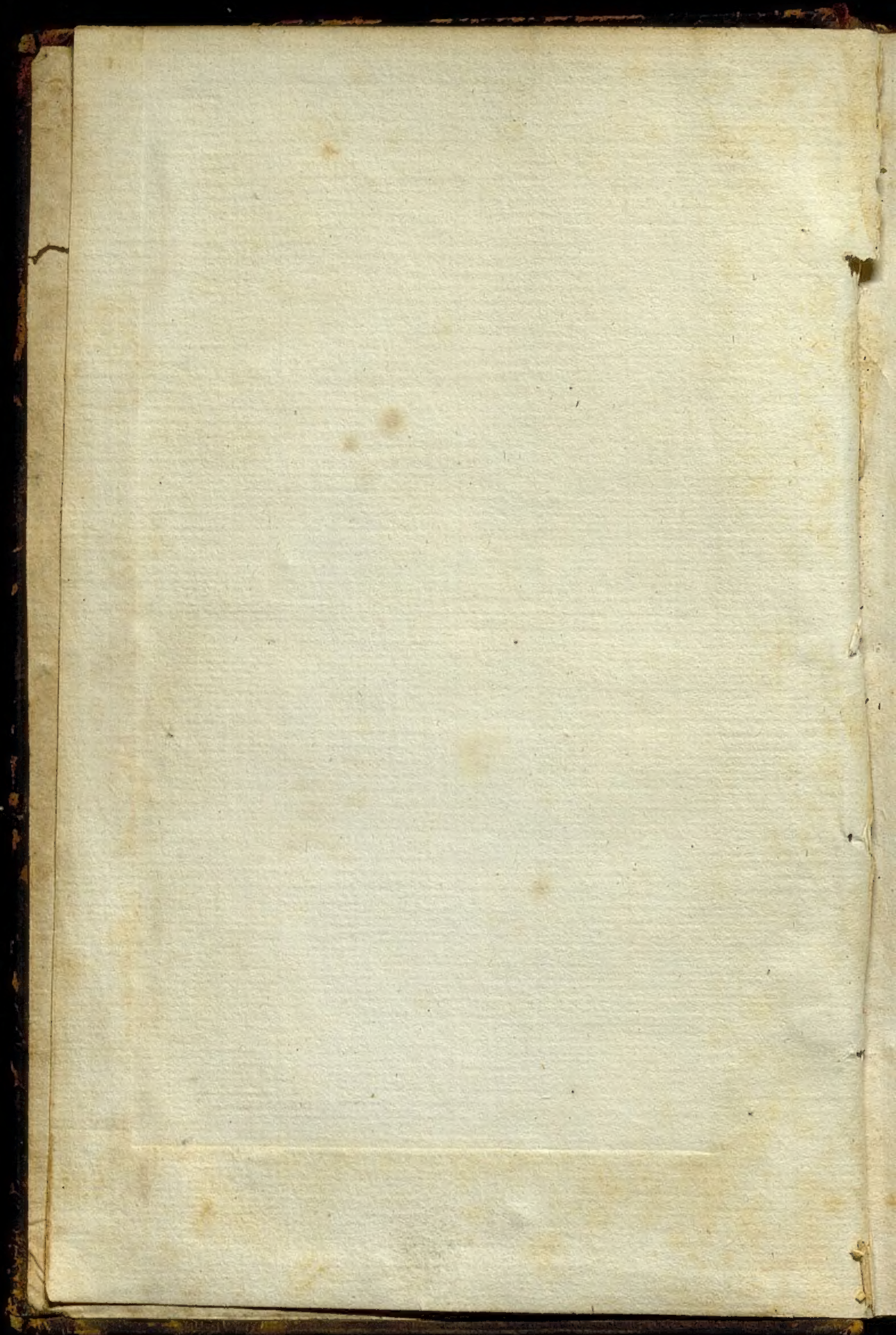


404











J. W. ...  
of the ...  
NORTHERN ...  
Grand ...  
the ...  
the ...  
the ...  
the ...  
the ...  
the ...

SIX ...

M.  
J.





*A MAP*  
of the  
**NORTHERN ASIA**  
*as it was about the time of the  
Grand Invasion of the Tatars into  
the Southern parts of Asia under  
the Conduct of Zingis Chan*  
*Adapted to the Genealogicall  
History of the Tatars.*

Scale  
100 German Leagues



A GENERAL  
HISTORY

~ OF THE

*Turks, Moguls, and Tatars,*

Vulgarly called

*TARTARS.*

TOGETHER

With a DESCRIPTION of the Countries  
they inhabit.

In TWO VOLUMES.

I. The Genealogical History of the *Tatars*, translated from the *Tatar* MANUSCRIPT written in the *Mogul* Language by *Abu'l Ghâzi Babâder*, *Khân* of *Khowârazm*.

II. An Account of the PRESENT STATE of the *Northern Asia*, as it includes *Grand Tatory*, (or the Countries possess'd by the *Moguls* and *Tatars*) and *Siberia* : With some Observations relating to *Great Russia*, *Turky*, *Arabia*, *Persia*, *India* and *China*.

---

*With Two MAPS exhibiting the Antient and Present  
State of GRAND TATARY.*

---

The whole made *English* from the *French*, with  
several Improvements and Additions.

---

L O N D O N :

Printed for J. and J. KNAPTON, J. DARBY, A. BETTESWORTH, F. FAYRAM, J. OSBORN and T. LONGMAN, J. PEMBERTON, C. RIVINGTON, F. CLAY, J. BATLEY, and AARON WARD. M.DCC.XXX.









# THE TRANSLATOR'S PREFACE.

**A** History of the several Branches of the Tatars is a great Curiosity; and this which we here present the Publick has the better Claim to its Regard as coming from a Tatar himself: tho possibly there are some, who, according to their narrow way of thinking, may reject it for the same Reason.

But whatever such Persons may fancy, 'tis certain the Tatars have made themselves remarkable for Erudition as well as Arms. That Zeal for the Encouragement of Learning which passed thro' the several Successions of Persian Kings, did not cease upon the Conquest of the Tatars, but descended even to them. It is to Hulaku, surnamed Il Khân, the Founder of their Monarchy in Persia, that we owe the Astronomical Tables of Nasîr al dîn al Tûsî, called from him Ilkhanian. He built a magnificent Observatory at Marâgha in Persia, and invited thither all the great Astronomers of his Time to observe the Motions of the Heavens. Gazan, or  
Kazan



Kazan Khân his 6th Successor, caused \* the History of the Moguls and Tatars to be written by his Wazîr (or as we write it Vizier) Fadl allah, from which the present History is chiefly extracted: and Abu sayd Khân the Great is remark'd to have spent most of his Time in Study.

If we pass from the Descendants of Zingîz Khân to those of Timûr-beg, or as our Author calls him Amîr Timûr, we shall find that Love for Learning still continue. Besides the magnificent Academy and Observatory erected at Samarkant, the first by the last mentioned Hero, and the other by his Grandson Ologh Beg; this last Monarch has made himself famous, among other things, for the Tables of Epochas, and the fixt Stars, which go under his Name, and will always remain as Monuments both of his Learning and Inclination to promote the Sciences. It is no Novelty in the East to find Kings among their Authors, and the Book before us is an Instance of two, the Father and the Son, who were both Khâns of Khowârazm.

Genius of the Tatars proved from their Conquests. It may appear at first sight a little out of the way to draw an Argument of the Tatar Genius from their Conquests: Events which we shall be told perhaps are the Effects of brutal Force, and in which Numbers only have had the Decision. But whoever shall place those three great Tatar Heroes in his view, I mean Zingîz Khân, Timûr-beg and Zungh-te, the last Conqueror of China; and shall consider from how small a Beginning, and by what degrees, they rose to such immense Power; the potent Neighbours they had to struggle with on all sides, and the various Turns of Fortune they underwent before they could even secure themselves at home: In short, that each of them, comparatively out of nothing, enlarged his little Canton to a prodigious Empire; and in the Compass of a single Reign, nay in a few Years of that Reign, con-



quer'd considerably more than the Romans did in 500 Years : These Facts, I say, weigh'd by a Person of Sense in all their Circumstances, as deliver'd to us by the Historians, whether Asiatick or European, who have wrote their respective Lives, must constrain him to acknowledge that nothing less than the most consummate Genius could be capable of conducting such Grand Designs ; and make him look upon the Heroes who form'd and executed them under so many Disadvantages (according to the just Remark of the French Editor \*, with regard to Zungh-te) as infinitely superior to our Alexanders and Cæsars.

Our Contempt for the Tatars would still lessen North perhaps, did we consider how nearly we stand re- Parts of lated to them : that our Ancestors came originally Europe originally from the North of Asia, and that our Customs, from Ta- Laws, and way of Living were formerly the same tary. with theirs : In short, that we are no other than a Colony of Tatars. It was from Tatary those People came, who under the successive Names of Kymbrians, Titans, Kelts and Gauls, possessed all the Northern Parts of Europe, and establish'd a mighty Empire there and in Asia, long before Greece was a Nation, or Rome had a Name. And what were the Goths, Huns, Alans, Swedes, Vandals, Franks, and other Tribes of People, who many Ages after descending southward overthrew the Roman Empire, but Swarms from the same Hive ? These Islands of ours beyond all doubt were peopled from Gaul ; and the Keltick Language which still subsists in French Britany, Wales, but more eminently thro'out Ireland (and which for its great Antiquity and Use, in explaining the Antiquities of even Greece and Rome themselves, ought highly to be valued) is a Demonstration that the Inhabitants are descended from that Tatar Nation. As for the Saxons, Danes and Normans, who in the latter Times made

\* Pag. 771.



*successive Conquests of England, every one knows, or at least believes, they came originally from Tatar.*

*Saxons  
from Kip-  
jak.*

*I might be able perhaps to carry this Point further, and alledge, not without some shew of Probability, that we are akin to the very Uzbeks whose Khân was the Author of the present History, since there appears a great Connection between the Saxon and the antient Language of Kipjak, or Kipchâk, of which we have a Specimen in the 4th Epistle of Busbequius, out of the Language of the Inhabitants of Krîm, who are originally of Kipjak as well as the Uzbeks. Busbequius owns their Speech, Manners, and Countenances to have a great resemblance with the Germans, but supposes the Krîm Tatars to be descended from them; nay, he brings it so near as to fancy they might be Saxons transplanted thither by the Emperor Charles the Great, in order to account for that Agreement. And our Conjecture will still appear more probable, in case there be any truth in the old Swedish Chronicles, which bring the \* Swedes from Kashgar.*

*This Affinity between us and the Tatars ought to render a History of them the more acceptable to us; and indeed a faithful and exact Chronology from antient Times of that extensive People would be of great Use in fixing their Migrations and Settlements from time to time in all Parts of Europe; but it is but of late that they have begun to keep Records of their Affairs any more than we; and their Antiquity is to be proved by the Testimony of other Nations, and not by any Monuments of their own.*

*Learning  
settled  
early be-  
yond the  
Oxus or  
Amu.*

*It is not easy to fix the Date when Learning passed into the Countries beyond the Oxus or Amu; but it may be presumed it is of a standing as old as the Name of Bukharia, one of the principal Provinces: Bukhar, as our Author tells us †, signifying in the Mogul Language a learned Man,*

\* Hist. Gengh. Khan, p. 116. † Pag. 108.

*because,*



## The Translator's P R E F A C E.

because, says he, all that have a mind to be instructed in the Languages and the Sciences go into Bukharia. This at least we are certain of, that Learning appeared very early there in the Times of the Arabians, and continued to flourish in those Provinces till the last Conquest of them by the Uzbeks, who are the present Possessors of Great Bukharia and Khowârazm, both of which have bred numbers of very famous Men: of whom for Bukharia I shall only mention Abu Aly Ebn Sina, vulgarly called Avicenna, and for the latter Abu Rihan, surnamed Al Biruni, the great Astronomer; who besides is the Scotus, or Doctor subtilis of the Mohammedans, and even surpassed Ebn Sina. At present indeed Learning is brought to decay in those once flourishing Countries, thro' the Rapines and Oppressions of the Uzbeks; and Khowârazm, which in the Time of Mamûn Ebn Mamûn was full of learned Men, we are told now by the Son of our Author\*, contains scarce any at all.

However, Abu'lghâzi Khân was not destitute of <sup>The Au-</sup> Abilities suitable to his Undertaking; and, if you <sup>thor's Abi-</sup> will believe himself†, he had the Art of writing His-<sup>lities.</sup> tory, as well as of War. This at least appears, that he understood the Turkish, the Persian, and perhaps the Arabik, besides the Mogul Language, in which he wrote his Book. And after all that can be said, every People are best able to write their own History. Other Nations, be they ever so near Neighbours, or superior to them in Politeness and Genius, cannot possibly be so well acquainted with their Affairs as themselves: And it is obvious from the Mistakes committed by the Persian Historians, that for a History of the Uzbeks one must have recourse to an Uzbek.

The Original, as the royal Author tells us, ‡ was History extracted partly from the Books written on whence this Subject, and partly from particular Me-<sup>extracted.</sup>

\* Pag. 374.

† See his Preface.

‡ Pag. 68.



## The Translator's PREFACE.

moirs of divers Mogul Tribes. *The Number of these Books he informs us elsewhere \* were eighteen, of which he only mentions Khoja Rashîd as the Chief. This Author is the same whom de la Croix in his History of Genghiz Khan, Herbelot and others, cite under the Name of Fadl allah. He is the first who wrote a History of the Moguls and Tatars at the Command of Gazan Khân before mentioned, from several Original Memoirs which that Monarch had collected by means of one Pulâd, or Fulâd, mentioned p. 30. who was sent into Tatory for that purpose. The first Volume, for Fadl allah's Work consists of three, is in the French King's Library, and has been translated by M. de la Croix the Son: And as it is the most authentick Account of the Original of the Tatars perhaps to be met with, it could be wish'd some kind Hand would communicate it to the Publick, as well as some other Translations of that Gentleman mentioned in the Preface to Timûr-beg.*

Contents  
of it.

Abu'l Ghâzi Khân has divided his History into nine Parts. The two first contain the History of the Moguls and Tatars, with an Account of all their Tribes, from Turk the first Founder of their Nation down to Zingîz Khân; the third relates the Life and Actions of that great Conqueror; the fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh and eighth treat of his four Sons and their Successors, in the respective Quarters of the Empire into which he divided it among them at his Death; and the ninth contains a particular History of the Khâns who have reigned over Khowârazm, from the Conquest of it by Shâh Bakht Khân to the Death of the Author Abu'l Ghâzi Khân, which happen'd in 1663. Throughout his History he has been particularly careful to mark all the Revolutions in each State, and give us the Pedigree of the new Family, which on such Occasions ascends the Throne; and that is the reason, I suppose, why he entitles it a Genealogical History, rather than

Why called Genealogical.



# The Translator's PREFACE.

vii

*a History of Successions, or the Reigns of the Tatar Monarchs, which seems to suit it better.*

*It is certainly a Satisfaction to know what any Original Nation have to say of themselves, whether it be of the Tatar authentick or not; and we find by the Account <sup>tars fabu-</sup> given here that the Original of the Tatars is fabu-<sup>lous.</sup> lous as well as that of other Nations. We have no authentick Proof that Turk the common Ancestor of these People was the eldest Son of Japhet, if there was ever such a Man. The History of Ogûz Khân, Founder of the first Empire of the Moguls, is a mere Legend. The Division which his Son makes of the Empire among his forty eight Relations, is possibly to account for the different Tribes and Nations into which Tatar is divided; and the long Wars and various Success after that between the Moguls and Tatars, seem to be only to display the Power of those two Rival Nations, and fill up the vacant Ages. At last the Tatars prevail in their Turn, and overthrow the Empire of the Moguls, the very Name of whom for four hundred Years is lost in the Mountain of Irgana Kon\*. That of the Tatars seems to be lost too, for we hear nothing of them during that time any more than of the others. Their melting their way out of the Mountains with seventy Bellows, is a whimsical Invention. It is not very probable that the Posterity of two Persons only and their Wives, who went into Irgana Kon, should become so numerous in 450 Years, as without the Knowledge of Arms to beat the Tatars, a People long inur'd to War at the first Onset, and*

\* In all likelihood this Fiction of the Moguls being inclosed in the Mountain of Irgana Kon, took its Rise from one of the like kind, which we find in Arabik Authors relating to the People of Rajûj and Majûj, or Gog and Magog, whom they suppose to be inclosed within the Mountain Cocaia or Caucasus, at the further end of all the North of Asia, so steep that there is no ascending it. See Geog. Nubiensis, p. 248, & 267. & D'Herbelot at Jagiounge & Magiounge.



*totally over-turning them, establish their Empire a second time. In short, they cannot carry their History farther back than their famous pretended Sally out of Irgana Kon, should we allow it genuine so high up: but it is to be suspected they had only some traditional and general Knowledge of their History before Zingîz Khân, of which Pulâd gather'd the scatter'd Fragments, as has been already observ'd.*

Proved  
from the  
Chronology.

*This appears still plainer from the Chronology, of which there are only two Periods mentioned in the first Part of the Tatar History; the first is from the Reign of Ogûz Khân to that of Zingîz Khân, which is said\* to contain the Space of about 4000 Years: so that reckoning back from the beginning of the Reign of Zingîz Khân in the 13th Year of his Age, the end of that of Ogûz Khân will fall in about the Year 2824 before Christ, which runs it up 500 Years beyond the Flood, and makes him contemporary with Kainan or Methuselah, instead of Kayumarras, first King of Persia, who was no Antediluvian, according to the best Historians.*

*The second Period of Time is mentioned † on occasion of the Name of Kayath, which coming from Kayan, who enter'd with Nagos into the Mountain of Irgana Kon, our Author says was lost for about 3000 Years, till revived in the six Sons of Kabul Khân, Zingîz Khân's Grandfather. By this Reckoning there were not quite 1000 Years between Ogûz Khân and Kayan; and taking away 450 for the time of the Moguls Abode in Irgana Kon till their sallying forth again and overthrowing the Tatars under Bertizena Khân, there will remain an Interval of 2550 Years from this last Khân to Kabûl Khân, which is too much by at least two thousand of the Number, considering the History places but seventeen Khâns in Succession between them; and allowing each of them thirty Years to his Reign, which is more than*



## The Translator's PREFACE.

ix

*we ought by Chronological Rules, the Sum of them all will amount but to 510 Years ; whereas according to our Author's Computation they must be allowed 250 Years apiece. 'Tis true, the allowing about 3000 Years for the Reigns of twenty Khâns between Bertizena and Zingîz Khân, is proportion'd well enough to the 1000 allowed for those between Ogûz Khân and Kayan, which are but six ; but then where is the Probability, I might say Possibility, of such long Reigns ? besides, if we may depend upon the Authority of Ebn Abd-allatîf, cited by de la Croix\*, who affirms that Buzenger, (by our Author called Budensir Mogak, the 11th in Succession from Bertizena, and 9th in degree before Zingîz Khan) lived in the Time of Abu Moslem, and D'Herbelot † observes they corresponded together, the Tatar Chronology must be false : for Abu Moslem, who was Governor of Khorasân, flourished about the Year of the Hejrah 132, or of Christ 749. at which time he expelled the Family of Ommiyah, and raised that of Abbâs to the Khalîfat : so that if Budensir Mogak was his Contemporary, he must have reigned about 427 Years before Zingîz Chân ; whereas according to the former Calculation his Reign must have preceded that Conqueror's 1350 Years, and falls in with the time of Antiochus Epiphanes, the 11th Syro-Macedonian King, about 174 Years before Christ.*

*I am obliged to shew the Defects of my Author, in order to prevent the Reader's being misled by a wrong Notion of Things relating to the Tatar Antiquities : but we are not to condemn the Whole for the Faults of a Part. If a History is to be rejected for having Fable mixt with it, what History would be read ? for all Nations have in the Accounts they give of their Original blended Fiction more or less with the Truth ; and our own Histories are no freer from this Abuse than that of the Ta-*

All Nations have mixt Fable with their History.

\* Hist. Genghiz Khan, p. 8.

† At Buzangir.

tars.



## The Translator's PREFACE.

Tatars and  
Persians  
Rivals in  
History as  
well as  
Arms.

tars. *A Nation once become powerful never cares to look back upon its obscure State, but would fain be thought to have always been considerable; and the Historians zealous for the Glory of their Country, endeavour by the help of Invention to put it upon a level with their Neighbours for Antiquity as well as Power; in which however they are generally so unskilful as to leave Marks by which their Forgery is detected. The History within this Period seems to be framed in opposition to the Persian, which is the only History we know of, except the Chinese, that mentions the Tatars, and which by the way is no more to be depended on for the better part of that Interval, especially in what regards Tatar, than the former. It must be observ'd that these two Nations have always been at Enmity together; and the Historians of either Party resolving to draw all the Honour to their own side, have endeavour'd to raise the Glory of one at the Disadvantage of the other. The Persian Historians make Tur, the Founder of the Turkish Nation, to be a Son of one of their first Monarchs, and represent their Kings as often overcome and made tributary by their Heroes. 'Tis true, they admit Afrasiab, King of Turkestân, reigning over Persia by Conquest for some time; but then the Persians upon his Male Administration turn him out again: and the continual Run of Advantages which they give their Nation over the Khakhân, King of Tatar, and the People of Abtela (who are the Khaganos and Ephthalites of the Greeks) makes the Turks and Tatars (for their Histories make no mention of the Moguls before Zingiz Khân) always appear in a Light much inferior to themselves thro' the whole Course of their History.*

*The Turkish or Tatarian History on the other hand extols the Exploits of their antient Kings in its turn; and having been framed much later than that*



## The Translator's PREFACE.

xi

that of its Neighbours, gives the Turks those Advantages over the Persians, which the Persian Historians gave their Nation over the Turks. The Inventors of these Histories, who lived in the flourishing Times of the Moguls Empire, disdaining to allow the Persians, who were then under their Dominion, ever to have held their Ancestors in subjection, have taken care not to insert any thing that may look that way. On the contrary, Ogûz Khân, Grandson of Mogul Khân, is made to over-run Irân or Persia at large after the Death of Kayumarras; and Afrasiab, whom the Persians acknowledge as a great Hero and Conqueror of Persia, is mentioned only as a King of a dependant or inferior Monarchy, and not in the Line of Mogul or Tatarian Emperors.

There is a certain Period in the History of all Tatar Nations, which separates the Spurious from the Genuine, and beyond which one cannot be sure of the Truth. The Reign of Zingîz Khân stands in the same Point in the History of the Tatars, as Romulus does in the Roman, and Mohammed in the Arabian History. But however uncertain or obscure the Tatar History may be before the Appearance of that Conqueror, we may depend upon what has been written of their Affairs since his Time, as being authorized by faithful Records; for that warlike People having made themselves famous throughout the East by the Conquest of the most flourishing Kingdoms of it, their Actions naturally became the Object of History in those Countries for more than two whole Ages; that they held the Empire over them, under the Descendants of those two mighty Conquerors, Zingîz Khân and Timûr Beg.

It must be confess'd our Author is too concise throughout, except in his second and ninth Books. He intended \* to have written more fully of the Empire and several Branches of the Moguls; but be-

The Author's Defects.



Unac-  
quainted  
with the  
several  
Parts of  
the Tatar  
History,

And of  
that of his  
Ancestors  
in Kipjak.

Defective  
in the His-  
tory of  
Khowâ-  
razm.

ing seized with a violent Fit of Sickness, he was obliged to abridge his Work that he might not leave it imperfect at his Death, which yet overtook him \* before he could finish it. We also find in this Author a Knowledge of foreign Countries very limited. What an absurd Description does he give of Alexander's Wall, and of the Nation of Yadsutz Madzuth†, which is a Corruption of the Arabic Yajûj and Majûj, or Gog and Magog? But making an Allowance for a Fault which he has in common with the Arabians, Greeks and Romans themselves, one would be apt to think no part of the Tatar Affairs should be unknown to a Tatar Prince who professes to write the History of them; and yet it is plain he was but little acquainted with the Khâns, the immediate Successors of Zingîz Khân in the Empire of the Moguls, who reigned in the Eastern Tatory, breaking off with Coplai Khân the fourth Emperor. He breaks off as abruptly with Amîr Timûr, without informing us who were his Successors in Ma wara'l nahr, till it was conquer'd by Shâh Bakht Soltân above fourscore Years after. Of all the Khâns who had reigned in Kashgar of the Race of Zingîz Khân, he mentions none but Togalak Tîmur Khân, and his Son Khiffer Khodsa, or Kesra Khoja Khân, who succeeded Amîr Timûr: But as for those who came after Kesra Khoja Khân, he only observes that they were of his Posterity; nay he confesses himself ignorant of the Successors of Hâji Geray Khân of Kipjak (who died about 1475) further than that the Khâns of Krîm are sprung from one of his Sons; tho the Khâns of Khowârazm and Great Bukharia are collateral Branches of the same Family, being all descended from Zuzi Khân, Son of Zingîz Chân.

One might also have expected this Author would have carry'd back the History of his Country into

\* Pag. 358.

† Pag. 43.



*its flourishing Times, and given an Account of the Empire of the Khowarazmians which continued for about 138 Years under seven, some make nine Monarchs, and was not inferior to that of the Moguls for Extent, when Zingiz Khân invaded Soltân Mohammed. They were the Inhabitants of this Country (mentioned in the Writers of the holy War by the Name of Khorosmins, but unknown to them and to almost all the Historians since as to the Parts from whence they came) who driven out by the Moguls, fled towards Syria, and gave the Christians in the Holy Land that fatal Blow about 1242, which they never could recover afterwards.*

*There is also in this History an Omission of several other Successions, particularly those of Turkestan, the Kâlmaks, or Kalmûks, and the Mungals. 'Tis to be observ'd also, that in several of his Successions he puts in but one Khân, where de la Croix mentions two or three, as in that of Kipjak, (tho I don't charge this as an Error on him) and the Dates of their Reigns are very rarely added. But these Defects are recompens'd by a Recital of a great many Particulars which are to be met with no where else: for besides a circumstantial History of the Uzbeks, his Ancestors, who have reigned over Khowârazm since Shâh Bakht Soltân conquer'd it, which is the Subject of his ninth Book, and seems to have been the Author's chief Design, we have intermixt with it in a good measure that of Ma-wara'nahr also, on occasion of the almost continual Wars between those two neighbouring States; by means of which we are able not only to rectify several Mistakes in Teixeira's and de la Croix's Account of the Uzbek Khâns who have reigned in that Country, taken from the Persian Historians, but to bring them down to the Time of our Author. To this may be added several Particulars occasionally mentioned relating to the Form of Govern-*

Several of  
ther Suc-  
cessions  
omitted.

The Au-  
thor exact  
in his His-  
tory of  
the Uzbek  
Khâns.



*Government, Manner of Fighting, and other Customs among the Tatars : In short, the History of Asia receives several Improvements from this Abridgment.*

And in his  
Account  
of the  
Turkish  
Tribes.

*But there are two Things for which this Author is chiefly valuable. The first is his Description of the several Turkish and Mogul Tribes, and the Countries they did originally or at present do inhabit, which takes up the best part of the second Book ; not to mention his Account of the Turkman Tribes in the ninth. Tho' tis probable this Part is not so complete as it would have been had the Author's Health permitted him to have written more fully on those Matters as he designed ; yet it is much more perfect and exact than the scatter'd and confused Account we find of some, not all of them, in M. de la Croix's History of Genghiz Khân, and may serve well enough till we can get a complete Translation of Fadl allah's History before mentioned, which is the first and best that was ever wrote of the Tatar Nations in any other Language but their own.*

Gives  
Light into  
the Geo-  
graphy of  
Grand  
Tatary.

*The second thing which makes this Author valuable, is the considerable Light he gives us into the Geography of Tatary, and particularly Khowârazm, which before we were almost intire Strangers to. There is not a Town nor scarce any Place of note in that Country, but what is mentioned upon occasion of some warlike Action or other, or of the frequent Partitions that have been made of them. We knew not before this Author discover'd it to us, that the River Amu divides it self into two Branches in the Country of Khowârazm ; and that one of them having quitted its antient Course to the Caspian Sea, turns northward, and throws it self into the Lake of Arall in the same Country. I shall only mention further, that by the Notices in this Author we find that Mankishlak, which is the  
only*



only Port of Khowârazm, and the usual Ferry to and from the Province of Shîrwân in Persia, ought to be placed at the Mouth of the southern Branch of the River Amu, in the most South Eastern Corner of the Caspian; whereas Geographers hitherto misled, I suppose, by the false or corrupted Journal of Anthony Jenkinson, have placed it on a large Bay in the North East Part of the same Sea and Country of Turkestân: which single Error has been the Occasion of introducing several others into the Maps of those Countries; as may be seen by de Lisle's late Map of Persia.

The French Editor draws an Argument for the Impartiality of our Author, from the Justice he has done to Amîr Timûr the great Enemy to the Family of Zingîz Khân; but besides, for the reason offer'd upon the Place, p. 174. I think it appears better from the Account which is given of Abu'l-ghâzi Khân in the 11th and 12th Chapters of the ninth Part, where mention is made of some Actions which seem to accuse him of Treachery and Cruelty, if not of Breach of Faith; but the Misfortune is, that we have not any History at present, I mean of the Uzbeks, either of Khowârazm or Great Bucharia to compare with it: and as for the Accounts of Travellers, their disagreeing with that given by Abu'l Ghâzi Khân can never be urged against his Veracity; since in the Opinion of all judicious Persons they must give way to the Authority of one who writes the History of his own Country Affairs; in consequence of which Maxim the French Editor, p. 309. has justly decided against Olearius, tho one of the most exact Travellers, in favour of Abu'l-ghâzi Khân's History. I know of but two Travellers, and both Englishmen, that have been in Khowârazm since the Uzbeks became Masters of it, and their Accounts agree very well with our Author. The first is Anthony Jenkinson before mentioned,

Is impartial in his History.



## The Translator's PREFACE.

mentioned, who travell'd thro' the Country in his way to Boghar, or Bokhara, in 1557, in the time of Hajim, or Azim Chan, as he calls him, of which we have taken notice, p. 270. The other is the Author of the curious Description of the Countrys which border upon the Euxine and Caspian Seas, printed at the end of Tavernier's Travels, under the fictitious Name of Astrachan. He observes, p. 109. "That in the Year 1620 there were great Wars in Yurgeach, or Jurgench, [Urgens] between the Khân and his Son the Prince of Yurgeach; who, overthrowing his Father in Battle, put out both his Eyes, and caused himself to be crowned King, ordering his younger Brother to be strangled: But the Lords of his own Party would not suffer it, but sent the Child to the Emperor of Moscovy." Which is conformable with what is related, p. 325. about the Death of Arap Mohammed Khân, and the Attempt made against the Life of the young Augan Soltân, by his unnatural and rebellious Brother Ilbars Soltân.

Etymology of Kalpak and Kalmûk.

And by the way, I cannot help mentioning another Passage of this last Author, p. 108. he tells us, "That the Calmuks are so called by the other Tatars, because they wear a kind of Cap or Hats open before and behind, with broad Brims on each side; which Caps, he says, are called by the Moscovites Coulpaks:" in which, if it be right, we see the Etymology both of the Kalmûks, or Kâlmaks, and Kara Kalpaks, as he tells us Kasachy Horda signifies a wild People. But why then should the Russians call some Kalpaks and others Kalmûks, and not rather all by the same Name? Meninski indeed confirms the Observation with regard to the first Term, and \* tells us,

\* Thefaur. Linguar. Orient.

Kalpak,



Kalpak, Kalpâk, or Kâlpak, is a *Word* both with the Poles and Tatars, signifying a furr'd Cap; but I find nothing in that copious Author tending to give any *Light* into the other Name, only that there is such a *Word* as Kâlmak, which signifies to remain, abide, and fall away, or to decay: so that we stand in need of further Information before we can determine on this Point; unless that of \* Matthias a Micow and Herberstein † should happen to be right, who say they are called Kalmuks, because they are the only Nation among the Tatars who let their Hair grow; which yet is no more than a Lock \*\* on the Crown of their Heads: for as to its being compounded of an Arabic and a Tatar Word, || both signifying the same thing, intimating their being good Archers, according to the Explanation of a Kalmûk to the Gentleman I had it from, who asked him the Etymology of it; it seems to be too forced and far-fetch'd to be genuine, and to be devised in order to make the best of a Nickname, which they find is likely to stick by them, in spite of all their Endeavours to get rid of it.

The Publick is obliged for this History to the Swedish Officers remaining Prisoners in Siberia; for some of those Gentlemen, who were Men of Learning, having bought the Tatar Manuscript of a Bukhar Merchant who brought it to Tobolskoy, caused it to be translated at their own Expense into the Russian Tongue, and translated it afterwards themselves into divers Languages. But all those different Translations having been full of Faults, as well thro' the Ignorance of the first, as Carelessness of the latter Translators, the French Editor was obliged to employ above a Year to put this History in a Condition to be serviceable to the Publick;

\* De Sarmatia Asiana, cap. 7.

† Rer. Moscov. Comment. in Articulo de Tartaris, apud finem. \*\* Pag. 534. || Kalm, in Arabic, and Ok in Tatarian, as well as Turkish, signifies an Arrow.



Translated  
into several  
Languages.

Improvements of  
the French  
Edition.

*nor could he ever have been able, he tells us in his Preface, to have brought it about, if he had not had extraordinary Helps, notwithstanding he procur'd the Copy he made use of from the Hands of one of the very Gentlemen who had got it translated at their Expense.*

*To make this Work still more serviceable, he hath added Remarks of his own for the Instruction of the Reader in what regards the People, Places, and other Particulars mention'd by the Author, which needed Explanation. These Remarks, out of which, with some few Additions, the second Volume of this Translation is composed, are exceeding curious; and the Editor has good reason to value himself on having given the first true, and distinct Notions of the present State of that vast Continent, and of the different Nations which inhabit it. 'Tis true, in what relates to other Parts of Asia, he has fallen into some Mistakes, which we have taken notice of in their proper Places; but that ought not to lessen the Reader's Opinion of the rest, in which he has discover'd a great deal of Judgment and very extensive Knowledge.*

*Who the Editor is, it would not be Manners to discover, since he has concealed his Name: the Reader may perceive in general, by his writing the Proper Names in the Translation according to the German Orthography, that he is of that Nation, tho in his Notes he has follow'd the French. He has left us as much in the dark, as to the Funds from whence he drew his Remarks concerning the North of Asia and Russia; all he discovers of the Matter is, that he gather'd them from authentick Memoirs, and the uniform Report of several Persons of Merit who were upon the Places themselves. Tho I agree with that Gentleman, that the Remarks carry along with them sufficient Evidence of their Veracity; yet, I must own, I think he should*



# The Translator's PREFACE.

xix

should have cited his written Authority at least for Collectors  
them: Nay, 'tis to be hoped he will print the ought al-  
Originals, since he \* seems to think the Publick has ways to  
a Demand on M. de la Croix for his Translation print their  
of Fadlallah. There are several Particulars, es- Authori-  
pecially relating to Khowârazm, which excite our ties.  
Curiosity for them; and when, in the Remarks,  
one finds the Situation of the Provinces of that  
Country, mentioned in the History, ascertained, he  
naturally wishes for the Memoirs they were taken  
from, as Collections from whence he might expect  
more full Satisfaction in his Enquiries.

To illustrate his Observations the better, the Edi- Account  
tor has prefix'd two Maps to the Tatar History: of the  
The first shews the State of Tatar in the Time of Maps,  
Zingiz Khân, with the Situations of the several  
Tribes of the Turkish Nation; the other is a  
Representation of it as it is at present; both of them  
are curious in their Kind, and have several Im-  
provements former Maps want. Nova Zembla  
is found to be an Island; there is an Addition, or  
if you will, a Separation from the Continent of  
the whole Peninsula of Kamchatka, probably the  
greatest in the World; the Country of Khowârazm  
undergoes a thorow Reformation; Turkestân has  
got into its right Place; in short, the whole puts  
on a new Face, and is represented in a Form very  
different from what it bears in other Maps. 'Tis  
true, if we come to a strict Examination, it  
will be found defective in the Situations of Towns  
and other Particulars: but as the Editor's Design  
by those Maps seems to have been chiefly to shew  
the general Divisions of that large Continent, and  
the Discoveries which have been made there by the  
late glorious Tsar, we have let them pass as they  
were, only correcting two or three of the most ob-

\* Pag. 79.



*vious Mistakes ; such as the Situation of Khân-bâlik, or Peking, that of Abascum Casira, or Aboskûn Jezîra, the Country of Turân, and a few others. However, it may be proper to caution the Reader, that the Latitudes and Longitudes of Places which are taken from them are not to be depended on ; for which reason, I have left out some of them in the Second Volume, and wish I had omitted them all, for fear of misleading our Geographers, who take every thing of that kind, which they meet with in Authors, for actual Observations.*

Account  
of this  
Transla-  
tion.

*My Design indeed once was, to have drawn new Maps, as well as supply'd the defective Parts of the Tatar History out of other Authors the best I could, and to have made several considerable Additions to the French Editor's Observations ; especially, when upon bringing those together which relate to Geography, and compose the Second Volume, I found they fell very short of making complete Descriptions of the Countries they related to : but the Copy having been detained too long by the Booksellers, before they return'd it me, I was so far from being able to execute my Design, that I was forced to let some Oversights of the French Editor pass untouch'd in the Parts which do not relate to Tatar, with regard to which that Gentleman's Remarks are generally exact and curious. However, as the few NOTES I have thrown in have help'd to swell the Book beyond the expected Bounds, I am the less concerned for not having added what I intended ; and the rather, since I am preparing a Collection of Travels and Observations into Tatar, from the best Authors extant in any Language, according to the Method I have laid down in the Appendix to the Construction of Maps and Globes.*

'Tis



## The Translator's PREFACE.

'Tis owing to the same Cause, namely, the <sup>Exact In-</sup> Bulk of the Book, that the Booksellers have <sup>dexes</sup> thought themselves obliged not to print the complete <sup>great Ad-</sup> INDEXES, which I have made, with a great <sup>vantages</sup> deal of Trouble, of all the Names of Persons, Places, and Things in both Volumes. This Addition would have been of great Advantage to the Work, and will be particularly miss'd by the Curious, who know how to set a just Value upon exact INDEXES, which are so necessary, especially in Books of this Nature, always crowded with Names and Terms, that I think none should be suffer'd to be publish'd without them. A good INDEX is sometimes the most valuable Part of a Book, and a great Help to quicken the Progress in Study, as it saves the Pains often of reading over a whole Volume, to find a single Passage or Circumstance, by offering it at one View.

Before I conclude, 'tis necessary to give some <sup>Directions</sup> Directions, with regard to the Orthography of <sup>about the</sup> Proper Names and Places; which being writ- <sup>Orthogra-</sup> ten after the German Pronunciation, 'tis to be <sup>phy of</sup> observ'd that J consonant is always to be pronounced <sup>Proper</sup> like our y, and sch as sh, into which I have generally converted it, as being a harsh Character: but there is not the same Uniformity observ'd with regard to some other Letters. I have not been always able to discover where the Ch has the Force of Kh, and where only of an H, in both which Qualities 'tis used by the Germans; except in the Words Achmet, Machmut, (for Ahmed and Mahmûd) and such others as are Arabic, or Persian: To express our Ch, sometimes Tsch, at other times Tzch is used. Thus Casatschia or Casatschia is to be read Casachia, and Kamtzchatka, Kamchatka. Df sometimes stands for Dh, as in Dsilhotza (for Dhu'lhajjah) but generally for our



## The Translator's P R E F A C E.

g before e and i, or rather for J consonant, which is also express'd sometimes by Dz, as in Dzanibek; sometimes by Tz, as in Dsilhotza aforesaid; and Tzemedi for Jomada; and if th ever stands for it, we shall then find all the four different Characters together in the Word Jadsutz Madzuth, which is Yajuj Majuj disguised by the Kakography. I have also a strong Suspicion that the Z is often put to express the same Letter, and that instead of Zingiz and Zuzi, it should be Jingiz and juji as the Turks write and pronounce it: The Z also in other Words seems to stand for Ch, as in Zupani, which the Turks and Persians write Chubani.

**Difficulty of settling it.** In this and many other Cases, with regard to settling the Orthography, especially of the Tatar Names, the original Mogul Manuscript would have been of great Use, considering the Book comes to us at a third or fourth hand by the French Translation: and as possibly the Russian Copy might have swerved from the Original, and the German from the Russian; so the French may have vary'd from them all. At least, 'tis easy to observe, that several of the Arabic and Persian Names are written wrong; and I am sensible the Translators should have been a little acquainted with the Arabic, in order to have written them true, because the Scantiness of the Oighurian Alphabet, which consists only of fourteen Letters, obliges the Moguls, who use them, to express several of the Arabic Letters by one and the same Character. Arabshah in his Life of Timur Beg \* particularly observes, " That they express the Gutturals, and " all other Letters of the same Organ, by the " same Character, as the Ba and Fa:" [to which

\* Pag. 437. printed Copy in Arabic.



# The Translator's PREFACE.

xxiii

*we may add the P and V which the Arabic wants] “ the Dal and two Ta’s, the Za, “ Sad and Sîn”, if not the Shîn, which is joined to them in a Chinese Tatar Alphabet lately communicated to me, which goes further yet, and makes one Character serve for the K, Q, G and C: and this may be the reason why we find Ahmet and Pulat, for Ahmed and Fulâd, or rather Fulâdh; Abu’lgafi for Abu’lgazi, or rather Abu’lghâzi, and the like. In short, betwixt the Deficiency of the Mogul Alphabet and the Uncertainty of the Orthography of the Tatar History as it comes to us, one cannot be sure that even the Name of Zingis Khan is written as it should be; at least in Meninski’s Lexicon, before-mention’d, ’tis written Jengîz Khan; and if, as the French Editor affirms, p. 79. Marco-Polo writes that Name exactly like our Author, it should be Chingis Khân.*

*This Difficulty of coming at the Orthography of the Tatar Names, for want of the original Manuscript, or a Tatar Dictionary, for we would not depend upon the Turkish, joined to the Variety which is found among Authors, not only of different Nations, but of the same Country in writing the Arabic and Persian Names, made me resolve to transcribe them all as I found them in the French Copy, for fear of adding to the Number of Faults, in all likelihood already crept into former Versions for the Reasons aforesaid, and to reduce them to the English Orthography the best I could in the Margin and Indexes.*

*But with regard to the Matter contain’d in the Second Volume, I have not always been so scrupulous; and especially in such Remarks as I have inserted of my own, have laid my self under less Restraint still as to the Orthography; except-*



Confusion  
in History  
owing to  
the Cor-  
ruption of  
Names.

Corrupti-  
on of  
writing  
Names  
after the  
Pronun-  
ciation.

ing that I have follow'd our Orientalists in the Use of some Letters, the Inconveniencies of which mentioned hereafter I did not see time enough to reform. I have also begun to break thro' that barbarous Custom of retaining corrupt Names, after we are come to the Knowledge of the true; and, amongst the rest, have introduced that of Mohammed, instead of Mahomet; which I am surprized Dean Prideaux, who complains of this Abuse, would not venture to do, tho writing the Life of that pretended Prophet. But why should not we have the true Orthography of Names in English, as well as Latin Translations? I cannot believe we are so loth to be set right, as the Arguments used by some for retaining such Corruptions would infer: but be that as it will, I shall choose rather to be deem'd pedantick, than help to promote an Abuse which has involved the History of all Ages in so great Obscurity. It is evident, that most of the Difficulties in Chronology, which after all the Labour spent about them by the Learned must still remain unsettled, are owing not so much to the want of Dates, as the Corruption of Names. How many Volumes have been written to prove the same Person to be two, and two different Persons to be the same? the Ignorance of Authors, or Carelessness of Copists having made Names alike which had no Resemblance, and disfigured the same Name so strangely, that it was not to be known in two different Authors; nay, nor in two different Places of the same Author; of which Abuse, modern Histories, as well as antient, furnish us with numerous Instances.

Pursuant to the same Maxim, I have also alter'd another Practice of writing Words according to the Pronunciation, and that is the Reason you find Gelal al din for Gelal addin;



## The Translator's PREFACE.

xxv

*Ala'ldin for Ala'ddin, as they are generally written by Translators; because the l in the Particle al, is by the Arabs in the Pronunciation before certain Letters which they call Solar chang'd into them. And this Practice is carry'd to an Excess by the French, tho perhaps they wou'd take it ill if Foreigners should write their Language as it is spoken; and know that however the Arabs may pronounce such Words, yet they write them otherwise: and their Example, I think, ought to be the Rule in this Case. Indeed with regard to cutting off the latter a, when two meet, as in Ala'ldin, I have not been so scrupulous, because the meaning of it is very well understood by every body.*

*As to the Word Tatar, I hope there needs no Apology for using it, since we have the Sanction of the Author for it, which we could not without the greatest Injustice, as well as Absurdity, but submit to; besides, the Name Tartar is an Error, which according to the aforesaid Maxim we should have been obliged to reform; for it has been long ago observed by the Authors and Travellers who have wrote with any Judgment about the Affairs of the Levant; and our Orientalists, such as Golius, Pocock, Hyde, &c. have rejected it in their Writings. Avril, who was sent by the late French King to discover a Road thro' those Countries which go under the Name of Tatar, says, "He knows not why we call them Tartars; " seeing " in Poland, Moscovy, and even Tartary it " self, they call them only Tatars." And yet, what is strange, he helps to carry on the Abuse himself by retaining the erroneous Word. The French Editor has done the like, having in compliance to Custom, all along in his Remarks, written Tartars, contrary to the Authority of his Tatar Author, tho he follows him in writing the Name of Zingiz Khân in opposition to almost all other Historians.*

*But*

Reasons  
for reject-  
ing the  
Name  
Tartars.



*But seeing no reason why his Authority should not be as good in one Case as the other, I have in my Translation thought fit to make the Notes in that respect agree with the Text.*

Rules for  
translating  
especially  
from the  
Oriental  
Langua-  
ges.

Great dif-  
ference in  
writing  
the same  
Word, oc-  
casioned  
by the  
Difference  
of Alpha-  
bets.

*To remedy these Evils for the future, let us thrust out Corruptions as fast as we find them, and not suffer Custom to tyrannize over Truth and Reason; it has done too much Mischief to Learning already, and 'tis better to put a Stop to it late than never. In the next place, I would recommend to Translators, with regard particularly to Proper Names, to consider when they should be only transcribed, and when they should be transferr'd into other Characters: For instance, in translating from the Originals (I am to be understood of Oriental) the Orthography should be strictly adhered to, that is, the Names are to be written according to the Force of the Letters, in the Characters, of the Language of the Country for whose Use the Translation is design'd, correspondent thereto. And as this is usually the Method in translating from the Oriental Tongues, (tho sometimes Translators by a strange Liberty insert the antient or the corrupted Names instead of those given by the Author) it shews that in translating from Translations the Words are to be written according to their Pronunciation. Thus the Title of the present Kings of Persia, which a Frenchman writes Cha, a Dutchman, Sja, a German, Schah, an Italian, Scia, and a Portugal, Xa, must be written by an English Translator Shâh; otherwise, in a Collection from different Languages, there would be no knowing the same Name under so many Disguises. Indeed that is not a constant Rule, for Foreigners are not always uniform in writing Proper Names: The French for instance, for the jîm, sometimes use g, and sometimes dg; the Germans, ds, dsj, and dz: For the Waw the first*



first use sometimes ou, other times v; and the latter, for the Persian and Turkish Chîm (which is our Ch) put Tsj and Tfch; so that in order to be sure, one should have recourse to the Original. Nor are our Orientalists agreed better among themselves about the Force of some Letters, particularly with regard to the jîm, some use g for it, others J consonant, some both one and the other, according to the Vowels that follow; and a third sort preposterously join both Letters together to express a Sound, by a Character in it self inexpressible in our Language, which admits of no such unnatural Combination. Not to mention their putting the C sometimes for K, and generally ph for the f; they do further hurt yet, by often leaving out the w, (without which there is no writing Oriental Names) and substituting Ch for the Arabic Kha; so that to express the Persian and Turkish Chîm, they are obliged to fetch in the tch; which, tho found in some few English Words, is not properly a Character, nor ever used but by our Orientalists on this Occasion.

It may seem strange that our Authors should be reduced to such Shifts, when we have an Alphabet so capable of furnishing Letters for all the distinct Sounds in the three before-mention'd Oriental Languages. What can better suit the Arabic Kha, than Kh, or the Persian and Turkish Chîm, than our Ch? Does any thing express the jîm so exactly as J consonant, which has the same Sound before a, o or u, as before e and i? and therefore is more properly used for it than the soft g, which I have mark'd with a' to distinguish it from the hard g, which often happens before e and i, as in Zingis and Sagil, and which ought to be reserv'd for the hard g used by the Persians and Turks, which the Arabs want, the Ghayn being a different Letter,

And



Has the  
Advantage  
of the Eu-  
ropean,

And even  
of the  
Oriental  
Tongues.

*And by the way, I cannot but take notice of the Excellency of the English Alphabet, which expresses all the Tones either with single Letters, or at most by adding the Aspiration, while other Nations are obliged both to borrow from us, or one another, and to employ two or three, and sometimes four Letters to express one Sound, as appears among others from the Instances already mentioned. Nay, what is more, we seem to have the Advantage of the Oriental Tongues themselves in an extensive Alphabet; for besides the hard G, the P and V Consonant, which the Arabs particularly want, we have the Q and the X, which both the Turks and Persians want as well as they, to help us out in other eastern Languages. 'Tis true, we have not the Gutturals, nor so many Letters to express the Divisions of the same Tone; but that Defect is not so much, when it is consider'd with regard to the first, that we have the Characters with the fundamental Sounds annex'd, tho not the guttural Form; as the Gh in Ghost, or Gherkin, and the hard Ch (which is equivalent to Kh) in Christ, Chronicle, and all Derivatives from the Greek: and as to the latter, those Divisions of the Tone in T, D, Dh, S, K, H and Z, which are express'd in those Languages by different Characters, are so minute and nice, that perhaps none but those who speak them naturally are able to distinguish the Difference. In short, the only Letter we seem to want, is the Persian Zhay, equivalent to the French j, in J'ai, I have; which yet may be very exactly express'd by Zh.*

An Alpha-  
bet fix'd to  
the Orien-  
tal Lan-  
guages  
greatly  
wanted.

*It is absolutely necessary therefore that an Alphabet should be fix'd by our Orientalists for the Oriental Tongues, and constantly made use of whether they write in English or Latin, without tying themselves down to the Letters of the Language they write in, which has been the chief Occasion of*



## The Translator's P R E F A C E.

xxix

*of the before-mention'd Innovations. 'Tis to be wish'd also, that they would not add Latin Terminations to Oriental Words, than which nothing can be more incongruous ; but rather, if there was a Necessity for it, to make use of the Greek Articles to distinguish the Cases, as Dr. Hyde, and others, sensible of the Inconveniencies arising from that Corruption, have commonly done.*

*I could go farther yet upon this Subject ; but because it may appear somewhat odd to prescribe Rules to others, which for the Reasons aforesaid, I have not exactly follow'd my self, I shall rest satisfy'd with giving the Hint at present, reserving the rest to another Occasion.*

*I shall only add, that I have taken care to adjust the Year of the Christian Æra in the Margin, which does not always exactly correspond with the Mohammedan, in the French Edition, and that the Matters thrown in by me are included between two Crotchets ; hoping the Reader will pass a favourable Censure upon the Imperfections both of Them and the Translation, which I am sensible stand in great need of a particular Apology, if I durst venture to tire his Patience any further.*

London, August  
the 1st. 1729.



T H E





THE  
AUTHOR'S  
PREFACE.



HERE is one only God, and before him none was, as after him none shall be. He hath made seven Heavens, seven Earths, and eighteen Thousand Creations. 'Tis by him that *Mohammed*, the Friend of God, has been sent in quality of his Prophet to all Mankind in general; 'tis under his Influence that I *Abu'l-ghazi Bahâder Khân* have begun to write this Book. My Father *Arap Mahamet Khân* descended in a right Line from *Zingîz Khân*, and was before me sovereign Prince of the Country of *Kharazm*. I shall treat in this Book of the House of *Zingîz Khân*, and of his Original; of the Places where he establish'd himself; of the Kingdoms and Provinces which he conquer'd, and what became of him at last.

'Tis



'Tis true that before me several *Turkish* and *Persian* Authors have written upon this Subject, and I my self have eighteen different Books of those Authors in my Hands, some of which are tolerably well wrote; but as I perceive those Books stand much in need of Correction in many Places, and in others of large Supplies, I judged there was a Necessity for having a more exact History. And forasmuch as our Countries are very destitute of learned Writers, I saw my self obliged to undertake this Work. But notwithstanding there may not be found any *Khân* before me who was willing to take so much Trouble upon himself, the Reader will do me the Justice to be persuaded that it is not out of a Principle of Vanity that I have commenced Author, but that 'tis pure Necessity which has engaged me to meddle in this Affair. If I was disposed to glory in any thing, it should be only in that Conduct and Wisdom which I possess as a Gift from God, and not of my self; for on the one hand I understand Military Affairs as well as any Prince in the World, knowing how to make War both with a few Troops and with numerous Armies, and to dispose to advantage as well my Horse as my Foot. On the other hand, I have a peculiar Talent for writing Books in all sorts of Languages, and I know not whether the Person is easily to be found,  
of



*An. Dom.*  
1663.

of more Ability than my self in that kind of Literature, unless it may be in the Cities of *Persia* and the *Indies*: but in all the neighbouring Provinces, of which I have any Knowledge, I dare flatter my self there is no one who exceeds me, whether it be in the Matter of War, or Learning; and as for the Countries which are unknown to me, I shan't trouble my Head about them. Since the Flight of our holy Prophet, to the Time that I began to write this Book, there have passed 1074 Years. I call it a Genealogical History of the *Tatars*; and I have divided it into nine Parts, in order to conform my self to the Custom of other Writers, who all have this \* Number in particular Esteem.

[\* Haithon in his *Historia de Tartaris*, cap. 17. assigns a different Reason from that given by the Author, p. 9. for the great Veneration which he observes the Tatars have for the Number Nine; adding, that all Presents to the Tatar Monarch were to consist of nine Things. There is a curious Passage mentioned in Mohammedan Authors upon this Occasion, of a Prince, who having made a present to Timûr Beg of eight beautiful She-Slaves, and being asked where the ninth was, said, he came to offer himself as such, which procured him Timûr's Friendship. And it seems the Tatars rob by this Rule of Nine, for the Karawân with which Anthony Jenkinson travelled from Urgens to Bokhara was obliged to give the Rovers who attacked them twenty times nine several Things to get rid of them.]



T H E





THE  
CONTENTS  
OF  
The First VOLUME.

---

PART I.



*Contains the History of the Generations of the Tatars, from Adam down to Mogul, or more properly Mung'l Chan.*

Chap. I. *Of Adam and his Descendants until the Deluge.* Pag. 1

Chap. II. *Of the Posterity of Nui to the Time of Alanza Chan.* 5

Chap. III. *Of Alanza Chan and his Posterity, down to Siuntz Chan; descending in the seventh Degree from Tatar Chan.* 7

PART II.

*Contains the History of the Generations of the Tatars, from Mung'l Chan to Zingis Chan, who did not descend in a right Line from the Princes, the Successors of Mung'l Chan.*

Chap. I.



## CONTENTS of

Chap. I. Of Mung'l Chan and his Posterity.	9
Chap. II. Of the Birth and Reign of Ogus Chan.	10
Chap. III. Of the Children of Ogus Chan, and of their Descendants until Ill Chan.	21
Chap. IV. Of the Life and Reign of Siuntz Chan, and the Destruction of the Empire of the Mogulls.	24
Chap. V. Of the Fortune of Kajan and Nagos, the only Remains of the Posterity of Mogull Chan.	26
Chap. VI. Of the Tribes of the Kanklis, Kipzaks, Kallatz, and Karliks.	31
Chap. VII. Of the Tribe of the Vigurs.	34
Chap. VIII. Of the Tribes of the Takrins; of the Kergis, of the Camcamzuts, and of the Urmankatts.	36
Chap. IX. Of the Tribe of the Tatars.	38
Chap. X. Of the Tribe of the Virats, and its several Branches.	40
Chap. XI. Of the Tribe of the Naimanns, of the Caraits, of the Unguis, and of the Turkaks.	42
Chap. XII. Of the Tribe of the Mogulls.	46
Chap. XIII. Of the Tribes of the Markatts, the Kunkurats, the Ankarahs, the Allaknuts, the Caranuts, the Curlafs, the Ilzigans, the Ummauts, the Cunnachmars, the Arlats, the Kalkits, and the Kishliks.	47
Chap. XIV. Of the Tribes of the Vishuns, the Suldus, the Durmanns, the Bariens, the Sukuts, the Curla-uts, the Burkuts, and some other Branches of the Mogulls.	51
Chap. XV. Of the Chans of the Mogulls, from their sallying out of Irgana-kon, down to Zingis Chan.	55

## PART III.

*Contains the History of the Reign of Zingis Chan, from his Birth to his Death.*

Chap. I. Of the Birth of Zingis Chan, and his first Years, to the Death of his Father, and his Advancement to the Throne of the Mogulls.	63
Chap. II. Of some Things that fell out during the first Years of the Reign of Zingis Chan.	67
Chap. III. Of the War of Zingis Chan, against Aunak Chan of the Caraits; and of the Defeat of the latter.	70
Ch. IV. Zingis Chan is acknowledged Chan of the Mogulls.	78
Chap. V. Of the War of Zingis Chan, against Taijan Chan of the Naimanns; and of the Reduction of the Tribe of the Naimanns under the Obedience of Zingis Chan.	80
Chap.	



## the First VOLUME.

- Chap. VI. *Of the Reduction of the Tribe of the Markatts under Zingis Chan, and of the Conquest of the Town and Kingdom of Tangut.* 83
- Chap. VII. *Of the Death of Bairak Chan of the Naimanns, and of Tochtabegi Chan of the Markatts.* 84
- Chap. VIII. *Of the Reduction of the Kergis under the Obedience of Zingis Chan, and of the Death of Zamucha Zizen.* 86
- Chap. IX. *Of the voluntary Submission of the Vigurs to Zingis Chan.* 87
- Chap. X. *Of Zingis Chan's War against Altan Chan of Kitay.* 88
- Chap. XI. *Of the Reduction of the Town of Akashin, the quashing some Seeds of Rebellion, and of the Death of Kutshluk.* 93
- Chap. XII. *Of the Wives and Children of Zingis Chan.* 95
- Chap. XIII. *Of the Commencement of the War between Zingis Chan, and Sultan Mahamet Shah of Charass'm.* 97
- Chap. XIV. *Of the Expedition of Zingis Chan into Great Bucharía.* 107
- Chap. XV. *Of the Expedition of the three Sons of Zingis Chan into the Country of Charass'm, and of the Reduction of many Towns on the Frontiers of the Indies under the Obedience of that Prince.* 118
- Chap. XVI. *Of some Actions of Sultan Dfalaludin, Son of Sultan Mahamet.* 122
- Chap. XVII. *Of the Expeditions of the two Mogull Generals into divers Provinces of Persia, and of the Death of Sultan Mahamet.* 127
- Chap. XVIII. *Of the Expedition of Taulai Son of Zingis Chan into the Province of Chorassan.* 133
- Chap. XIX. *Of the Return of Zingis Chan into his hereditary Provinces, and of his Death.* 140

## P A R T IV.

*Contains the History of Ugadai Chan, third Son of Zingis Chan; and of his Successors in the Empire of the Moguls, of the Posterity of Zingis Chan.*

- Chap. I. *Of the Reign of Ugadai Chan.* 148
- Chap. II. *Concerning some memorable Actions of Ugadai Chan.* 153



## C O N T E N T S of

- Chap. III. *Of the Reign of Kajuk Chan, Son of Ugadai Chan; and of the Posterity of those Princes.* 156  
 Chap. IV. *Of the Reign of Mangu Chan, Son of Taulai Chan.* 158  
 Chap. V. *Of the Reign of Coplai Chan, fourth Son of Taulai Chan.* 162

### P A R T V.

*Contains the History of Zagatai Chan, Second Son of Zingis Chan, and of the Princes of his Posterity, who have reigned over the Cities and Kingdoms of Cashgar and Ma-urenner.*

- Chap. I. *Of the Life and Reign of Zagatai Chan.* 165  
 Chap. II. *Of the Princes of the Posterity of Zagatai Chan, who have reigned in the Country of Ma-urenner after the Death of Zagatai Chan.* 167  
 Chap. III. *Of divers other Chans who have reigned in the Country of Ma-urenner until Amir Timur.* 170  
 Chap. IV. *Of the Life and principal Actions of Amir Timur.* 172  
 Chap. V. *Of the Princes of the Posterity of Zagatai Chan, who have reigned in the Country of Cashgar.* 176

### P A R T VI.

*Contains the History of Taulai Chan, youngest Son of Zingis Chan, and of his Descendants who have reigned in the Country of Iran.*

- Chap. I. *Of Halaku Chan, and of the Princes of his Posterity down to Abusait Chan.* 184  
 Chap. II. *Of the Civil Wars among the several Successors of Abusait Chan, and of the Reduction of the Country of Iran by Dzanibek Chan.* 188

### P A R T VII.

*Contains the History of Zuzi Chan, eldest Son of Zingis Chan, and of his Descendants who have reigned over the Kipzaks.*

Chap. I.



## the First VOLUME.

- Chap. I. Of Zuzi Chan, and of the Reign of his Son Batu Sagin Chan. 192  
 Chap. II. Of the Princes of the Posterity of Zuzi Chan, who have reigned over the Kipzaks, after the Death of Batu Zagin Chan. 195  
 Chap. III. Of the Descendants of Togai Timur, youngest Son of Zuzi Chan, who have reigned in the Country of Kipzak. 200

## PART VIII.

*Contains the History of Sheybani Chan, Son of Zuzi Chan ; and of his Descendants, who have reigned in the Countrys of Ma-urenner, and Turan.*

- Chap. I. Of the Life and Reign of Sheybani Chan. 205  
 Chap. II. Of the Descendants of Sheybani Chan, down to Jadigar Chan. 208  
 Chap. III. Of Burga Sultan, Son of Jadigar Chan. 212  
 Chap. IV. Of the Death of Abulgair Chan, and also of Burga Sultan. 217

## PART IX.

*Contains the History of the Descendants of Sheybani Chan, who have reigned in the Country of Charafs'm.*

- Chap. I. Of Ilbars Chan, and Bilbars Sultan, who were the first Princes of the Descendants of Sheybani Chan, who reigned in the Country of Charafs'm. 221  
 Chap. II. Of the Life and Reign of Hadfi Chan, of Hasanculi Chan, of Saphian Chan, and of Buzzuga Chan. 232  
 Chap. III. Of the Reign of Avanash Chan, and of the Civil Wars among the Descendants of Amunak, and those of Burga Sultan. 242  
 Chap. IV. Of Kahl Chan, Akattai Chan, Junus Chan, and Dost Chan ; of the Civil Wars among the divers Branches of the Posterity of Amunak. 261  
 Chap. V. Of Din Mahamet Chan, and of the other Descendants of Avanash Chan. 271  
 Chap. VI. Of Hadfim Chan, and the other Descendants of Akattai Chan. 285



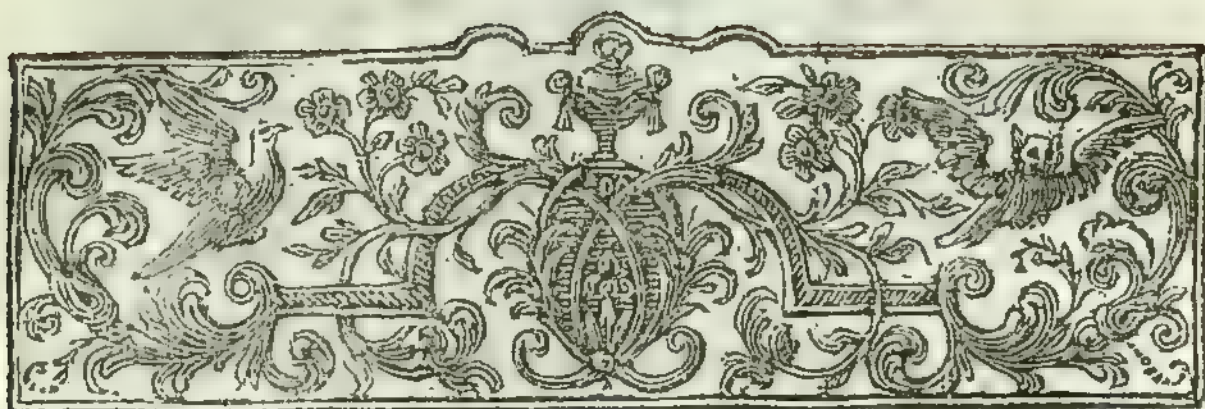
## CONTENTS.

Chap. VII. Abdula Chan <i>makes himself Master of the Country of Charafs'm, and obliges Hadsim Chan to seek Refuge in Persia.</i>	290
Chap. VIII. <i>Of the Re-establishment of Hadsim Chan in his Dominions, and of his Death.</i>	309
Chap. IX. <i>Of the Reign of Arap Mahamet Chan, and of his Death.</i>	312
Chap. X. <i>Of the Reign of Isphandiar Chan, and of that of his Brother Shariph Mahamet Chan.</i>	326
Chap. XI. <i>Concerning the first Years of the Life of Abulgasi Chan.</i>	330
XII. <i>Of the Reign and Death of Abulgasi Chan.</i>	356



C O N-





# CONTENTS

OF

The Second VOLUME.

---

## PART I.

CHAP. I. *Observations upon Grand Tatar, and the  
Tatars in general.*

- Sect. I. *Of the Extent, Nature of the Soil, and Air of Grand  
Tatary.* 379  
Sect. II. *Tatars, whence descended.* 384  
Sect. III. *Of the several Branches of the Tatars, particu-  
larly so called.* 388  
Sect. IV. *The Government of the Tatars.* 391  
Sect. V. *Of the Manners and Customs of the Tatars.* 399  
Sect. VI. *Of their Building, Trade, and Sciences.* 409

Chap. II. *A Description of the Kingdom of Chowarazm sub-  
ject to the Tatars.* 419

- Sect. I. *The Situation, Extent, Antiquity and Government  
of Chowarazm.*  
Sect. II. *Of the Inhabitants of Chowarazm, particularly  
the Turkmanns and Uzbeks.* 423  
Sect. III. *A Description of the Provinces and Towns of  
Chowarazm.* 434  
Sect. IV. *A Description of the Rivers Amu and Khesell, and  
of the great Lake of Arall.* 444

Chap. III. *A Description of Great Bucharia, or Ma Wara  
'Inahr, subject to the Uzbeks.* 452  
Sect. I.



# C O N T E N T S of

Sect. I. *The Name, Extent, and Situation of Great Bucharìa.* Pag. 452

Sect. II. *Of the Inhabitants of Great Bucharìa.* 455

Sect. III. *The Provinces and Cities of Great Bucharìa.* 461

Chap. IV. *A Description of the Kingdom of Little Bucharìa, or Cashgar.*

Sect. I. *Of its Situation, Extent, and natural Advantages.* 469

Sect. II. *The principal Places in Little Bucharìa.* 470

Sect. III. *The Government, Buildings, Language, Religion, Marriages, Burials, and other Customs of the Natives.* 474

Chap. V. *A Description of Tangut, subject to the Callmaks.* 485

Sect. I. *Its Extent, Government of the Dalai Lama, and his Religion.* 485

Sect. II. *Of the Towns of Tangut, and the great Desart of Shamo, or Goby.* 491

Chap. VI. *Some Account of Cara-Kitay.* 495

Chap. VII. *A Description of the Country of the Mungals, or the Eastern Part of Grand Tatary.*

Sect. I. *Of the Situation, Bounds, Extent, and natural Products.* 499

Sect. II. *Of the Mungals, or Moguls, both of the East and West; their Manners, Customs, Government, Religion, &c.* 502

Sect. III. *The Religion of the Mungals of the West, and particularly of the Kutuchta, their High-Priest or Pope.* 508

Sect. IV. *The Towns and Rivers in the Country of the Mungals.* 512

Sect. V. *A Dissertation concerning Gog and Magog.* 518

Chap. VIII. *A Description of the Country of the Mogulls, called Callmaks; containing the middle and West Part of Grand Tatary.*

Sect. I. *Its Situation, Bounds, Provinces, Towns, Rivers, Mountains: An Account of the Archora.* 521

Sect. II. *Of the Original, Names, Branches, Customs, Manners and Religion of the Callmaks.* 529

Sect. III. *Of the three Branches of the Mogulls or Callmaks, and of several other Tribes under their Dominion.* 538

Sect.



## the Second VOLUME.

- Sect. IV. *Of the Government of the Mogulls or Callmaks, and the Power of the Con Taisa their Grand Chan.* 541
- Sect. V. *Of the Wars between the Contaisa, and the Chan of China, and of the Revolution which happen'd thereupon.* 546
- Sect. VI. *Of the Tombs, Pyramids, deserted Towns, and curious Writings, found lately in the Country of the Callmaks.* 555
- Chap. IX. *A Description of the Country of Turkestan, subject to the Tatars.*
- Sect. I. *Name, Bounds, antient Power, Government, Division, Towns.* 562
- Sect. II. *The Inhabitants of Turkestan.* 571
- Chap. X. *A Description of the Country and Inhabitants of Kipzak, Kipjak, or Kafjak, subject to the Russians.*
- Sect. I. *Its Name, Extent, Conquest, Inhabitants, &c.* 576
- Sect. II. *Of the Bashkir Tatars and Tatars of Uffa, who inhabit the Duchy of Bulgar in the Kingdom of Casan.* 579
- Sect. III. *Of the several Branches of the Cosaks.* 582
- Chap. XI. *An Account of the Tatars of Crimea, Budziak, and Kuban.* 597
- Sect. I. *A Description of Crimea and its chief Towns.* 597
- Sect. II. *An Account of the Tatars of Crimea.* 600
- Sect. III. *The Tatars of Budziak.* 604
- Sect. IV. *The Kuban Tatars.* 605
- Chap. XII. *An Account of the Countries between the Euxine and the Caspian Seas, inhabited by the Circassian and Daghestan Tatars; the Allans and the Abasses.*
- Sect. I. *Of Circassia, and the Circassians.* 607
- Sect. II. *Of the Country of Daghestan, and the Daghestan Tatars.* 613
- Sect. III. *Of the Alans or Alains, an Independent People of the Mountains.* 617
- Sect. IV. *Of the Abasses, an Independent People of the Mountains.* 618
- Chap. XIII. *A Description of Siberia.* 620

Sect. I.



# C O N T E N T S of

Sect. I. <i>The Bounds, Extent, Climate of Siberia, and of the Discovery and Conquest of it by the Russians.</i>	620
Sect. II. <i>The Soil, Product, Coin, and Trade of Siberia.</i>	623
Sect. III. <i>The Inhabitants of Siberia.</i>	630
Sect. IV. <i>The Division, Government, Buildings, Towns.</i>	649
Sect. V. <i>Of the Lakes and Mountains of Siberia.</i>	652
Sect. VI. <i>Of the Rivers of Siberia.</i>	655
Sect. VII. <i>Of the Icy Sea and Streights of Waygat. Asia not contiguous to America.</i>	662

## P A R T II.

### Chap. I. *Observations relating to Great Russia.*

Sect. I. <i>Its Extent, Bounds, Nature of the Soil, Commodities.</i>	665
Sect. II. <i>The Original, Name, and Qualities of the Russians.</i>	668
Sect. III. <i>The Government of Russia, and of the City of Moscow.</i>	673
Sect. IV. <i>The Rivers of Russia.</i>	677

### Chap. II. *Observations upon Turkey.*

Sect. I. <i>Why Turkey is called Rûm by the Orientals, and the Othman Sultan, Chalifah. An Error to call his Subjects Turks.</i>	682
Sect. II. <i>The Provinces of Diarbekr, Curdistan, and Erak; with an Account of Mount Ararat.</i>	685

### Chap. III. *Observations on Arabia and the Mohammedans.*

Sect. I. <i>Of Arabistan. The Inundations of the Persian Gulf. Of Mekka and Medinah.</i>	691
Sect. II. <i>Of Mohammed and his Religion.</i>	696

### Chap. IV. *Observations relating to the Country of Iran, or Persia at large.*

Sect. I. <i>Of the Name and Extent of Persia. Women Dancers.</i>	706
Sect. II. <i>Of the Title of Chan, still given to Governors in Persia. The Points in which the Persians differ in Opinion from the Turks and other Mohammedans.</i>	709
Sect. III. <i>Of the Provinces and Cities of Persia.</i>	715
Sect. IV. <i>A Description of the Caspian Sea.</i>	747

Chap.



## the Second V O L U M E.

### Chap. V. *Observations relating to India.*

Sect. I. *Of the Mohammedan Kingdoms founded in India before the Conquest of the Moguls.* 754

Sect. II. *Of the Town of Cabul, and Kingdom of Cashmîr.* 759

### Chap. VI. *Observations relating to China, subject to the Tatars, or rather to the Mungals.*

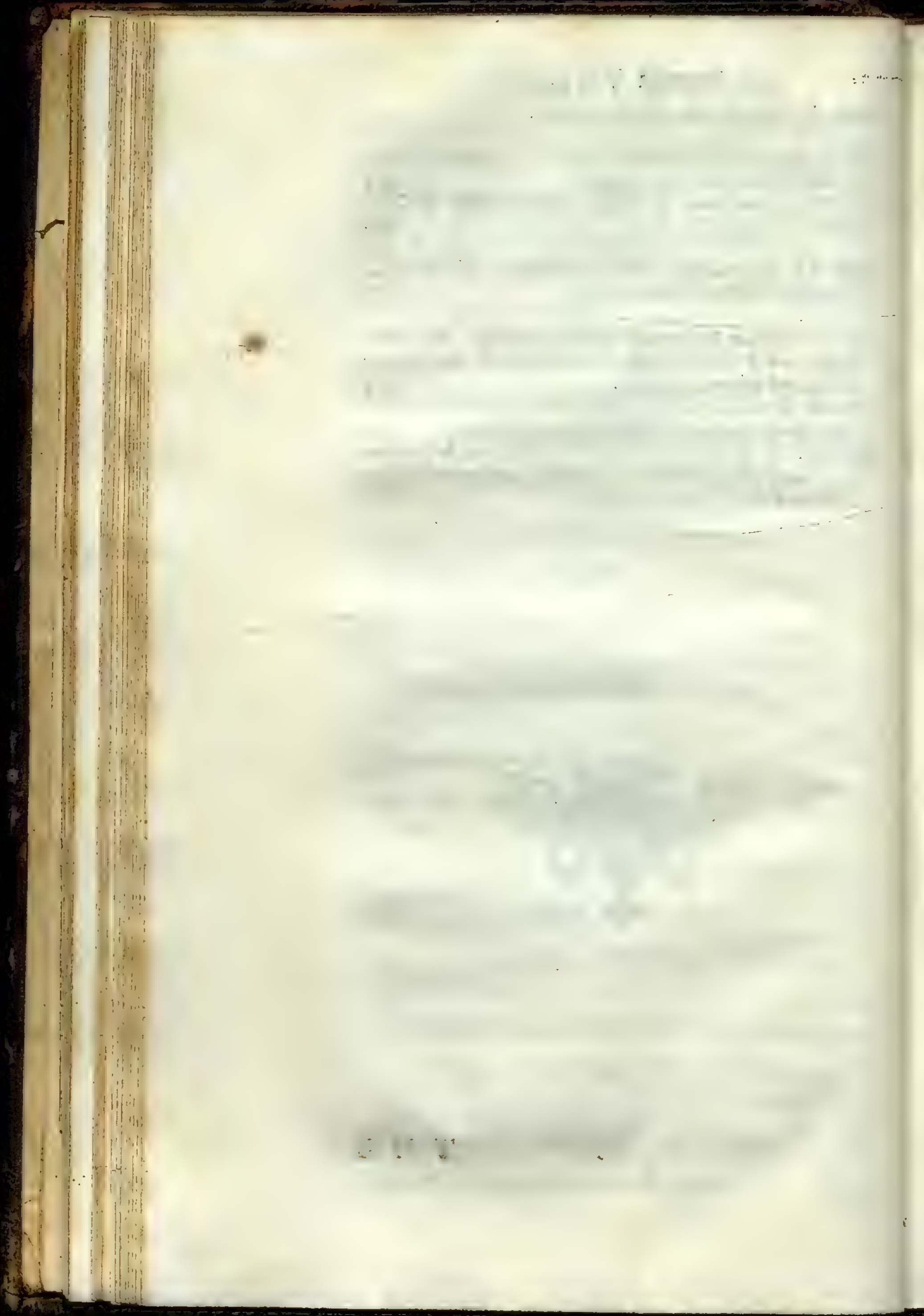
Sect. I. *Kitay, or Cathay and China, the same. Also Chan-balik and Pekin the same. Of Nanking, the Chinese Wall, and River Hoangho.* 763

Sect. II. *Of the Expulsion of the Tatars by the Bonzas, and their second Conquest of China under Zungh te.* 770

Sect. III. *Of the Reign of Canghai, the Laws he introduced, and the Methods he made use of to establish the Dominion of the Tatars in China.* 775









THE  
Genealogical History  
OF THE  
*TATARS.*

Translated from the *Tatar* MANUSCRIPT  
written in the *Mogul* Language by *Abu'l Ghâzi*  
*Bahâder*, *Khân* of *Khowârazm*.

C O N T A I N I N G

The ANTIQUITIES of the *Moguls* and *Tatars* from  
*Adam*, according to the Account of the *Mohamme-*  
*dan* TATARS. A curious Description of all the  
Tribes into which the *Turkish* Nation is divided :  
The LIFE of *Zingiz Khân* the Great, and of his  
Successors in the four Parts of his Empire.

T O G E T H E R

With a complete HISTORY of the *Uzbek Khâns* of *Khowâ-*  
*razm*, and in a good measure of the *Khâns* of *Great*  
*Bukharia*, from the first Conquest of those Countries under  
*Shah Bakht Soltân* in 1494. to the Death of *Abu'l Ghâzi*  
*Bahâder Khân*, the Author, in 1663.

---

*Illustrated with* NOTES, and a MAP of Grand  
Tatary, as it was in the Time of *Zingiz Khân*.

---

The Whole made *English*.

---

V O L. I.

---

L O N D O N :

Printed in the Year M.DCC.XXX.



THE  
Geological History

TARTAN

OF THE  
TARTAN

OF THE  
TARTAN

OF THE  
TARTAN

OF THE  
TARTAN

OF THE  
TARTAN

OF THE  
TARTAN

OF THE  
TARTAN





THE  
*Genealogical History*  
OF THE  
TATARS.



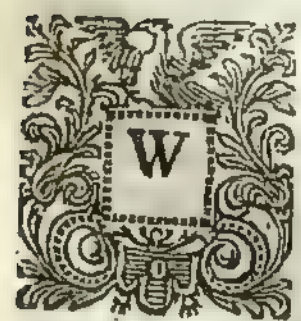
PART I.

Containing the History of the Generations  
of the *Tatars*, from *Adam* down to  
*Mogull*, or more properly *Mung'l Chan*.



CHAP. I.

*Of Adam and his Descendants until the  
Deluge.*



WHEN God had determin'd to create *The Tatars*  
Adam, he sent the Angel *Sa-* *Opinion of*  
*brail* to fetch him a Handful of *the Crea-*  
Earth; but the Earth having de- *tion.*  
manded of the Angel, at the In-  
stant he was about taking some of it, what he  
intended to do with that Handful of Earth, and  
the Angel having answer'd that God would  
B create



create *Adam* out of it, the Earth begged of him not to take any of it, saying, "The Children of *Adam* would multiply and sin against God, who thereupon would pour out his Wrath upon them and punish them severely on account of their Sins; and I dread this Punishment extremely, because I cannot choose but sink under it." The Angel being return'd into the Presence of God with this Answer, God sent the Angel *Michael* to the Earth with the same Commission; but he went back with the same Excuse, without having executed God's Command. After which God sent again thither the Angel *Azraphil*, who return'd *once more empty-handed*. At last, God having sent the Angel *Azrail* to the Earth, she try'd in like manner to persuade him to return without doing any thing; but the Angel made answer, "Thy Remonstrances are nothing to me in comparison of the Commands of God:" After which, having taken a Handful, he went to carry it before God; and 'tis in the same Place where the Angel took that Handful of Earth, that the House of *Meckka*, which is still to be seen there, was afterwards built, and to which all the Faithful go yearly to pay their Devotions. 'Tis held, in recompense of the Angel *Azrail's* having so punctually on that Occasion executed the Command of God, that the Power was given him of receiving the Souls of Men at their Death, and bringing them into his Presence. After God had created *Adam*, he set him upon the Earth between the House of *Meckka* and the City of *Tayif*, where he left him for the Space of thirty nine days; not having given him a Soul till the fortieth Day. There is no Necessity to speak here of the Manner how God plac'd *Adam* in *Paradise*, and of his

Meckka.  
Tayif.



Chap. I. of the TATARS.

3

finning against the Almighty in eating the Apple, because that is sufficiently known to us.

*Adam* lived a Thousand Years: his Name is deriv'd from the *Arabick*, in which *Adam* signifies, of the Turf: and because the Angel *Afrail* took some of the Earth of the Turf, he had the Name of *Adam*; but he was surnamed *Sapbi-Jula*. He saw forty Thousand of his Posterity, and nominated before his Death his Son *Shifs* to reign in his Place, who by this means *Seth*, inherited the Dominion of all the Lands which his Father had peopled, and lived four hundred and twelve Years with the Reputation of a great Prophet: At his Death, the Angel *Afrail* receiv'd his Soul, and carry'd it into *Arai*, or *Paradise*. 'Tis from the Language of *Funan*, or *Greece*, that the Name of *Shifs* came to him; but in the *Arabick*, he is called *Ezbafulla*.

His Son *Anus* obtain'd the sovereign Lordship after his Death; and inasmuch as conformable to the Instructions of his Father, he lived in great Holiness and Virtue, they gave him the Name which in *Arabick* signifies *Just*. He *Al Adel* lived 412 Years.

After him reign'd his Son *Shinan*, who died *Kenan*: after having liv'd 240 Years, and had for his Successor his Son

*Melabil*, who perceiving Mankind visibly to increase, was the first who began to build Cities. The first he built was in the Country of *Babel*, and called it *Sufs*. The Houses of this Town were built of Earth and Wood; whereas before Caves, Holes, and Grotto's in the Mountains had serv'd for Men to live in. 'Twas he also who first invented what belongs to the Harvest, and for that End distributed his People among the most fertile Plains. He liv'd 920 Years, and left a Son called



Jared.  
Enoch.

*Berdi*, who lived 960 Years.

His Son and Successor was called in the Greek Language *Achnuch*, on account of his extraordinary Wisdom and Piety; but in *Arabick* he is called *Idriss*. He prophesied and instructed his Subjects during 42 Years: After which an Angel came and took him living, upon his Wings, and carry'd him to Paradise.

Methuselah.

After him reign'd his Son *Matusblach*, who was very Virtuous and Pious; but the Number of the Years he lived is not known.

Lamech.

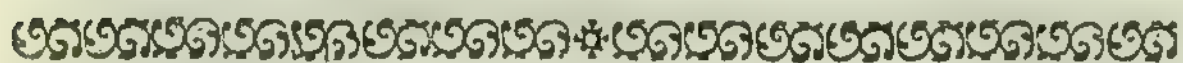
To him succeeded his Son *Zämach*; the Years of whose Life also are unknown: but we know that before his Death he nominated for his Successor his Son

Noah.

*Nui*, who was chosen by God at the Age of 150 Years to be a Prophet; he taught Mankind for the Space of 700 Years the Way to Heaven, without being able in all that time to gain over above eighty Souls, reckoning Men and Women; and perceiving all the rest of Mankind had turn'd away themselves from God, he supplicated God that he would root out that whole Generation. Upon this the Angel *Sabrail* having appear'd to him, said, "Thy Prayer is granted, and God will in a short time destroy all Men by a universal Deluge; for which reason God has order'd you to build an Ark:" The Angel at the same time instructed him in what Manner that Ark should be built. In Obedience to this Command, *Nui* and the eighty true Believers set about building it, and it was scarce finish'd when the Earth open'd her Deeps, and the Heavens sent down Rains without ceasing. Then the Prophet having caused all sorts of living Creatures and Birds, Male and Female to enter into the Ark, he likewise went in himself with the eighty true Believers, and all the



the rest of Mankind, as well as of Animals and Birds, was drown'd by the Deluge. After some time God having shut up the Deeps of the Earth, and made the Rains to cease, the Water insensibly diminish'd.



C H A P. II.

*Of the Posterity of Nui to the Time of Alanza Chan.*

**I**T was on the Mountain of *Dfudi*, between <sup>Gudi,</sup> the Town of *Musel* and that of *Sham*, that <sup>Musell,</sup> *Nui* built the Ark, from whence the Waters <sup>Sham or</sup> rais'd it the first Day of the Month *Redseb* [*Re-* <sup>Damascus.</sup> *geb*] and they kept it sailing till the 10th Day of *Mubaram*, when it rested upon a Mountain; so that it floated six Months and ten Days.

Of all the Men which had enter'd into the Ark with the Prophet, only himself, his Wife, <sup>Of the</sup> and his three Sons and their Wives went alive <sup>Peopling of</sup> out of it; all the rest being dead of Sicknes <sup>the World.</sup> during the Deluge. After which *Nui* dispers'd his three Sons thro' the World, having sent his eldest Son *Ham* to inhabit the *Indies*, his second *Cham*. Son *Sam* to inhabit the Country of *Iran*, and his Sem. youngest Son *Japhis* into the Country of *Kuttup* <sup>Japhet.</sup> *Shamach*, and the neighbouring Lands; injoining them, that forasmuch as there were then no more Men in the World but themselves, they should not begin to build Cities before their Posterity multiply'd. *Japhis* has been look'd upon by some as a Prophet, and by others as a common Man. After he had quitted the Mountain where the Ark rested, he went to settle about the Rivers *Atell* and *Jaigick*, and died at <sup>Wolga,</sup>



ter having liv'd there 250 Years : He left eight Sons and many Kinsfolks and Relations. These are the Names of his Sons ; 1. *Turk*, 2. *Chars*, 3. *Sacklap*, 4. *Rufs*, 5. *Maninach*, 6. *Zwin*, 7. *Camari*, 8. *Tarich*. Before his Death, he appointed his Son *Turk*, to whom he gave the Sirname of *Japhis-Oglany*, to bear chief Rule in his Family ; ordering the rest to obey him and acknowledge him for their Master.

*Turk*. *Turk* was a Man of a superior Genius, having been the first who invented many of the Conveniences of Life ; he made himself Tents,

*Resided at* and pitch'd upon a fix'd Residence in a Place *Isach-koll* call'd at present *Isachkoll*. He had four Sons ; 1. *Taunak*, 2. *Zakale*, 3. *Bersazar*, 4. *Amlak*.

*Taunak*. At his Death he appointed his Son *Taunak* for his Successor, who became a very rich and ingenious Prince, Author of many fine Inventions. It happen'd one Day, that *Taunak* having gone a hunting, and kill'd much Game, order'd a Piece to be roasted ; but when he was just going to eat some of it, he by chance let a Bit drop upon the Ground, and having taken it up, and put it to his Mouth he found it delicious, by reason a Grain of Salt had stuck to it ; which having given him to understand that this Land was impregnated with Salt, he set himself to improve this Discovery, and became the first Inventor of the Use of Salt ; no one before him having known what Salt was, or that it could season Victuals.

*Salt found out,*

Co-temporary with him reign'd a Prince in the Country of *Iran*, call'd \* *Cajumars*. *Taunak* lived 240 Years, and at his Death left his Throne to his Son *Jelza Chan*, who lived many Years, and before his Death appointed his Son

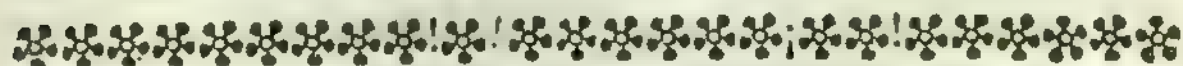
*Jelza Chan.*

[\* *Caiumarrath*, first King of Persia, and of the Family of *Pishdad*.]



*Dibbakui Chan* to succeed him. *Dibbakui Chan* Dibbakui Chan.  
 liv'd also a long time, and dispos'd of the Suc-  
 cession before his Death to his Son *Kajuk Chan*, Kajuk Chan.  
 who reign'd a great Length of Years; and had  
 for his Successor, after his Death, his Son *Alanza*  
*lanza. Chan.* Alanza Chan.

From the Days of *Japhis* and his Descendants, Religion  
 to the Time of *Alanza Chan*, the true Religion continued  
 was preserv'd; and during the Reign of this still uncor-  
 Prince his Subjects liv'd in a profound Peace, rupted.  
 having great Abundance of all sorts of Riches.



C H A P. III.

*Of Alanza Chan and his Posterity, down  
 to Siüntz Chan; descending in the Se-  
 venth Degree from Tatar Chan.*

OUR Forefathers made use of a Proverb, Idolatry  
 which says, "That when a Dog is too introdu-  
 well fed, he grows at last so saucy that he ced.  
 bites his own Master." This was effectually  
 verifi'd in the Subjects of *Alanza Chan*, who,  
 growing wanton in Affluence, forsook the true  
 God to adore Idols; which they also carry'd  
 to such an Extreme, that when any one had lost  
 a Father, a Husband, a Wife, a Child, or in  
 short any other Object which was dear to him,  
 he presently made a Divinity of it, to whose  
 Image he offer'd up his Oblations. 'Tis true,  
 that at first this was not done but in private,  
 but by degrees it became the Fashion to practise  
 it publickly. *Alanza Chan* had two Twin-Sons,  
 the one called \* *Tatar*, and the other *Mogull*, or

\* 'Tis from this Prince the Tatars take their Name, and  
 not from the River Tata, as the Mogulls from Mogull.



more properly *Mung'l*; between whom he divided his Dominions, when he drew near his End.

Tatar  
Chan.

Bucha  
Chan.

Jalanza  
Chan.

Ettela  
Chan.

Attafir  
Chan.

Orda  
Chan.

Baydu  
Chan.

Siuntz  
Chan.

We shall begin at present to say something with regard to *Tatar Chan*; and if God spares me my Life, I shall proceed to speak concerning *Mogul*, or *Mung'l Chan*. *Tatar Chan* liv'd a long time, and had for his Successor after his Death his Son *Bucha Chan*. *Bucha Chan* dying after having reign'd likewise a good while, left the Scepter to his Son *Jalanza Chan*: After *Jalanza Chan*, his Son *Ettela Chan* reign'd: After *Ettela Chan*, *Attafir Chan* came to the Throne, and was engag'd in bloody Wars. After his Death his Son *Orda Chan* possess'd his Dominions a long time in perfect Peace, and after his Death was succeeded by his Son *Baydu Chan*; who having reign'd a great many Years, thought fit to make War on the Descendants of *Mung'l Chan*; but dying in the mean while, his Son *Siuntz Chan* found himself engag'd in so furious a War with the Princes of the Posterity of *Mung'l Chan*, that he had much ado to extricate himself; because the Dominions of the Descendants of *Mung'l Chan* far surpass'd his own in Power and Riches. I shall now treat of *Mogull* or *Mung'l Chan*; and, if I live, I shall not fail to return again to the Reign of *Siuntz Chan*.

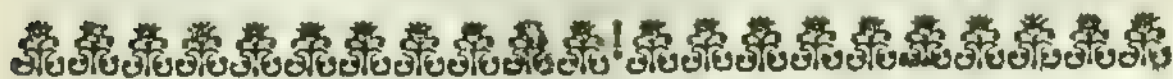






## PART II.

Containing the History of the Generations of the *Tatars*, from *Mung'l Chan* down to *Zingis Chan*; who did not descend in a right Line from the Princes, Successors of *Mung'l Chan*.



### CHAP. I.

*Of Mung'l Chan, and his Posterity.*

**T**HE Term *Mung'l* has been chang'd <sup>Mogull, a</sup> by a general Corruption into *Mogull*. <sup>Corruption</sup> *Mung* signifies Melancholy, or a <sup>of Mung'l.</sup> melancholy Man; and because this Prince was of a very melancholy Disposition, he bore that Name very properly. His Descendants reign'd after him to the Ninth Generation, *Mogull Chan* having been the first of them, and *Ill Chan* the last: *Zingis Chan* reign'd a long time after them. An Author call'd *Sbara-Sudin*, remarks in his Writings, that the *Turks* are accusom'd to seek after the Number Nine \* in whatever they undertake or write, inasmuch as they have that Number in singular Veneration; because God made use of it in the Creation.

\* The Number Nine has been in Veneration, thro' I know not what Frenzy, by most Nations. The Romans and Greeks, the Germans as well as the Gauls have always had great Regard to it in their sacred Ceremonies; also our modern Cabalists pretend still to find Mysteries in it, where none else can see any thing at all.

*Mogull*



*Mogull Chan* having reign'd a long time, died and left four Sons; 1. *Cara Chan*, 2. *Auwas Chan*, 3. *Cauwas Chan*, 4. *Cavar Chan*: But *Cara Chan*, as being eldest, came to the Empire after the Death of his Father, and was a very powerful Prince. During the Summer, he made his Abode about the Mountains of *Ar-tag* and *Car-tag*, called at present *Uluk-tag* and *Kitzik-tag*; and in the Winter-time, his Residence was upon the Banks of the River *Sirr*, at the Foot of the Mountains which are to the North of that River. In his Time none were to be found of the true Religion, the whole World making open Profession of Idolatry.

Country of  
the antient  
Mogulls.

\*\*\*\*\*

## CHAP. II.

### *Of the Birth and Reign of Ogus Chan.\**

Birth of  
Ogus  
Chan.

Fabulous  
Story.

*Cara Chan* had by his Favourite Spouse, a Son, whose Countenance seem'd to shine like the Sun. From the Time of his Birth he would take no Nourishment, tho his Mother continually offer'd him the Breast: Besides that, the Mother dream'd every Night that her Son said to her, "Mother, return to the true Religion, for so long as you continue in your Idolatry I will not receive your Breast tho I should dy by it." Whereupon the Mother, to save the Life of her Child, having made a Vow to resume the Worship of the true God, he immediately fell to sucking her Breast: In the mean time, the Mother did not fail carefully to preserve the Remembrance of this Particular. The *Turks*, who lived between the Time of *Japhis* and *Alanza Chan*, all profess'd the true

[\* The Ottomon *Turks* pretending to be descended from this Prince, call themselves *Oguzians*.]



Religion: but during the Reign of *Alanza Chan*, abusing the Prosperity they enjoy'd, they forsook the true God and stray'd after Idols; which Abomination increas'd every Day till the Time of *Cara Chan*, when the Fury of Idolatry was come to such a Height, that if the Father had a mind to return to the true Religion, he was sure to be knock'd in the Head by his own Children; and the Fathers did the same to those of their Children, who shew'd an Inclination to the true Religion.

In the Time of the Reign of *Mogull Chan*, it was the Custom not to give Names to their Children till they had pass'd the first Year. 'Tis for this reason that *Cara Chan* would not give his Son a Name till he was a Year old. Then having assembled the Lords of his Court, and prepar'd a great Entertainment, he order'd the Infant to be brought, and said to them, "You know that my Son being this Day a Year old, it is time to give him a Name." Whereupon every one keeping Silence to hear what Name the Father would give him, this Child spoke, saying, "What Name mean you to give me? I call my self *Ogus*." The Admiration which this Novelty gave the whole Assembly, to see an Infant but twelve Months old give himself a Name, caus'd them unanimously to consent that he should keep that Name, in the Opinion that he would one Day become a great Prince. When this Boy began to speak, he had continually in his Mouth the Word *Allab! Allab!* which every one made a Subject of Raillery, saying, "This Child is yet so young that he does not understand what he says, uttering the first thing that comes into his Head." But far from being a thing of chance, it was the immediate Work of God, who



who was pleas'd his Name should be glorify'd by the Mouth of this tender Infant.

*Ogus mar-  
ries two  
Wives.*

*Forsakes  
them on  
account of  
Religion.*

*Gets a  
Wife to  
his mind.*

When he was arriv'd at a proper Age, he had given him his Cousin-Germain, the Daughter of *Cavar Chan* in Marriage; with whom being one Day in private, he said to her, "I know him who hath created thee and me, and all that we see; therefore I am of Opinion we ought to obey him in all that he hath commanded us." But she, on her part, not being willing to agree to this Proposal, *Ogus* not only quitted her Bed, but also shunn'd her Company upon all Occasions. *Cara Chan* being inform'd that the new-marry'd Couple liv'd in no good Understanding together, gave his Son another of his Cousins, the Daughter of *Garwas Chan* in Marriage; with whom he had the same Adventure as with the first. Some Years after *Ogus* returning from hunting, pass'd near a Brook, beside which he saw a Woman who was washing Linen, and a Third Cousin of his, Daughter to *Auwas Chan*, sitting by her; whereupon he took her aside, for fear it should be discover'd that he profess'd the true Religion, in case he should speak to her by some body else; and having made her swear she would keep secret all he was going to trust her with; he said, "My Father has given me two Wives, but I cannot love them because they adore Idols, and I live in the true Religion; therefore if you will embrace my Religion and forsake Idolatry, I'll take you in Marriage and love you as long as I live." She having consented to the Proposal of *Ogus*, he ask'd her in Marriage of his Father, who willingly gave her to him; and also made a great Feast on that Occasion. *Ogus* liv'd very agreeably with this last Wife; but some Years after,



after, being gone a hunting a good way from home, *Cara Chan* his Father gave in his Absence a great Entertainment to all his Wives, and likewise invited the Wives of his Son *Ogus*. Among many Discourses which he had with his Wives during the Entertainment, it came into his Head to ask them, if they did not know the reason how it came to pass his Son should love his last Wife so well, and hate his two former? But not being able to get a satisfactory Answer, inasmuch as they knew not the Secret of that Affair, he put the same Question to his Sons Wives. The first of which reply'd, "Your Son is of a Religion different from thine, as is his last Wife as well as he; and because we two were not willing to embrace that Religion as he desir'd us, he hath taken a Hatred to us."

Upon this Answer, *Cara Chan* resolv'd by the Advice of the Lords of his Court to go to the Place where *Ogus* was hunting, in order to put him to death without any Noise. But the last Wife being appriz'd of this Resolution, sent immediately to inform her Husband that his Father was gathering Troops to go and surprize him, because he had learn'd that he profess'd a different Religion from his own. *Ogus* having without Delay spread this News thro' the whole Country, caus'd it to be publish'd at the same time, that all those who pretended to be his Friends should come off-hand to his Assistance; but the Majority sided with the Father, and there were but very few who came to take the Son's Part; of which Number, among others, were the Nephews of *Cara Chan*, the Children of his Brothers, who were fallen much below the Grandure of their Birth, to whom *Ogus* gave the Sirname of *Vigur*, as much as to say, *Vigur's* coming



Cara  
Chan's  
Army rou-  
ted, and  
himself  
slain.

Ogus esta-  
blishes the  
true Reli-  
gion in his  
Domini-  
ons.

Gurgut,  
or Zinu.

Ogus Chan  
wars on  
Tatar  
Chan, on  
account of  
Religion.

Chariots  
invented.

Kankli  
Tribe.

coming to Aid, or Relief. In the mean time, *Cara Chan* being advanc'd with a great Army against his Son, his Troops notwithstanding their great Superiority were beaten, and in the Rout the *Chan* himself receiv'd a Shot with an Arrow in his Head, of which he died not long after.

*Ogus Chan* being advanc'd to the Throne, caus'd an Order to be publish'd that every one should embrace the true Religion; and the better to encourage his Subjects therein, he heap'd Favours upon those who obey'd him readily; whereas he gave no Quarter to those who persisted in Idolatry: And as there dwelt divers People upon his Frontiers who paid no Obedience to his Orders, notwithstanding they had been heretofore under the Dominion of *Mogul Chan*, many of his Subjects who would not quit their Idolatry went and shelter'd themselves among them, which mov'd *Ogus Chan* to make War upon them so briskly, that at last he oblig'd them to submit, except a very few who retir'd into the Dominions of *Tatar Chan*, who resided in the Neighbourhood of *Dsurdsut*. The Town of *Dsurdsut* is very powerful, having several small Towns under its Jurisdiction: 'Tis situate towards the Frontiers of *Kitay*, being called *Zinu* in the *Indian* and *Persian* Language.

*Ogus Chan* embrac'd very eagerly that Occasion to war upon *Tatar Chan*; and having vanquished him, took from him so great a Booty, that it had been impossible to have carry'd it away, if it had not been for an ingenious Man in his Army, who on this Occasion invented Chariots; by the help of which they brought off all the Booty: and because those Chariots skreel'd much, they were call'd *Kun-neck*, and the Author of the Invention *Kankli*: and all those who are call'd at present *Kankli*, are



are of the Posterity of that Man who invented the Use of Chariots.

Ogus Chan, after a War with his Enemies Ogus Chan which lasted 72 Years, oblig'd all his Neigh-<sup>conquers</sup> bours at last to submit to him, and brought <sup>Kitay,</sup> them back to the true Religion. After which <sup>Tangut,</sup> he conquer'd the Empire of *Kitay*, the City of <sup>and Cara</sup> *Kitay*. <sup>Kitay.</sup> *Dsurdsut*, and the Kingdom of *Tangut* with <sup>Gurgut.</sup> *Cara Kitay*. The Capital of *Cara Kitay* is a <sup>Cara Ki-</sup> great City, and the Country is inhabited by Peo-<sup>lay descri-</sup> ple as black as the *Indians*: They live about <sup>bed.</sup> the Lake *Mobill*, between *Kitay* and the *Indies*, <sup>Lake Mo-</sup> drawing towards the South. From thence pas-<sup>hill.</sup> sing behind *Kitay*, he found upon the Sea-Coasts among the Mountains, very warlike People\* who had a *Chan* call'd *Itburak*; who com-<sup>Itburak</sup> ing to meet him with a good Army, receiv'd <sup>Chan.</sup> him with so much Bravery, that he was constrain'd to go back the way he came, and to post himself in an advantageous Camp between two great Rivers, in order to make himself secure against any Surprise. As upon this occasion, *Ogus Chan* and the chief Officers of his Army carry'd their Wives with them, it happen'd that one of his general Officers, who had been kill'd in the Battle, having left his Wife big with Child, she could find no other Place to retire to when her Time was come but an old Hollow-Tree; into which having crept when her Labour came on her, she there brought forth a Son. The *Chan* being inform'd of this Adventure, gave Orders to have this Child carefully brought up, in Consideration that he had lost his Father in his Service, and gave him the Name of *Kipzak*, which signifies in the antient <sup>Kipzak,</sup> *Turkish*, an *Hollow-Tree*. When this Boy was <sup>whence</sup> <sup>named.</sup>

\* The Author undoubtedly speaks here of Tunkin and Cochin China, with which the Situation of this People agrees.

arriv'd



arriv'd to a fit Age, *Ogus Chan* gave him a considerable Army to go and war against the *Vrus-  
ses, Vlaks, Madsabrs, and Bashkirs*, who inhabited along the Banks of the Rivers *Tin, Atell* and *Jaigik*; and having been fortunate enough to bring these People under his Subjection, he reign'd thirty Years in that Country. From him are descended all the *Kipzaks*; and from the Reign of *Ogus Chan*, to that of *Zingis Chan*, for above four Thousand Years, no other Nation has inhabited between those three Rivers, besides the Subjects of the Princes of the Posterity of *Kipzak*. This Country is call'd *Dasht Kipzak*, or the Plain of *Kipzak*.

Dasht  
Kipzak.

Ogus Chan  
conquers  
Itburak  
Chan.

Seventeen Years after *Ogus Chan* attack'd *Itburak Chan* the second time, and having this time entirely defeated him, he put him to death and afterwards made himself Master of his Dominions. On this Occasion he treated those of his own Subjects, who had preserv'd the true Religion, with all the Tenderness imaginable; but caus'd all those whom he found to be Idolaters to be destroy'd. After which turning back, he pass'd by the Frontiers of the *Indies*, drawing towards *Talash, Sairam, Tashkant, Samarkant* and *Bucharia*. First of all he took the Towns of *Sairam* and *Tashkant*, and detach'd his Son from thence with some Troops towards that side, where are the Towns of *Turkestan* and *Andid-  
san*; who having made himself Master of those Cities, came to rejoin his Father after an Absence of six Months. From thence *Ogus Chan* march'd towards *Samarkant*, and after having reduc'd that City, he made himself Master of all the great *Bucharia*: Then he march'd to the Town of *Balk*, and having likewise subdu'd it, he advanc'd in the middle of Winter toward that side where stands the Town of *Chor*; but

Conquers  
Turkestan,  
Andigan.

And Great  
Bucharia.



but as it was extremely cold, and there had fallen abundance of Snow, this March put his Army to infinite Fatigue. In the mean time he continued his Rout, having taken all proper Precautions that none should remain behind. After he had possess'd himself of that Town, he made a Review of his Army in the Spring <sup>Ogus Chan</sup> following; and finding that some had absented <sup>reviews</sup> themselves, he caused diligent Search to be <sup>his Army.</sup> made in order to know what was become of them; and when they were arriv'd some days after, the *Chan* demanded of them where they had been so long. To which they answer'd, that having follow'd the Army at an easy Rate, there fell so much Snow one Night that they <sup>Great</sup> could not possibly re-join it: And as besides that, <sup>Snow.</sup> all their Horses and Camels had burst, they had been oblig'd in spite of themselves, to wait till Spring before they could be able to appear before him. Whereupon the *Chan* gave them the Surname of *Karlik*, in memory of the Snow stopping them on the Road, *Karlik* signifying <sup>Karlik</sup> Snow: And it is from these People that the <sup>Tribe.</sup> *Karliks* deduce their Original.

From thence he march'd towards *Cabull Gasmien*, and *Cashmir*, which are famous Cities to the North of the *Indies*. The Town of *Cashmir* was then in Subjection to a very puissant Prince called *Jagma*; who upon the News <sup>Jagma;</sup> of the March of *Ogus Chan*, possess'd himself of <sup>King of</sup> the Avenues of the Mountains and the Banks <sup>Cashmir.</sup> of the Rivers which are about that Town, and put a Stop to him in this manner for a whole Year. But *Ogus Chan* having at last surmount-ed all these Difficulties, and defeated his Troops, put him to death; and having taken the City, he put the greater Part of the Inhabitants to the Sword. After which he return'd by the Ci-  
C ties



ties of *Badagshan* and *Samarkant* into his hereditary Dominions.

Some time after having taken a Resolution to go and conquer the Country of *Iran*, where among others, are the Cities of *Sham* and *Misser*, he caus'd it to be publish'd that all his Men should provide themselves with Provisions, because they had a long March to make. After which setting forward with numerous Troops near the Town of *Talash*, he join'd those of his Army who had staid behind in his March to the *Indies*; and having ask'd one of them how it came to pass they had delay'd so long coming to him? he made Answer, "Our Horses were quite spent; and for my own part, I was embarrass'd with a Wife who was ready to fall to Pieces without my being able to give her any thing to eat; and being deliver'd on the Road, she was so reduc'd with Hunger that she had not Milk to nourish her Child, which oblig'd me to go and kill some Game, and roast some of the Flesh for my Wife's Support, that she might be in a Condition to give her Infant Suck: This I continued to do till such time as one of the Officers, commanded to gather together the Stragglers of the Army, lighting upon me, press'd me to repair to the Camp." Whereupon the *Chan* having order'd a Horse to be given him, with Provisions, gave him leave to return home, and gave him the Name of *Kall-atz* in memory of that Adventure; for *Kall* signifies *left*, and *atz*, being *hungry*. The Posterity of *Kall-atz*, corruptly call'd *Callatz*, has since that time increas'd to that degree, that there are at present divers very numerous Branches of them in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and in the Cities of the Country of *Chorasan* and *Irak*.

Sham, or  
Damascus.  
Misser, or  
Cairo,

Talash.

Kall-atz  
Tribe.



Ogus Chan decamping from about the Town of *Talash*, march'd thro' the Territory of the Cities of *Samarkant* and *Buchara*; and passing the River *Amu*, went and laid Siege to the Town of *Chorassan*. The Country of *Iran* was just at that Juncture without a Master, for the last Chan, called *Cajumars*, who was a very powerful Prince, dying before his Son *Hausbany* was of an Age capable of holding the Reins of Government, the Lords of the Country, taking the Advantage of the Minority of *Hausbany*, waged War among themselves; which made the Reducing of *Chorassan* very easy to Ogus Chan. From thence he turn'd towards the Cities of *Irak*, *Adirbeindsan*, and *Arméen*; where of he took some by Capitulation, and others by Force. In this Expedition, being in the City of *Sham*, one Day he order'd one of his most faithful Attendants to go into the neighbouring Forest, and there bury secretly, in some Part towards the East, a golden Bow which he put into his hands; but so, that only a little Bit of it could be seen: which having been executed according to his Commands, he gave him also three golden Arrows, with Orders to bury them in like manner; but on the West-side of the Forest. A Year after, having caused his three eldest Sons to be called before him, 1. *Kiun*, or the Sun, 2. *Ay*, or the Moon, 3. *Fuldus*, or the Star, He said to them, "You know, my Children, that we are in a strange Country, where I am so overburden'd with Affairs that I have not time to spare for Hunting; therefore I would have you go in my stead, and that on the East-side; and do not fail to bring me all that you are able to take, for there is a great deal of Game in those Quarters."

Ogus Chan  
invades  
Iran.  
Talash.

Hushangh  
surnam'd  
Pishdad.

Conquers  
Chorasan.

Irak,  
Adirbeng-  
an, Ar-  
menia.  
Sham.

The Ad-  
venture of  
the golden  
Bow and  
Arrows.



As soon as they were departed, accompany'd by Persons whom their Father had named for that purpose, he order'd his three younger Sons to be called, and commanded them as he had done the others to repair to the Chase, but on the West-side. These three last were called, 1. *Kuck*, or the Heaven, 2. *Tag*, or the Mountain, 3. *Zingis*, or the Sea. The three first at their Return, brought to the *Chan*, besides a great Quantity of Game which they took, the golden Bow which they found: and the three latter, who return'd soon after, brought likewise the three golden Arrows, with much Game. The *Chan* having caus'd all the Game to be dress'd, and much other Victuals to be added to it, gave a great Feast on this Occasion for Joy that his three eldest Sons had found a golden Bow, and his three youngest Sons three golden Arrows: and he was pleas'd that the three first should divide the golden Bow among themselves, and that the three others should also keep each of them his golden Arrow.

Ogus Chan  
returns in-  
to his Do-  
minions.

Makes a  
great Feast.

Ogus *Chan* having resided some Years in the Towns he had conquer'd, treated very mildly all those who submitted themselves; but gave no Quarter to such who were so obstinate as to resist him: After which he put strong Garisons into all the Cities of Defense, and led back his Army into his own Dominions. At his Return, he caus'd to be prepar'd a magnificent Tent adorn'd with golden Apples, curiously enrich'd with all sorts of Stones, and having order'd 900 Horses, and 9000 Sheep to be kill'd, and 99 Leathern Bottles with Drink to be provided, whereof 9 were fill'd with Brandy, and 90 with Kumisse, or Mare's-Milk; he gave a great Regale to his Sons, and all the Lords and Officers of Distinction in his Empire. And having thank'd



thank'd his Sons for the inviolable Love and Fidelity which they had always preserv'd towards him; he bestow'd on them many Cities, and gave them Subjects of their own: He also gave Gratuities to each of the Lords of his Court, and his principal Officers according to their Merits; and as he had his Views in causing the golden Bow and Arrows to be bury'd in the Forest near *Sham*, he took Occasion from thence to give his three eldest Sons the Name of *Bussuk*, that is, *broken*, in memory Hence Bussuktu Chan. of the golden Bow which they had found and parted among themselves: and to the three youngest he gave the Sirname of *Utz-ock*, that is to say, *three Arrows*, in Remembrance of the same Adventure: adding, it is not by Chance, but thro' the Will of the living God, that it came to pass that you found that Bow and those Arrows; and seeing our Ancestors have always Ogus Chan prophesies of the Empire of the Bussuks. believ'd that the Bow signify'd the Prince, and the Arrows his Ambassadors, because the Arrow must fly that way the Bow is drawn, and that my eldest Son *Kiun* has found the Bow, he shall reign after my Death, and his Descendants after him, while there shall remain any of the Posterity of the *Bussuks*; and those of the Posterity of the *Utz-ocks* shall be their Subjects for ever.



C H A P. III.

*Of the Children of Ogus Chan, and of their Descendants until Ill Chan.*

OGUS CHAN dying after having reign'd Kiun Chan 116 Years, his Son *Kiun Chan* succeeded succeeds him. He had among those of his Council, an Ogus Chan old



old Counfeller of his Fathers of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, who had the Reputation of a Man of great Parts. This Person being one Day in private with *Kiun Chan*, represented to him that his Father had reign'd 116 Years, and endur'd many Fatigues; only with the View of conquering by his Sword a great Number of Cities and Provinces, and leaving his Posterity a Name full of Glory: That he should possess all *that* so long as he lived in good Harmony with his Brothers; but that the Moment Discord enter'd among them, they would lose all with their Lives and Honour. After having prepar'd *Kiun Chan* by this Discourse, he added, You are six Brothers, each of whom has four Sons; therefore I advise you to divide part of that great Number of Cities and Provinces which your Father has left you among your Brothers and their Children, in order to prevent that Jealousy which will creep in among you, in case one hath all, and the rest nothing: and to this Purpose it will be necessary, that you order a great Entertainment to be prepar'd, to which all shall be invited without Distinction; and you may take that Opportunity to divide the Empire with your Brothers and their twenty four Children, in the Presence of all your Subjects.

*Kiun Chan divides his Dominions amongst his Brothers and their Sons.*

*Kiun Chan* having approv'd of this Council, caused that magnificent Tent which he inherited by his Father to be set up with six other great white Tents on each side. After which he caused to be erected near these Tents, two Trees forty Fathoms high, and a golden Hen to be fix'd on the Top of the Tree, which was planted near the Tents on the right hand; and on the Top of the Tree which was planted near the Tents on the left side, a Hen of Silver; ordering, that all those who bore the Name of

*Bussuk,*



*Buffuk*, should exercise themselves in shooting at the golden Hen running full speed, and that those of the Name of *Utz-ock* should shoot in the same manner at the silver Hen; and he order'd considerable Prizes for those who hit the Hen. This Feast every way resembled the last <sup>Great Feast</sup> which *Ogus Chan* gave, and there were consumed at this, as well as that, 900 Horses, 9000 Sheep, 9 Leathern Bottles \* of Brandy, and 90 of Kumisse: It continued 10 Days and 10 Nights successively, and *Kiun Chan* on this Occasion publicly divided the Inheritance of his Father, not only with his Brothers and their 24 Children, but he also assign'd a convenient Portion to the other Sons which his Brothers had by their Concubines, which were likewise pretty numerous.

*Ogus Chan* left six Sons; 1. *Kiun Chan*, 2. *Ogus Ay Chan*, 3. *Julduss Chan*, 4. *Kuk Chan*, 5. *Tag Chan*, 6. *Zingis Chan*; each of these six <sup>Ogus Chan's Children</sup> Brothers had four Sons in lawful Wedlock. The Sons of *Kiun Chan* were called; 1. *Kagi*, 2. *Bayat*, 3. *Alkaaduli*, 4. *Carajuli*. The Sons of *Ay Chan* were called; 1. *Jasir*, 2. *Japhir*, 3. *Dodurga*, 4. *Dugar*. The Names of the Sons of *Julduss Chan* were; 1. *Ushar*, 2. *Kasik*, 3. *Begdali*, 4. *Karkin*. The Sons of *Kuk Chan* were called; 1. *Bajender*, 2. *Bazina*, 3. *Zauldor*, 4. *Zabni*. The Sons of *Tag Chan* were called; 1. *Salur*, 2. *Imar*, 3. *Alajunti*, 4. *Usgar*. The Sons of *Zingis Chan* were named; 1. *Igder*, 2. *Baydus*, 3. *Auwa*, 4. *Kannek*.

The six Sons of *Ogus Chan* had likewise each four natural Sons, which make in all twenty four, viz. 1. *Kana*, 2. *Luna*, 3. *Turbati*, 4.

[\* Rather Sheeps Skins, called by the Spaniards *Borra-chios*.]



Karedi, 5. Sultanli, 6. Okli, 7. Kukli, 8. Sultzli, 9. Harasanli, 10. Furazi, 11. Zamzi, 12. Turunco, 13. Kumi, 14. Surki, or, as they name it at present, *Surchi*, 15. Kortzik, 16. Suerzik, 17. Carasib, 18. Kasquet, 19. Kergis, 20. Takàn, 21. Za, 22. Zama, 23. Murda, 24. Shuy.

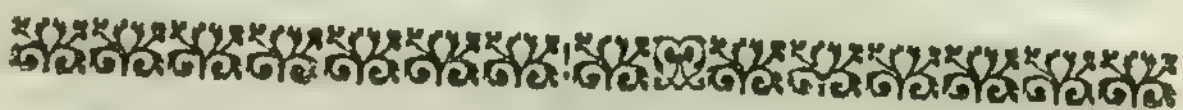
Ay Chan's  
Reign.

Juldus  
Chan.

Mengli  
Chan.

Tinjis  
Chan.  
Ill Chan.

*Kiun Chan* dying after having reign'd seventy Years, his Brother *Ay Chan* succeeded him: *Ay Chan* at length also dying, had for his Successor *Juldus Chan*; not his Brother of that Name, but another of the same House. *Juldus Chan* held the Reins of the Empire with great Conduct and Prudence, but he did not live long; and after his Death his Son *Mengli Chan* succeeded him, who having also reign'd very worthily, dyed in Peace at a great Age, and left the Empire to his Son *Tinjis*; who in his old Age, resign'd the Crown in favour of his Son *Ill Chan*, that he might employ the remainder of his Days in Exercises of Devotion. *Ill Chan* reign'd a long time over the *Mogulls*.



#### C H A P. IV.

*Of the Life and Reign of Siuntz Chan, and the Destruction of the Empire of the Mogulls.*

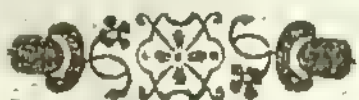
Ill Chan  
and Siuntz  
Chan Con-  
tempora-  
ries.

**I**LL Chan and Siuntz Chan reign'd at the same time; Ill Chan being of the Posterity of Mogull Chan, and Siuntz Chan descended from Tatar Chan. These two Princes were continually at War together, but Ill Chan always carry'd away the Victory, which oblig'd Siuntz Chan to send Ambassadors with magnificent Presents



sents to the *Chan* of the *Kergis*, who was a Po-<sup>Chan of</sup> tent Prince, to engage him to come to his Af-<sup>the Kergis.</sup> sistance: but, as *Ill Chan* appear'd still too formidable for them both, and *Siuntz Chan* propos'd to make his Part so good this time, as to assure himself of Success in his Enterprize, he <sup>Confedera-</sup> took such effectual Methods to raise a Jealousy <sup>cy against</sup> of the too great Power of *Ill Chan* in the Prin-<sup>Ill Chan.</sup> ces his Neighbours, that they all united with him in order to keep him under. As soon as *Ill Chan* receiv'd Advice of this Confederacy, he went and encamp'd in a very advantageous Place and so fortify'd himself, that notwithstanding the Confederate Princes attack'd his Camp several times with all their Forces, they were not able to force it, which oblig'd them to come to a Resolution to order their Men, that at the Attack which they were to make the next Day, they should, after a slight Skirmish, throw away their Arms, and every thing they had, and feign a Flight towards a Place where they had planted the best of their Troops in Ambuscade, in order to draw their Enemies into it \*. This Stratagem having succeeded to their Wishes, the Army of *Ill Chan* was sur-<sup>Ill Chan</sup> rounded on all sides, in such wise that it was <sup>over-</sup> entirely cut to Pieces; after which the Allies <sup>thrown.</sup> having with ease carry'd the Intrenchments of <sup>The Em-</sup> the *Mogulls*, made all those Prisoners who were <sup>pire of the</sup> saved from the Defeat of the Enemy, and ut-<sup>Mogulls</sup> terly subverted the Empire of the Descendants <sup>destroy'd.</sup> of *Mogull Chan*.

\* *A Method of Fighting used of old by all the Scythians.*





## C H A P. V.

*Of the Fortune of Kajan and Nagos, the only Remains of the Posterity of Mogull Chan.*

*Adventure  
of Kajan  
and Na-  
gos.*

AS soon as *Siuntz Chan* had finish'd that Expedition he return'd with his Army into his own Country. *Ill Chan* had several Children, but they all lost their Lives with him in that unfortunate Battle, except the youngest of his Sons called *Kajan*, and his Nephew *Nagos*, his Brother's Son, who were both of an Age, and marry'd in the same Year. These two Princes who had been taken Prisoners, seeing themselves with their Wives under the Guard of only one Man, came to a Resolution after ten Days Captivity, to betake themselves to Flight with their Wives, and return into their own Country; where being happily arriv'd, they first of all appropriated to themselves all the Camels, Horses, Cows and Sheep which escaped from the Action, having none to dispute them with them; and judging a while after those Quarters were not over secure for them, they took the Clothes which they found on the Field of Battle and retir'd into the Mountains.

*They  
dwell in  
the Moun-  
tain of  
Irgana-  
kon.*

They pass'd in this manner from Mountain to Mountain, till arriving with their Wives and Cattle at the Foot of a very high one, they could find no way to pass it but a small Path very narrow, made by certain Animals called in the *Tatar* Language *Archara*; and tho they search'd all about the Mountain for another Road, they could find none; which obliged them to make use of this Path, tho it was so strait



strait there could not pass above one at a time, and that with the unavoidable hazard of breaking one's Neck at the least false Step. Having ascended the Mountain on one side by this Path, they descended it also on the other side by the same way, and were not a little rejoiced to find a Landskip perfectly agreeable, interspersed with Brooks and charming Meadows, abounding in all sorts of delicious Fruits: But what pleas'd them most was, that beholding it inclosed on all sides with inaccessible Mountains, they had room to believe themselves shelter'd from the Pursuits of their Enemies.

Content with their Destiny, they fed in this Place, during the Winter, upon the Flesh of their Beasts, the Skins of which also serv'd them for several Uses, and in Summer liv'd on Milk-Meats and Fruits. They call'd this Country *Irgana-kon*, in allusion to its Situation; *Irgana* signifying in the old Language of the *Mogulls*, *kon*. a Valley, and *Kon*, a steep Height. After this in process of Time their Posterity very much increased; *Kajan* whose Posterity were most numerous, called his Descendants *Kajath*; and *Nagos* who had a less numerous Issue, called one Part of his Descendants *Nagosler*, and the other Part *Durlagan*. *Kajan* had received the Name which he bore from his Father *Ill Chan*, because all the Children of *Ill Chan* were exceeding robust and vigorous Men. *Kajan* signifying a Torrent which falls down with Rapidity from the Top of a Rock.

*Kajan* and *Nagos*, and their Descendants after Lived in them, dwelt in this Place above 400 Years, till the Mountain finding it at last too narrow for them, they made 400 Years. a general Meeting to deliberate upon the State of their Affairs; and forasmuch as they had learned from their Ancestors, that the Country behind



*Melt their  
way thro'  
the Moun-  
tain.*

*Still cele-  
brate the  
Day of  
that Sally.*

behind those Mountains from whence *Siuntz Chan* had driven them, was a fine and extensive Country, they came to a Resolution to return there; but they were at a Nonplus to find a Road to carry them out of the Inclosure of these Mountains, because the Path, by which their Forefathers had found the way into it, was destroy'd thro' length of Time: whereupon a Farrier, who thought he had observ'd that the Mountain was not over thick in a certain Place, and also that it entirely consisted of Iron-Mine, propos'd to apply Bellows to it, to try if it was not feasible to dissolve this Mountain by Fire. This Counsel having been unanimously approv'd of, every one carry'd thither Wood and Charcoal; and having laid round the Foot of the Mountain, one Bed of Wood and another of the Coal, they set Fire to it; which they so effectually blew up by the help of 70 Leathern Bellows, that the Mountain at last coming to melt in this Place, left a Road large enough for the Passage of a loaded Camel; and by this Road they all march'd out with great Joy.

To perpetuate the Memory of this miraculous going forth, the *Mogulls* still celebrate the Anniversary of it with the following Solemnities. They kindle upon that Day a great Fire, wherein they put a Piece of Iron to make it red-hot; after which the *Chan* gives the first Stroke with a Hammer upon the Piece of Iron, and then all the Heads of the Tribes and other Officers of Distinction, each according to his Rank, give it a Stroke with a Hammer; and when they have done, the common People do as much: which thing is observ'd thro' the whole Extent of the Empire of the *Mogulls*, in Remembrance of that Sally.



The *Mogulls* had at that time a *Chan* of the Family of *Curlafs*, of the Posterity of *Kajan*, call'd *Bertezena*; who immediately after this *Bertezena* Sally sent Embassadors to all the neighbouring *Chan* People, to let them know, that having issued *sends Em-* out of *Irgana-kon*, he offer'd his Protection to *bassadors* all those who having been heretofore of the In-*to the* heritance of the Princes of *Mogull Chan*, should *neighbour-* submit themselves to him; but that he would *ing People* pursue with Fire and Sword all such as refus'd *to submit.* to return to their Duty: which induced some of the People voluntarily to put themselves under his Government.

In the mean time the Princes, Descendants *The Poste-* of *Tatar Chan*, being alarm'd with so unexpect-*rity of* ed a Piece of News, did not fail without delay *Tatar* to take up Arms and go in quest of *Chan de-* *Bertezena* *Chan*; but he entirely defeated them, and put *Chan.* to the Sword all the *Tatars* capable of bearing Arms, who upon this occasion fell into his Hands; giving Quarter to none but the young People whom he divided among his *Mogulls*: This happen'd just 450 Years after the Name of *Tatars* the *Mogulls* had been lost by the Defeat of *Ili* *more nu-* *merous* *than the* *Mogulls.* *Chan*: And notwithstanding the *Tatar* Nation was much more numerous than that of the *Mogulls*, the neighbouring *Aimacks*, or Tribes, *Aimack,* induced by the Victory which these latter had *or Tribe.* obtain'd, without more ado put themselves under the Protection of *Bertezena Chan*, which augmented his Forces considerably.

There was a Man in the City of *Caswin*, call'd \* *Chodsa Rasbidt*, who reports in his Writings, that there was one of the Descendants of *Taulai Chan*, the Son of *Zingis Chan*, who reigning in the Country of *Iran*, was the first of *Mogull*

\* *Choga Rashid, the same as Fadlallah, Author of the History of the Mogulls and Tatars.*



Extraction who embrac'd the Religion of the *Mahometans*, which is the true one. This was *Gasan Chan*, Son of *Argun Chan*, Son of *Abka Chan*, Son of *Halacu Chan*, Son of *Taulai Chan*; he built a City for himself to reside in, but we know not the Name of it: and the Year after he came to the Crown of those Provinces, he said to *Chodsa Rashidt*, who was of his Council, " God be prais'd the *Mahometan* Worship is " well establish'd among us; and since the time " that my great Grandfather *Halacu Chan* came " from the Country of the *Mogulls* to reign o- " ver these Provinces, there have pass'd two or " three Generations: Wherefore it is necessary " that I should order a Book to be compiled of " the Families, Religion and Customs of our " *Mogulls* to leave it to Posterity; and as it is " not possible for me to set about it my self, " and that I have no body but you who is ca- " pable of doing it well, I intend to put into " your hands all the Books which I have rela- " ting to that Matter; and seeing they are " written in the *Mogull* Language, I will join " to your Assistance one of the Lords of my " Court, called *Fulat*, surnamed *Zabixang*, who " understands perfectly that Language, to the " end that you may carry on that Work with " Success:" In which *Chodsa Rashidt* having obey'd his Master, he finish'd that Book in the Year 702, and called it *Dsamastavaroh*. 'Tis from that Book, and 17 others, that I *Abulgasi Bayadur Chan* have extracted the Contents of mine, which I begun to write 372 Years after *Chodsa Rashidt*. 'Tis true that in that Interval there are to be found many Writers who have been pleased to meddle with it; but as they did not understand the different Languages which they stood in need of on that occasion, they

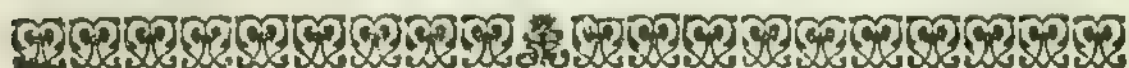
Fulat, or  
Pulad.

An. Dom.  
1302.  
Gami al  
Tawarik.



they have committed gross Faults, and have in a manner entirely confounded the Generations. Wherefore having been obliged for certain Reasons to remain a whole Year in the Country of the *Calmacks*, I have had Opportunity to <sup>Calmacks</sup> learn the Language of the *Mogulls*; and the <sup>and Mo-</sup> reason why I have written this Book in the *Mogull* or *Turkish* Language, without meddling <sup>same Lan-</sup> with the others, is that it may be every where <sup>guage.</sup> in use; and if God spares me my Life, I am resolv'd to translate it hereafter into the *Persian*.

I come now to treat of the principal Tribes which compose the *Turkish* Nation; and in the first place, I shall speak of the Tribes which have no Connexion with the *Mogulls*, descended from *Kajan* and *Nagos*: and after that, I shall treat of those which deduce their Origin from the *Mogulls*, since their sallying out of *Irganakon*.



## C H A P. VI.

*Of the Tribes of Kanklis, Kipzaks, Kall-atz, and Carliks.*

THERE are five *Aimacks* or Tribes which derive their Name from *Ogus Chan*, whereof there is only one, viz. the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, which sprung from the Posterity of *Mogull Chan*. The four others are the Tribe of the *Kanklis*, the Tribe of the *Kipzaks*, the Tribe of the *Kall-atz*, and the Tribe of the *Carliks*; of which something has been hinted in the Life of *Ogus Chan*.

The Tribe of the *Kall-atz* dwells among the <sup>Kall-atz</sup> *Turcmanns*, in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and <sup>Tribe.</sup> the Province of *Chorassan*. <sup>Turk-</sup> <sup>manns.</sup>

The



Kipzaks  
Tribe.

The Tribe of the *Kipzaks* has always inhabited the Banks of the Rivers *Tin*, *Atell* and *Jaigik*.

Kanklis  
Tribe.

The Tribe of the *Kanklis* dwelt for some time jointly with the *Turcmanns* in the sandy Deserts; but when these last went to live in Towns, the *Kanklis* went and dwelt about the Rivers *Ifsikul*, and *Tallash*; where they have inhabited a long while.

Now Te-  
kees and  
Ila.

Vigish  
Chan of  
Chowar-  
azm.  
Sultan  
Moham-  
med  
his Son.

*Vigish Chan* of *Urgens*, having espoused a Wife out of this Tribe called *Turkan*, he had by her one Son, who was called afterwards *Sultan Mahamet Shah* of *Charafs'm*, and came to be a Prince exceeding powerful\*: He usually resided in the City of *Urgens*, and had obliged all the neighbouring Countries to submit to him, viz. on the East-side the *Indies* and *Bucharia*;

Or Andig-  
an.

‡That is, all  
possessed by  
the Arabs  
on this side  
Gihun,  
except A-  
rabia.

on the North-side the Towns of *Turkestan* and *Andidsan*; Southward the Country of ‡ *Arabistan*, and Westward the Country of *Rubm*: he conferr'd many Favours on those of the Tribe of *Kanklis*, for the sake of his Mother. His Uncle *Chamar*, Brother to his Mother, coming to see him, and turning *Mahometan*, he placed him at the Head of his Council. *Inallzik*, who was his Mother's Cousin-Germain, being Brothers Children, having likewise come to pay his Court to him, he honour'd him with the Name of

\* This Prince, whose Ancestors were rais'd successively from being Slaves to the Governor of the Country of *Charafs'm* to the Government, and from the Government to the Sovereignty of the Country, always retain'd the Name of *Shah* of *Charafs'm*, tho he possess'd in a manner all Persia and the Great *Bucharia*, with part of the *Armenias* and *Syria*. He mounted to so great Power, upon the Decay of the Grandeur of the *Selgiukid Sultans*; the last of which he put to death, notwithstanding he and his Ancestors ow'd all their Fortune to the Favours of the Princes of that House.

[This is the same Prince, who is called by most other Authors *Tacash*.]



Gagir Chan, and gave him the Property of the Town of *Turkestan*,\* after he had embrac'd *Mahometism*. Another Man of the Tribe of the *Kanklis*, call'd *Kuk*, repairing also to Court, he conferr'd on him the Government of the *Great Bucharia*, and gave him the Title of *Kuk-Chan*. Turkestan under Sultan Mohammed.

There were between 50 and 60000 Men of the Tribe of *Kanklis*, who put themselves in Subjection to Sultan *Mahamet*, *Schah* of *Charass'm*; but there remain'd about 10000 along the Banks of the Rivers *Iffikull* and *Tallash*, whom *Zingis Chan* put to the Sword, when he went to make War against Sultan *Mahamet*. 10000 Families of the Kanklis put to the Sword by Zingis Chan. Nevertheless there have sprung up since then some of that Tribe, without any one being able to find out from whence they came.

Those of the Tribe of *Carliks*, have always inhabited the Mountains of the Country of the *Mogulls*, living on the Produce of their Lands and Herds. They elected their *Chans* out of their Tribe, and might make in all 20000 Families; but *Zingis Chan* coming to the Empire, and having conquer'd many neighbouring Towns and Provinces, sent a Man named *Berlas Koplay-Noyan* on an Embassy to the *Carliks*, to persuade them to submit to him. Whereupon *Arslan Chan*, who was at that time their Prince, took a Resolution to go and offer him a very pretty Daughter which he had, with very magnificent Presents, and to put himself under his Protection. In Requital of which, *Zingis Chan* gave him one of his Cousins in Marriage: But when he was gone back, he said it was too much to call him *Arslan Chan*, and that the Name of *Arslan-Syrak* fitted him better; for the *Mogulls* make use of the Term *Syrak*, signifying a poor spirited Person, when they would speak of a Arslan Chan of the Carliks.

\* This seems to have been after *Kutshluk's* Death.



Tagicks. sort of Men whom they call *Tadsicks*; because those *Tadsicks* are a very simple People.



## C H A P. VII.

*Of the Tribe of the Vigurs.*

The true  
Country  
of the  
Mogulls.  
Now  
Uluk-tag,  
and Kit-  
zik-tag.

Now  
Chaltay.

Country of  
the Vi-  
gurs.

Vigurs at  
first had  
no Chans.

Divide  
and choose  
two Kings.

IN the Dominions of the *Mogulls* there are found two Chains of very high Mountains which extend from the East to the West, of which one is called *Tugra Tubusluk*, and the other *Uskun Luk Tugra*: Between these two Chains of Mountains, towards the West, lies the true Country of the *Mogulls*, and beyond that more Westward yet is another Mountain which they call *Kutt*: between these three Mountains the *Vigurs* inhabited heretofore; and as one finds in this Country ten Rivers on one side, and nine on the other, one part of the Country of *Vigurs*, call'd *Un-Vigurs*, inhabited about the aforesaid ten Rivers, and the other part dwelt about the other nine Rivers, and these last bore the Name of *Tokos Vigurs*: They got these different Names from the Number of the Rivers about which they inhabited; *Un* signifying in the *Turkish* Language ten, and *Tokos* nine.

These two Kindred Tribes possess'd a great Number of Towns, Villages and Subjects, without having Chans, notwithstanding they were numerous, consisting of more than 120 particular Branches: At length a great Diffension arising amongst them, they resolv'd to choose two separate Kings; in pursuance of which Resolution, the *Un-Vigurs* elected a Prince of their Tribe called *Mangatati*, to whom they gave the Sur-



name of *Il-ittar*; and the *Tokos Vigurs* chose al-*Il-ittar*.  
so a Prince of their Tribe, whom they call'd *Il-Il-irgin*.  
*irgin*: These Princes and their Descendants  
reign'd more than 100 Years over the *Vigurs*,  
preserving always the same Name which the  
first Princes bore. After which these two Tribes  
coming to unite together, had but one and the  
same Prince whom they call'd *Idi-kut*, signifying *Idi-kut*,  
in the *Turkish* Tongue, *sent by the Spirit*: *Idi* <sup>i. e. sent</sup>  
importing, *being sent*, and *Kut*, the *Spirit or Soul*: <sup>by the Spi-</sup>  
But in the Language of the *Usbeks*, it is as much  
as to say, *a free Man who is not subject to any*  
*body*.

These two united People lived together in *Live uni-*  
these Mountains almost 2000 Years in Peace; <sup>ted for</sup>  
but in the End a new Difference arising among <sup>2000</sup>  
them, they separated for good and all; one <sup>Years</sup>  
part of them remaining in those Districts, and <sup>Separate</sup>  
the other going to inhabit about the Banks of <sup>again</sup>  
the River *Irtis*. These last divided once more  
into three Branches, whereof one went and  
dwelt in the Town of *Bishbalik*, and subsisted *Bishbalik*,  
by cultivating the Lands thereabout. The se-  
cond dispers'd themselves in the Neighbourhood  
of that Town, feeding upon their Cattle; and  
the third Branch continued beside the *Irtis*, liv-*R. Irtis*,  
ing by Fishing and Hunting of Zibelines, Castors,  
Martins, Squirrels, and such like Beasts, of  
which they eat the Flesh, and employ'd the  
Skins to make them Clothes, because they were  
always accusom'd to go clad with nothing but  
what was made of Skins: These last conceiv'd  
so great a Hatred to that sort of Life which  
their Brethren had chosen, that it was a great  
Curse among them, to wish a Man to be re-*Vigurs*  
duc'd to live among Men who fed upon Beasts, <sup>Curse</sup>  
eat their Meat dress'd, and chang'd Garb.



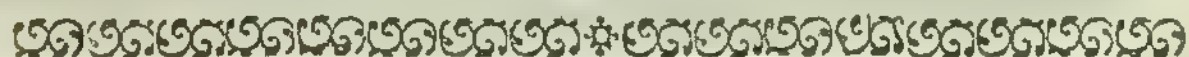
Banerzick  
Idi-kut  
Chan.

Cavar  
Chan of  
Turke-  
stan.

Vigurs a-  
bout the  
Irtis ex-  
pert in the  
Turkish,  
and in  
Writing.

Employ'd  
as Secreta-  
ries by  
Zingis  
Chan and  
his Suc-  
cessors.

*Banerzik Idi-kut Chan*, who was their Prince in the Time of *Zingis Chan*, submitted to this Conqueror, to secure himself against *Cavar Chan* of *Turkestan*, and every Year sent him considerable Presents; he came also in Person to join him with a good Number of Troops, when he went to attack *Sultan Mahamet Shab* of *Charafs'm*; and as there were among the *Vigurs* many Persons skill'd in the *Turkish* Language, and expert at the Pen, *Zingis Chan* made use of them to very good purpose in all his Expeditions as Secretaries to the Chancery; and the Princes his Descendants, who reign'd after him in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and over the Cities of *Irak* and *Chorassan*, continued for a long time to make use of them in that Quality. *Ugadai Chan*, among others, having succeeded his Father in the Empire of the *Mogulls*, conferr'd the Government of the Province of *Chorassan*, *Masanderan*, and *Gilan*, on a Man of that Tribe, call'd *Vigur Kurgur*, who gave him an Account every Year of all the Revenues of the Cities of his Government.



### C H A P. VIII.

*Of the Tribes of the Takrins; of the Kergis, of the Camcamzuts, and of the Ur-mankatts.*

Takrins.

**Z**ingis Chan having begun to make himself formidable, sent an Ambassador to the *Takrins*, with Orders to say, “ God has made  
“ me a very puissant Prince, and the three  
“ Parts



“ Parts of the World obey my Orders ; where-  
 “ fore I expect that you will submit to my Go-  
 “ vernment.” Thereupon their Prince, called  
*Bugai-Zinantz Chan*, came to a Resolution to pro-  
 mise him Obedience, and having a very pretty  
 Daughter, he sent her to him with magnificent  
 Presents. *Zingis Chan* having receiv’d the  
 Maid and the Presents, caus’d the Embassadors  
 of *Bugai-Zinantz Chan* to be very splendidly en-  
 tertain’d, and plac’d his Daughter among the  
 Number of his Wives. After the Death of  
*Zingis Chan*, his Son *Ugadai Chan*, tho he had  
 already many Wives, yet found so much Beauty  
 in this Daughter of *Bugai-Zinantz Chan*, who  
 had been one of his Father’s Wives, that he  
 marry’d her, and lov’d her better than all his o-  
 ther Wives.

*Bugai-  
Zinantz  
Chan of  
Kergis  
submits to  
Zingis  
Chan.*

*Ugadai  
Chan  
marries  
one of his  
Father’s  
Wives.*

The Tribe of the *Kergis* was none of the most  
 numerous at first ; but as it possess’d a Country  
 very agreeable, full of Rivers and fertile Fields,  
 many of the *Mogulls* and other People came  
 and join’d themselves with this Tribe ; which  
 considerably increas’d the Number of its Fa-  
 milies. In the Time of *Zingis Chan*, the *Kergis*  
 had a Prince called *Urufs Inall*, to whom *Zingis*  
*Chan* sent two Embassadors call’d *Altai* and  
*Taramish*, to summon him to submit himself.  
 This Prince finding himself too weak to run the  
 Hazard of drawing so formidable a Neighbour  
 upon his Back, was oblig’d to comply with the  
 Times, and do what was demanded of him.  
 Pursuant to which, having dismiss’d the Embas-  
 sadors, he sent back with them one of his chief  
 Officers, charg’d with magnificent Presents for  
*Zingis Chan* ; among which there was a Bird all  
 white, having only the Feet, Eyes, and the Bill  
 red. This Bird is called in the *Turkish* Language  
*Shungar*, but the *Russians* call it *Kratzshet*.

*Urufs  
Inall,  
Prince of  
the Kergis.*

*Submits to  
Zingis  
Chan.*

*Strange  
Bird, by  
the Turks  
Shungar,  
by the  
Russians*



Camcam-  
zut  
Towns.

Aprusir  
Towns,  
No such at  
present.

Ur-man-  
katts  
submit to  
Zingis  
Chan.

Another  
Tribe of  
the same  
Name, but  
different.

There are two Towns call'd *Camcamzut*, which are very near one another, between two great Rivers; whereof one is call'd *Selanga*, and the other *Ikar-muran*. Besides these, there are also two other Towns upon the Frontiers of the *Kergis*, both of them call'd *Aprusir*.

There is a particular Tribe of People which are call'd *Ur-mankatts*, because they dwell in the Places most remote and full of Forests: They are Neighbours to the *Kergis*, and submitted as well as those to *Zingis Chan*. There is also another Tribe of the same Name, but quite different from this; tho the People belonging to it lead much the same Course of Life. These last are of the Posterity of *Mogull Chan*, by his Grandson *Ogus Chan*; and that Name has been given them also because of their living always in the Forests.



## C H A P. IX.

### *Of the Tribe of the Tatars.*

Tatar  
Tribe.

Biurnaver  
Country  
subject to  
Kitay.

THE Tribe of the *Tatars* is one of the most antient and famous of the *Turkish* Nations; it was heretofore above 70000 Families strong, and had only one *Chan* who was very potent: But being afterwards divided into several Branches, its Power by degrees began to decline. The principal Branch of the *Tatars* went and dwelt towards the Borders of *Kitay*, in the Country of *Biurnaver*, and was brought in Subjection to the Empire of *Kitay*. But the *Tatars* of this Branch revolting some time after, the Emperor of *Kitay* was oblig'd to make a severe War upon them before he could bring them again to their Duty; which has very often been the Case with them since.

Ano-



Another Branch of the Tribe of the *Tatars* went and settled upon the Banks of the River *Ikar*, or *Ikran Muran*: This River glides along <sup>River</sup> the Frontiers of the *Kergis*, and having receiv'd <sup>Ikar,</sup> thereabouts the Waters of many other Rivers, <sup>now Jeni-</sup> enlarges it self considerably, and at last after a long Course falls into the *Azoch-Zingis*, or <sup>sea.</sup> bitter Sea. Near its Mouth there is a great Town, which commands several small ones thereabouts, call'd *Alachzin*, that is to say, *pie*d; because *Alachzin* the Inhabitants of that Town have none but <sup>Town.</sup> *pie*d Horfes: All the People who inhabit the neighbouring Lands, and breed great Numbers of Beasts, are subject to this Town\*. The Horfes <sup>Pied Hor-</sup> found in this Country are of a very tall size, <sup>ses.</sup> a Colt of a Year old being as large as a Horse of three Years old elsewhere; and more than that, they are all *pie*d. There are rich silver Mines in the Neighbourhood of that Town; and 'tis for that reason that nothing is seen there but silver Plate. The *Usbeks* know by Tradition, <sup>A Tradition.</sup> that there is a Nation in some part of the World that makes use of nothing but Gold or Silver Plate, and has none but *pie*d Horfes; but they cannot say precisely where that Nation is.

After the Death of *Zingis Chan*, the *Kergis*, <sup>Attempt</sup> with some other neighbouring People, fell to the <sup>to discover</sup> Share of *Taulai Chan*; who dying some time <sup>the Coun-</sup> after, his favourite Spouse call'd *Siurchochtny-* <sup>try be-</sup> *begi*, sole Mother of all his Children, having <sup>yond A-</sup> the Charge of the Regency of the Country, <sup>lachzin.</sup> caus'd three Officers of Distinction to embark with 1000 chosen Men, to go upon the Discovery of this Country; with Orders, if they found a favourable Opportunity, to make War

\* The Russians have a Tradition like this of a *pie*d People some where in Siberia. See Vol. II.



*Fictitious  
Relation.*

*Plenty of  
Silver.*

with the Inhabitants of *Alachzin*; but if they did not, that then at least they should not return, without bringing home some Informations that might be depended upon of the true State of that Country. These Officers having departed with these Instructions, return'd a long time after with 300 Men, which remain'd of the 1000 they had at setting out, and gave an Account that all which was said of these People was true; but that the Air was so unwholesom there that they had lost the greatest part of their Men, who were not accusom'd to the Intemperature of that Climate. That indeed they had found Silver sufficient to load their Vessels with it; but as they were oblig'd to sail up the River against the Stream in their Return, they had been forc'd to throw it all away for want of Hands.



## CHAP. X.

*Of the Tribe of the Virats, and its several Branches.*

*Tagicks.*

*Country of  
the Virats.*

**I** MUST take notice here by the by, that the *Turks* in their antient Language call all great Rivers *Sai*; the *Tadsicks* call the small Rivers *Ruth*, and the great ones *Ruth Canna*. The *Arabians* call the great Rivers *Uwady*, and the *Mogulls* name them *Muran*.

In the Country of the *Mogulls*, there are on the East-side eight Rivers, which all fall into the great River *Ikar*, or *Ikran Muran*, and they call them all by one common Name, *Se-kir Muran*, or Eight Rivers, of which these are



are the Names; 1. *Kok Muran*, 2. *On Muran*, 3. *Cara Uffun*, 4. *Sebikan*, 5. *Ikran Muran*, 6. *Akar Muran*, 7. *Zagan Muran*, 8. *Chodsa Muran*: About these Rivers heretofore dwelt the *Virats*.

In the Time of *Zingis Chan*, those of the Tribe of the *Virats* had a Prince called *Tochta-<sup>Tochtabe-</sup>begi*, who had two Sons; one call'd *Inalzi*, and <sup>gi, Prince</sup> the other *Tauranzi*. This *Chan* and his two <sup>of the Vi-</sup> Sons, after having for a good while maintain'd <sup>rats,</sup> War against *Zingis Chan*, were in the end van- <sup>reduced</sup> quish'd, and the *Virats* reduc'd under the Sub- <sup>by Zingis</sup> Chan. <sup>Chan.</sup> jecti<sup>on</sup> of the *Mogulls*. The *Torgauts*, the *Ku-<sup>Torgauts.</sup>* <sup>Kuriss.</sup> *riss*, and the *Utulass* draw their Origin from the <sup>Utulass.</sup> Tribe of the *Virats*; but they have separated and form'd particular Branches. The *Torgauts* bear that Name, because they inhabit beyond a Country call'd *Salika*, which is beyond the Coun- <sup>Salika.</sup> try of the *Mogulls*, which has given them the Name of *Torga-ut*.

The *Tumats* are likewise sprung from the *Tumats* Tribe of the *Virats*: They dwell upon the *Bor-<sup>inhabit</sup>* ders of the *Kergis*, in the Country of *Barkutzin-<sup>the Coun-</sup>* *tugum*, and had in the Reign of *Zingis Chan* a <sup>try of Bar-</sup> Prince call'd *Tatula Sukar Chan*, who was o- <sup>cutzin-</sup> bliged to submit himself to the *Mogulls*.

The *Boygazins* and the *Hirmuzins* are also two *Boygazins* Branches of the Tribe of the *Virats*; they dwell <sup>and Hir-</sup> in the neighbourhood of the *Kergis*, and are <sup>muzins.</sup> very peaceable People.

The *Telanguts*, the *Orafuts*, and the *Kussut-<sup>Telan-</sup>* <sup>guts,</sup> *maits* are also sprung from the *Virats*; tho they <sup>Orafuts,</sup> bear different Names. They have all along <sup>and Kus-</sup> been renown'd for their Skill in Physick and <sup>sutmaits</sup> in Magick, and for being great Hunters and <sup>skill'd in</sup> good Fishers: Accordingly they always have <sup>Magick</sup> dwelt by the sides of Rivers, and in Forests. <sup>and Phy-</sup> <sup>sick.</sup>



## C H A P. XI.

*Of the Tribe of the Naimanns, of the Caraits, of the Unguts, and of the Turkaks.*

Nai-  
manns.

Carakum  
the Coun-  
try of the  
Nai-  
manns.

Cara-its.

Margus  
Illi.  
Korzacur.

Tayrell,  
or Aunak  
Chan of  
the Cara-  
its.

Chinese  
Wall.

THE Tribe of the *Naimanns* is very antient, and very rich; but I am a Stranger to their Origin and Government. The first of their Princes that I have come to the Knowledge of, was called *Karkish Chan*; who had his Son *Abjath* for his Successor after his Death.

In the Reign of *Zingis Chan*, they were govern'd by a Prince call'd *Taijan Chan*, who had a Son called *Kutshluk*; they dwelt in a Country of the *Mogulls* called *Cara Kum*, or Black Sand, and had not the Custom of cultivating their Lands.

The Term *Cara-it*, signifies *swarthy*; and inasmuch as there was a Father who had seven Sons all of a swarthy Complexion, they called their Posterity *Cara-its*. This Tribe is very antient, and was heretofore very numerous and rich in Cattle. It had its own particular Government, and dwelt in the neighbourhood of the *Naimanns*. Among the other Princes of the *Cara-its*, there was one of them called *Margus Illi Chan*, who had two Sons, of which the eldest was called *Korzacur*, and Sirnamed *Busruk*, succeeded his Father. The eldest Son and Successor of *Korzacur* was called *Tayrell*; but the Emperors of *Kitay* gave him the Name of *Aunak*, which imports, in the Language of *Kitay*, Emperor. This is the same *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, of whom we shall speak in the History of *Zingis Chan*.

Those of *Kitay* have built a great Wall to cover their Country, in which there are two Iron Gates for the Passage of the Merchants and other Travellers. This Wall is call'd *Sat* in  
*Ara-*



*Arabick*, which signifies *Fortress*; in the antient *Turkish* Language it is called *Turk-urga*, and in the Language of *Kitay*, *Ungu*. \* *Alexander the Great* caused a like Wall to be raised to cover the Frontiers of his Dominions; but it was composed of all sorts of Metals. His design by this Wall, was to hinder the Nation of *Jadsutz-Madzuth* from carrying their Ravages into the Lands under his Dominion, where they had done great Mischief in Times past. 'Tis a general Tradition with the *Tatars*, that those People have the Muzzle of a Dog; and that this Wall being made up of all sorts of Metals, they did indeed all in their Power to make a Passage thro' it by dint of Licking; but they could not succeed: That nevertheless before the Day of Judgment, they shall come and lick their way thro' the Wall; and that then they shall do a great deal of Mischief in the World. *Nau-Shirwanadill*, Sultan of *Shamachy*, caused in like manner a Wall of Earth to be built round about his Kingdom.

The Iron Gates which are in the Wall of *Kitay*, are called *Timurchanai*: The Emperors of that Country engaged one entire Tribe for great Wages in their Service to guard this Wall and the Gates, which give Entrance into the Empire of *Kitay* by this Wall. This Guard has been entertain'd for a long time, and because of the great Wages which it gets, they have given this Tribe the Name of *Ungutti*, which is as much as to say in the *Mogull* Language, *Men who are well to pass*. In the Time of *Zingis Chan* this Tribe might consist of about

\* *Alexander the Great is the true Amadis of the Oriental Historians*; they name him *Iskander*, and vent as many blind Stories upon that Head as would fill many great Volumes. The Curious may find some Samples of them in the *Voyages of Olearius*.



4000 Families under a Prince called *Alakus*, who having made an Alliance with *Zingis Chan*, contributed much to render the Conquest of the Empire of *Kitay* easy to him, for going to meet him when he approach'd the Frontiers of that Empire with his Army, he gave him a free Entrance by the Wall.

Kitay di-  
vided into  
two Parts.

Cara  
Kitay.

Part of  
the Cara-  
kitayans  
settle else-  
where.

Atill Coun-  
try.

Cara Kitay  
conquer'd  
by the  
Chan of  
Gurgut.

Imill in  
Kitay,  
An. Dom.  
1177.  
Illik  
Chan.

The Empire of *Kitay* is divided into two Parts; the first is called *Cara Kitay*, but that is enough of this Matter for the present. The Inhabitants of *Cara Kitay* having revolted against the Emperor of *Kitay*, a great part of them abandon'd their Country and retir'd near the *Kergis*; but the *Kergis* having pillag'd them, they resolv'd to go and dwell in the Country of *Atill*, and built there a Town, living by cultivating the Lands thereabouts: And forasmuch as it succeeded with them very well, many neighbouring Families went and joined them; so that they were able to make up 40000 Families.

About the same time the *Chan* of *Dsurdjut* declar'd War against the Inhabitants of *Cara Kitay*, and having defeated them, made himself Master of the Country, insomuch that the Prince of *Cara Kitay*, called *Nusi Taigir Ili*, who was a Prince of much Merit, was oblig'd to retire among the *Kergis*, and from thence to a Town of *Kitay*, call'd *Imill*, which happen'd in the Year 573. Two Years after, when the Place of his Retreat was known, one *Illik Chan*, of the Posterity of *Asrasiap Chan*, who kept his Residence in the Town of *Jalasagan*, which is called by the *Mogulls* *Chambalik*, or the good Town, *Chan* importing in the Language of the *Mogulls* good, and *Balik* a Town; seeing himself hardly press'd by those of the Tribe of the *Kanklis*, who dwelt in the neighbourhood of that Town, and who had ruin'd all the Lands which



which he had caused to be cultivated, sent to *Nusi Taigir Ili* to desire his Assistance, and offer to resign to him the Sovereignty of that Town.

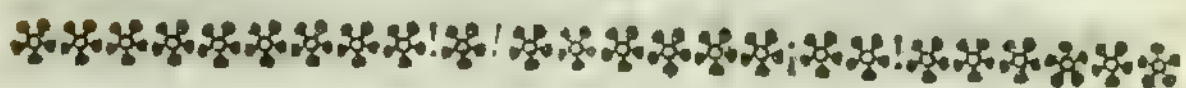
*Nusi Taigir Ili* having accepted this Offer, <sup>Nusi Tai-</sup> march'd to his Assistance, and taking the Go- <sup>gir Ili, or</sup> vernment into his Hands, he chang'd the Name <sup>Cavar</sup> of *Illik Chan* into that of *Illik Turkmann*, and <sup>Chan.</sup> took himself the Name of *Cavar Chan*, or Grand Seigneur; after which he conquer'd the <sup>Conquers</sup> Towns of *Andidsan*, *Tashkant* and *Turkestan*, <sup>Andigan,</sup> but rais'd the Siege before *Samarkant*, because <sup>Tashkant</sup> the Inhabitants of that Town obliged them- <sup>and Tur-</sup> selves to pay him an annual Tribute. After he <sup>kestan.</sup> was return'd into his Dominions, he sent one of <sup>Makes Sa-</sup> his Generals called *Arys*, with a numerous Ar- <sup>markant</sup> my on the side of the City of *Urgens*; who ha- <sup>Tributary.</sup> ving plunder'd all the adjacent Parts about that <sup>Plunders</sup> Place, constrain'd *Vigish Chan* of *Urgens* to a- <sup>Urgens.</sup> gree the Matter with his Master, by a Tribute <sup>Constrains</sup> of 20000 Dinars of Gold, which he promis'd <sup>Vigish</sup> to pay yearly to *Cavar Chan*, and which he paid <sup>Chan of</sup> indeed very regularly till his Death. But his <sup>Cowar-</sup> Son *Mahamet* coming to succeed his Father, <sup>azm to</sup> would no longer pay that Contribution, which <sup>pay him</sup> causing a War between them, Sultan *Mahamet*, <sup>an annual</sup> notwithstanding he had gather'd all his Forces, <sup>Tribute.</sup> and that his Dominions extended as far as the <sup>Defeats</sup> Country of *Rubm*, was defeated by *Cavar Chan*, <sup>Sultan</sup> and constrain'd to fly for Shelter to the Tribe of <sup>Moham-</sup> *Kanklis*, until he had found means to make a <sup>med.</sup> new Agreement with *Cavar Chan*.

I know not from whence or from what *Tur-* *kish* Tribe the *Turkaks* are deriv'd; the word *Turkak*, signifies in the *Turkish* Language, a <sup>Turkaks,</sup> Guard; for among the *Turks*, while one half <sup>i. e. a</sup> of the Guards of the Night repose themselves, <sup>Guard.</sup> the other half which is on Duty, must always beat upon something which may give a Sound, that



that one may know they are on the Watch; and when he who is on Duty has a mind to be reliev'd, he says to the other *Turkak*; that is to say, get up and beat: *Tur* signifying, *get up*; and *kak*, *beat*. This Tribe has increas'd exceedingly by length of Time.

We have treated hitherto of the different *Turkish* Tribes which draw their Origin some where else than from the Descendants of *Kajan* and *Nagos*; we come now to the Tribe of the *Mogulls* and other Tribes which are Branches of it.



## CHAP. XII.

*Of the Tribe of the Mogulls.*

Kajan  
Nagos.

Kajat,  
Dulagan,  
Nagoller.

Nircha  
Tribe.

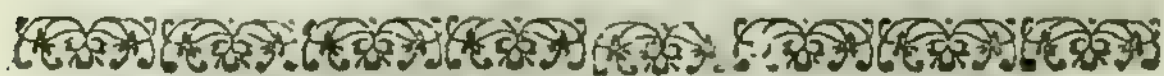
I HAVE remark'd above, that when *Ill Chan* was defeated by the Princes of the Posterity of *Tatar Chan*, that there were none of his whole Army who escaped, but *Kajan* his youngest Son, and *Nagos* his Nephew, who went and settled themselves among the Mountains; and the Descendants of *Kajan* took the Surname of *Kajat*, and those of *Nagos* took that of *Durlagan*, or *Nagosler*, which occasion'd them in a little time to lose their true Names.

There was a Woman of the Tribe of *Kajan*, and of the Posterity of *Curlafs*, who brought forth three Children at a time without having had Commerce with any Man; of which I shall speak more fully in the end of this Book. From these three Sons sprung a numerous Tribe which took the Surname of *Nircha*, which signifies in the Language of the *Mogulls*, a pure Family, in memory



memory that the first Founders of this Tribe were born without any Commerce with Man.

*Cabul Chan*, Great Grandfather of *Zingis Chan*, had six Sons, all great Warriors; from whence they had the Name of *Kajat*. The *Kajat*, eldest of these six Brothers was called *Borton Chan*, and had a Son called *Jessugi-Bayadur*, who had a red *Border* between the Black and White of his Eyes, for which reason they gave to his Descendants the Surname of *Borzugan Ka-Borzugan jat*, because the *Mogulls* call such Persons *Bor-Kajat*. *Jessugi Bayadur Chan* was the Father of *Zingis Chan*. There is no Person at present in *A strange* all the *Turkish* Nation who can have any Know-*Testimony*. ledge of these Circumstances, which are known to none but to me *Abulgasi Bayadur Chan*.



## C H A P. XIII.

*Of the Tribes of the Markats, the Kun-  
kurats, the Ankarahs, the Allaknuts,  
the Caranuts, the Curlafs, the Ilzigans,  
the Ummauts, the Cunnachmars, the  
Arlats, the Calkits, and the Kishliks.*

THOSE of the Tribe of the *Markats* had *Markats* in the Time of *Zingis Chan*, a *Chan* called *Tribe*. *Tochtabegi*, who was always at variance with *Tochtabegi Chan of the Mar-* *Zingis Chan* was absent, *Tochtabegi* invaded his *kats*, Lands, and carry'd away his Wives and his Subjects with all that fell into his Hands. *Ano-Takes Zin-* ther time *Zingis Chan* himself, as he was taking *gis Chan* a Walk, was made Prisoner by *Tochtabegi*, who *Prisoner*. lay



lay in ambuscade for that purpose; but his Subjects ransom'd him for a great Sum of Money.

There was a Man of the Posterity of *Kajan*, who had three Sons, 1. *Zurluk Mergan*, 2. *Cabayshira*, 3. *Busjuday*. *Zurluk Mergan*, who was exceeding dextrous at shooting with the Bow, falling out one time with his younger Brother, they agreed between themselves to fight on Horseback with Bows and Arrows; and being arriv'd at the Place of Rendezvous, Fear seiz'd *Cabayshira* just in the Instant they were going to advance against each other: Wherefore bowing himself down all on one side of the Horse, he was content to hold his Bow strait before him, supposing he would be shelter'd by the large Crest of his Horse. This Posture rais'd Compassion in his eldest Brother, who resolv'd, seeing he was his Brother, not to kill him, as he might easily have done, and to forgive him for his Fear, *only striking off the Pendant at his Ear*; which he did so dextrously, that he did not so much as touch his Ear, leaving also the Jewel unburt at which the Pendant hung. The same *Zurluk Mergan* had afterwards a Son called *Kunkurat*, from whom the Tribe of the *Kunkurats* draw their Origin.

*Kunkurat*  
Tribe.

*Ankarahs*  
*Allaknut*  
Tribes.

*Cabay Shira* had two Sons, the eldest of which was called *Ankarahs*, and the youngest *Allaknut*. From these two Brothers the Tribe of the *Ankarahs* and that of the *Allaknuts* are sprung. The Mother of *Zingis Chan*, called *Ulun*, and to whom sometimes they give the Surname of *Ulun-iga*, and sometimes that of *Ulun Kufin*, came from the Tribe of the *Allaknuts*.

*Caranut*  
Tribe.

*Busjuday* had also two Sons, the eldest of whom was named *Caranut*, and from him the Tribe of the *Caranuts* has its Original. The second Son of *Busjuday* was called *Conachlot*, and



and had a Son called *Meisir-ili*, who had two Sons, of whom the eldest was called *Curlafs*, Curlas and the youngest *Ilzigann*; and from these two Tribe. Brothers the Tribes of *Curlafs* and of the *Ilzi-* Ilzigannis *ganns* draw their Origin. Tribe.

The Tribe of the *Umma-uts* was heretofore Ummauts, called the Tribe of the *Urma-uts*; but at pre- or Urmauts sent they are generally called *Umma-uts*. There Tribe. was a Man of the Tribe of the *Umma-uts* who had three Sons, the eldest of which was called *Cunnackmar*, and from him has issued the Tribe Cunnack- of the *Cunnackmars*. After the Death of *Jessu-* mars *gi Bayadur Chan*, the Father of *Zingis Chan*, a Tribe. Person of Distinction of the Tribe of the *Cun-* *nackmars*, call'd *Menglik Izka*, who had the Menglik Reputation of a wise and virtuous Man, having Izka, marry'd his Widow *Ulun-iga*, otherwise *Ulun-* Zingis *Kuzin*, the Mother of *Zingis Chan*, *Aunak Chan*, Chan's Father-in-Prince of the *Caraits*, sent a trusty Person to Law, him, and order'd him to say, "You are as tempted chief of your Tribe, and nothing is between by Aunak, "you and the Crown but your Wife's Son; Chan of "therefore I will come and see you, and we the Cara- "shall try to find means to put \* *Zingis Chan* to its, to de- death without Noise; after which, we may stroy Zin- "divide between us his Subjects and Effects." gis Chan.

As *Aunak Chan* was an intimate Friend of the Father of *Zingis Chan*, that Prince never suspect- ed any such Treason; and for that reason he made no Difficulty of going to see *Aunak Chan*, accompany'd with a very small Retinue, who some time after gave him an invitation under pretence of treating with him about a Marriage between *Zuzi*, eldest Son of *Zingis Chan*, and his Daughter; but meeting his Father-in-Law Discovers on the Road, who was the afore-mention'd the Plot to

[\* Spoken by way of Prolepsis, for as yet he was not called Zingis *Zingis Chan*.] Chan.

E Menglik



*Menglik Izka*, and being inform'd by him of the ill Design of *Aunak Chan* of the *Cara-its*, he immediately return'd the Way he came. From that time *Zingis Chan* conceiv'd so great a Friendship for his Father-in-Law, that he could not live without him.

*Menglik Izka's* true Name was *Menglik*, and the Surname of *Izka*, which signifies a devout Man, was given him by the *Mogulls*, on account of his great Piety and Virtue. *Zingis Chan* was but thirteen Years old when *Menglik Izka* espoused his Mother in second Marriage, for he had before three Sons by a first Venter, the eldest of which called *Kokza*, pass'd in the Conceits of People for the Image of God. When I come to the Reign of *Zingis Chan*, I shall have occasion to speak of this *Kokza*. The second Son of *Menglik Izka* was nam'd *Arlat*, and from him came the Tribe of the *Arlats*. The third Son of *Menglik Izka* was called *Calkit*, because he could not speak plain; and from him are sprung the Tribe of the *Calkits*.

*Arlats  
Tribe.*

*Calkits  
Tribe.*

*The De-  
signs of  
Aunak  
Chan,  
against  
Zingis  
Chan,  
discover'd  
by the  
Calkits.*

A Man of the Tribe of the *Calkits* had two Sons, one called *Badu* and the other *Kishlik*, who kept the Horses of one of the great Lords of the Court of *Aunak Chan* of the *Cara-its*; one of these two Brothers going one Day to his Master's Apartment, with several Days gathering of Mares-Milk, heard that his Master being in private with his Wife, bid her get his Arms in readiness; and upon her asking him what he was going to do with them? he answer'd, That *Aunak Chan* intended to make War upon *Zingis Chan* without much Noise. This Man returning to the Place where his Brother was, after delivering his Milk into his Master's Kitchen, they agreed together, that seeing they sprung from the *Mogulls*, and consequently



sequently were of the same Tribe with *Zingis Chan*, they would go and inform him of what was plotting against him: But we shall drop this History for the present, reserving it till we come to the Life of *Zingis Chan*. In reward of so great Service, *Zingis Chan* gave to these two Brothers an Employment which they call *Office of Tarkun*, which frees them from all sorts of Taxes; which Exemption they have enjoy'd, and their Descendants after them to the ninth Generation. 'Tis from this *Kishlik* that the Tribe of the *Kishliks* draw their Origin.



C H A P. XIV.

*Of the Tribes of the Visluns, the Suldus, the Durmanns, the Bariens, the Sukuts, the Curla-uts, the Burkuts, and some other Branches of the Mogulls:*

THE *Visluns* as well as the *Suldus* are Branches of the *Mogulls*. There was in the Country of the *Mogulls* a *Chan* of the Posterity of *Kajan*, called *Bizin Kajan*, who had five Sons; the youngest of which named *Kipzi Mergan*, had the best Parts, which induced his Father at his Death to appoint him his Successor. The other four seeing the Government going to be conferr'd on their youngest Brother were exceedingly enraged, and declar'd they were content to let them choose which they would of them four to succeed their Father in the Dignity of *Chan*; but that if they persisted in the Resolution to affront them by electing their youngest Brother, they would all four quit the Country;



Dur-  
manns  
Tribe.

which in reality they did, when they found, notwithstanding all their Protestations, that the principal Lords of the Country in obedience to the last Will of *Bizin Kajan*, had put the Government into the Hands of *Kipzi Mergan*: And as the *Mogulls* call the Number Four, *Durmann*, the Descendants of these Four Brothers retain'd the Name of *Durmanns*, and came in process of Time to dwell in the Dominions of *Kipzi Mergan*.

Bariens  
Tribe.

There was a Man of the Tribe of the *Durmanns* who had three Sons, the eldest of which was called *Barien*, and from him the Tribe of the *Bariens* deduce their Original. The third had no lawful Children, tho he was marry'd, but one of his Slaves became with Child by him; and tho his Wife gave this Slave great Blows on the Belly to make her miscarry, yet she was happily brought to bed of a Son about Midnight, and having wrap'd up the Infant in a piece of Skin which she had cut off the furr'd Garment of the Father, she carry'd it to a Place where there was a great deal of a kind of Shrubs, which they call in their Language *fulgun*. The Father passing next Morning by that Place, and hearing the Child cry, he judged whose it was by the Piece of the furr'd Coat which he knew, and carrying the Infant home, he gave it to the Mother to take care off, and at the same time nam'd it *Sukut*, because the aforefaid Shrubs are call'd *Sukut* in the *Mogull* Language; and 'tis from him that the Branch of the *Sukuts* draw their Origin.

Sukut  
Tribe.

Kurla-uts  
Tribe.

Burkuts  
Tribe.

Kank-  
ratts, or

Congorats  
Tribe.

The Tribes of the *Kurla-uts*, and that of the *Burkuts* inhabited formerly along with the *Kank-ratts*, who are related to them; and all these three Tribes are deriv'd from the *Mogulls*.

The



The *Oklians* are also sprung from the *Mogulls*; but by what Generation is unknown.

*Oklians  
Tribe.*

The *Dsoigerats* and the *Adferats* are descended from the Tribe of the *Allaknuts*, which is a Branch of that of the *Mogulls*.

*Goigerats  
Tribe.*

*Agerats  
Tribe.*

The *Bajauts* are divided into several Branches; the most considerable of which are those of the *Sadagin Bajauts*, and the *Makrim Bajauts*: The *Bajauts* were Neighbours to the *Virats*, and have taken their different Names from the Rivers of *Sadagin* and *Makrim*, on the Borders of which they inhabited: They derive their Origin from the Tribe of the *Durlagans*, which are of the Posterity of *Nagos*.

*Bajauts  
Tribe.*

*Rivers  
Sadagin  
and Ma-  
krim.*

*Galagir,  
or Gelairs  
Tribe.*

The Tribe of the *Dsalagirs* is very antient: they were heretofore scatter'd over a great Extent of Country, and had many Princes; but those of *Kitay* having declar'd War against them, they were oblig'd to come closer together, to be in a Capacity to assist one another. Their Families were so numerous, that formerly they spread over seventy different Provinces, which they call'd in their Language *Kuran*, and the greatest part of them dwelt in a Quarter of the *Mogulls* Country called *Uman*: but the Emperor of *Kitay* having defeated them and carry'd away a great Number of them Prisoners, the rest of this Tribe sav'd themselves by Flight, and were reduc'd to live on Roots for want of other Food. This happen'd in the Reign of *Dutumin*, Grandfather of *Zingis Chan*, in the Seventh Generation.

*Possessed  
seventy  
Provinces,  
called  
Kuran.*

*Defeated  
by the Em-  
peror of  
Kitay.*

*Dutumin* had nine Sons, the eldest of which called *Kaidu*, succeeding his Father, went to be marry'd in another Country, and his second Brother *Mutulun* kept the House, with his seven other Brothers, while their eldest Brother was absent about his Mistress. There was near their

*Eight Sons  
of Dutu-  
min Chan  
slain by  
the Gala-  
girs.*



Galagirs.

Habitation a very level Place where the seven Brothers used to perform their Exercifes and Tournaments; one Day that they went there for that Purpose, they found the afore-mentioned *Dfalagirs*, who were digging the Earth to look for Roots: whereupon retiring immediately, they went and told their Brother *Mutulun* how the Place had been spoil'd, fet apart for their Exercifes. *Mutulun* having repair'd thither with a strong Force at first, put to flight the *Dfalagirs*; but these last having had time to rally, return'd to the Charge, and having at last overcome *Mutulun*, after great Loss on both sides, they kill'd him and his seven Brothers, ruin'd their Habitations, and put to the Sword all those of their Subjects who fell into their Hands.

Galagirs

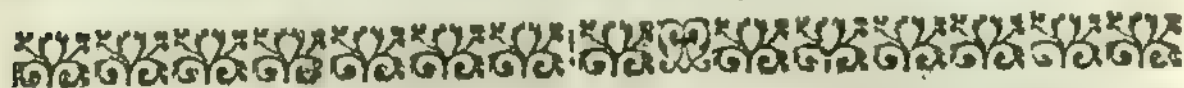
submit to

Kaydu  
Chan.Galagir, or  
Kaydu  
Tribe.

*Kaydu Chan* being inform'd of this Accident, return'd home as quick as he could, and sent to demand of the *Dfalagirs* their Reason for killing his Brothers. The *Dfalagirs*, extreamly terrify'd at this Message, came to a Resolution to send him five of the Authors of this Disturbance, with their Wives and Children, to take on them what Satisfaction he thought fit; but *Kaydu Chan* was content to keep them as his Slaves, which prov'd of good account to him, for they serv'd him very faithfully; and having quitted their former Name, took the Surname of the Master they serv'd. In the Reign of *Zingis Chan*, the other *Dfalagirs* took likewise the Surname of their Captive Brethren; but in truth they derive their Origin from the *Durlagans*, who are of the Posterity of *Nagos*. The Descendants of these enslaved People continued in the Service of the Children of *Kaydu Chan* to the fourth Generation; some of them



them having ten, others twelve, as far as twenty Families for their Portion.



C H A P. XV.

*Of the Chans of the Mogulls, from their sallying out of Irgana-kon, down to Zingis Chan.*

**K** *Ajan* and *Nagos* dwelt in the Country of Chans *Irgana-kon*, and their Descendants multiplying, divided themselves into many Branches, with different Names. There was among others, a Man of the Posterity of *Kajan* call'd *Curlafs*; and as his Family was one of the most numerous, they agreed to choose one of them to be *Chan* of the *Mogulls*; and every time the *Chan* came to dy, they rais'd another of the same Family to that Dignity.

At the time that they sally'd out of *Irgana-kon*, they had a *Chan* of the Posterity of *Curlafs* named *Bertezena*, and after his Death his Son *Kaw-idill* succeeded him; who likewise dying, his Son *Bizin-kajan* reign'd after him, and had his Son *Kipzi Mergan* for his Successor. After the Death of *Kipzi Mergan*, his Son *Menkoazin-Borell* obtain'd the Government, and after his Death his Son *Bukbendun* succeeded him, who had for his Successor his Son *Simfauzi*. *Simfauzi* dying left the Throne of the *Mogulls* to his Son *Kaymazu*, who was succeeded by his Son *Temirtash*, and he by his Son *Mengli Chodsa*. After the Death of *Mengli Chodsa*, his Son *Julduss Chan* came to reign over the *Mogulls*, and had two Sons, who both died before him;

1. Bertezena.
2. Kaw-idill.
3. Bizin-kajan.
4. Kipzi Mergan.
5. Menkoazin-Borell.
6. Bukbendun.
7. Simfauzi.
8. Kaymazu.
9. Temirtash.
10. Mengli Choga.
11. Julduss Chan.



Dejun Ba-  
jan.  
Alancu.

but one of them having left a Son called *Dejun Bajan*, and the other a Daughter named *Alancu*, *Fuldus Chan* marry'd them together, as soon as they came to a proper Age, and gave a magnificent Feast on that Occasion.

None could  
reign un-  
der thirty  
Years of  
Age.

Sometime after *Fuldus Chan* happen'd to die before his Grandson *Dejun Bajan* had attain'd the Age requir'd by the Laws to qualify him to reign by himself, which was that of thirty Years. *Dejun Bajan* did not long survive his Grandfather, and left two Sons, the eldest of which called *Belgadei*, was seven Years of Age, and the youngest named *Begdsadei*, six Years. In some Books the eldest of these two Children of *Dejun Bajan*, is called *Belgajut*, and the youngest *Bugnat*; and tho after the Death of their Father, their Mother was sought in Marriage by several of *Fuldus Chan*'s Relations, she constantly refus'd to marry again, saying she was oblig'd during the Minority of her Children to take care of the Regency, that when they came to Years she might deliver it up to them in good Condition. But some little time after, having slept all Night long, she saw something as she awak'd in the Morning, as bright as the Sun, fall into her Chamber thro' the Opening a-top, and approach her in the Form of a Man, of an Orange Colour, with Eyes of a singular Beauty, which frighten'd her so, that tho she had a mind to call her Servants, and strove also to rise, she had neither Strength to speak nor get upon her Feet: Nevertheless as she did not lose her Senses, she took notice that this Spirit, after lying with her several times, of a sudden disappear'd.

Fable of  
an Incu-  
bus and  
Alancu.

As this Adventure favour'd too much of the Fabulous, she durst not make any body a Confident in it, for fear they would not give Credit



to her words. Five or six days after the Spirit return'd to see her in the same manner, and continued his Visits frequently afterwards. In the mean time, as she was with Child by the Spirit from the time of his first Visit, they did not fail, as soon as they perceiv'd something of it, to put it home to her, to know who was the Father: which having obliged her to relate the whole Adventure, she added, that to clear up the Truth of what she said, they need-ed only set Guards upon her, inasmuch as she did not believe the Spirit would avoid coming upon that score; that if what they saw had happen'd to her thro' Frailty of Nature, she would to be sure have marry'd again, as they all knew she had Opportunities enough of doing; but that this had happen'd to her against her Will, and after a supernatural manner: That possibly also some particular Sign might shew it self upon the Child she was big with, which might distinguish it from other Men. Thereupon they thought proper to allow her Guards, who found that all she had said was true, excepting that they could not see any Appearance of a Man.

In the mean time, *Alancu* being come to her full Time \*, was happily deliver'd of three Sons at a Birth; the first of which was called *Bocum Catagun*, from whom the Branch of the *Cata-* Catagun  
Tribe.

\* All the Oriental Historians who treat of the Original of the Tatars, make mention of this miraculous Adventure, tho they vary in the Circumstances; which naturally leads me to the Reflection, whence it comes that in all Ages they have observed to introduce the Miraculous into the Origin of great Revolutions which have happen'd both in the State and Religion: and I can find no other Reason for it, except it be, either to cover certain Defects which occur in the Original of those Revolutions, or to impose on the Vulgar; and to dispose them by the false Lustre of those feign'd Miracles to a greater Tractableness.



Zalzuts. guns derive their Origin. The second was call'd  
 Tribe. Boskin Zalzi, and from him are sprung the Zal-  
 12. Budenfir Mo- zuts. The Name of the third was *Budenfir Mo-*  
 gak. *gak*, who came to reign over the *Mogulls*: 'Tis  
 from him that the Family of *Zingis Chan*, and  
 several other considerable Families of the *Mo-*  
*gulls* are deriv'd.

Niron  
 Tribe.

The Descendants of these three Princes took  
 the Surname of *Niron*. *Budenfir Mogak* had two  
 Sons, the eldest of which was called *Tumu*, and  
 the youngest *Tocha*: 'Tis not known if the first  
 left Children; but after the Death of *Budenfir*  
 13. To- *Mogak*, his second Son *Tocha* came to the  
 cha Chan. Throne, and was succeeded after his Death by  
 14. Dutu- his Son *Dutumin*.  
 min Chan.

15. Kaydu  
 Chan.

Bayzut  
 Tribe.

Zipzuts  
 Tribe.  
 Irigents  
 Tribe.

*Dutumin* had nine Sons, but the *Dsalagirs* ha-  
 ving slain eight of 'em in the manner above re-  
 lated, *Kaydu* only remain'd alive and reign'd  
 after his Father. *Kaydu Chan* had three Sons;  
 the first was named *Bassicar*, the second *Hur-*  
*malancum*; and from these two Brothers the  
 Branch of the *Bayzuts* derive their Original.  
*Hurmalancum* had a Son called *Murank-Duco-*  
*zina*, who had a Son called *Kadun*, who bore  
 the Surname of *Tayshy*, because he sung very  
 well: This word importing in the Language of  
*Kitay*, a Man who has a fine Voice. The Son  
 of *Kadun* was called *Arall*, who had a Son cal-  
 led *Kariltuk*; who is believ'd to be the same,  
 who being chief of the *Bayzuts*, made War on  
*Zingis Chan* by the Name of *Burganay Kariltuk*.  
 The third Son of *Kaydu Chan* was called *Zap-*  
*zin*, from whom the *Zipzuts* and *Irigents* draw  
 their Origin. After the Death of *Kaydu Chan*,  
 his Son *Hurmalancum* marry'd his Widow, who  
 was his Stepmother, and had by her two Sons,  
 who were called in the Language of the *Mo-*  
*gulls*, the one *Caudu Zena*, and the other *Olek-*  
*zin*



zin Zena; but in the *Turkish* Language the first Mogul was named *Irgak-bura*, and the second *Urgazi-bura*, which signify a He Wolf, and a She Wolf. and Turkish Language not the same. There hath sprung from these two Brothers a very numerous Family, which took the Name of the Tribe of *Zenafs*, on account of their Ancestors having borne the Surname of *Zena*. Zenas, They took besides that, the Surname of *Nagos*, or Nagos Tribe. infomuch that they had two Names; but they have no relation to the Branch of the *Nagosler*, of which I have spoken before: These last having by length of Time lost the Knowledge of their Pedigree.

*Bassicar*, eldest Son of *Kaydu Chan*, who reign'd 16. Bassicar Chan. after his Father, was a Prince of great Conduct, and conquer'd many Provinces and Towns.

After him reign'd his Son *Tumana*, who grew 17. Tumana Chan reduces the Nirons. so powerful that he reduced the whole Tribe of the *Nirons* under his Obedience, and his Subjects were in a very flourishing Condition during the time of his Reign. He had nine Sons, and

of their Descendants some retained the Name of their Family, and the rest divided themselves into divers particular Branches. There were two Twin Brothers among those nine Sons of *Tumana Chan*, who were call'd *Cabull* and *Cazuli*. The eldest of these nine Brothers was called *Zazfu*, and had three Sons, 1. *Butakin*, Butakin, Uruth, and Mankatt Tribes. 2. *Uruth*, 3. *Mankatt*; from whence are descended the three Tribes of the same Name. The

second Son of *Tumana Chan*, was called *Janin-shur-Tumanzu*, and was likewise the Father of a particular Branch. The third Son of *Tumana Chan* was called *Samcazun*, and from him are sprung the *Badurgins*. Badurgins Tribe. The fourth was called *Batkilki*, and 'tis from him that all the *Budatts* are deriv'd. Budatts Tribe. The fifth was *Cabull Chan*, Great

Grandfather of *Zingis Chan*. The sixth was *Cazuli*,



Burlafs  
Tribe.

Cajums  
Tribe.

Vilots  
Tribe.

Bassuts, or  
Jessuts.

Mogulls  
reckon the  
youngest  
Sons fittest  
for War.

zuli, who had a Son called *Jedemzi-burlafs*; from whom the *Burlafs* draw their Original. *A-mir Timur Chan* was of this Tribe. The Term *Burlafs*, signifies a Commander of Troops. The seventh was called *Udur-Bajan*, and from him are issued the *Cajums*. The eighth was called *Balzar Oglan*, because he halted. *Oglan* signifying in the Language of the *Mogulls*, a lame Man, and from him descended the *Vilots*. The ninth Son of *Tumana Chan* was called *Olzingan*, and from him the Branch of the *Bassuts* draw their Origin. The *Mogulls* call a Man who has sat a long while at his own Fire-side, *Olzingan*, from whence the Name is given, by an indirect Application, to the youngest Sons, because the Parents usually keep them longer at home than the other Children; and they reckon for the same reason among the *Mogulls*, that the youngest Sons are the most robust and fit for War. When *Zingis Chan* enter'd with his Army into the Country of *Ma-urenner*, he detach'd one of his Generals called *Zena Noyan*, descended from the Tribe of the *Jessuts*, or *Bassuts*, with 30000 Men to go in pursuit of *Sultan Mahamet Shub* of *Charass'm*; who after seizing the Treasures, the Wives and Children of the Sultan, conquer'd all the Countries of *Irak* and *Chorassan*; and from thence passing into the Country of *Shirwan*, he went and fell upon the *Zerkas* and *Kipzaks*, and having put all to the Sword in those Quarters, he pass'd the Rivers of *Atell* and *Jaigik*, and came back to join his Master at his Return from the Country of *Iran*, upon the Frontiers of the great *Bucharia*.

After the Death of *Tumana Chan*, his Son *Cabull Chan* succeeded him, who had six Sons, viz. 1. *Ukinjargak*, 2. *Bortan-bayadur*, 3. *Kutuk-tu Manga*, 4. *Cassan-bayadur*, 5. *Coblacun*, 6. *Budan*.



*Budan-kajat.* In regard we have already treated of the Name of *Kajat*, I have only to add here, <sup>Kajats</sup> that tho, conformable to what has been said a-<sup>take other</sup>bove, the *Kajats* took their Surnames in *Irgana-*<sup>Names, as</sup>*kon* from *Kajan* their first Founder; they have <sup>Kankratts,</sup>nevertheless in process of Time, one after ano-<sup>Curlafs,</sup>ther, quitted their first Surnames, and taken in lieu of them several other Names: Some of them having called themselves *Kankratts*, others *Curlafs*; some *Durmanns*, and others again by <sup>Dur-</sup>other Names; infomuch that the Surname of <sup>manns.</sup>*Kajat* was in a manner unknown for above 3000 Years: But in regard the Sons of *Cabull* <sup>Name of</sup>*Chan* were all six very strong Men and great <sup>Kajat lost</sup>Warriors, their Father revived in them the <sup>and revi-</sup>Name of *Kajat*. <sup>ved.</sup>

After the Death of *Cabull Chan* his Son *Bor-* <sup>19. Bor-</sup>*tan Chan* obtain'd the Sovereignty over the <sup>tan Chan.</sup>*Mogulls*. He had four Sons, viz. 1. *Mungadai*, 2. *Bugan Tayshy*, 3. *Jessugi Bayadur*, 4. *Darilai-bulai*; and their Descendants preserv'd also the Name of *Kajats*.

After the Death of *Bortan Chan*, his Son *Jessugi Bayadur* succeeded him in the Throne of <sup>20. Jessu-</sup>the *Mogulls*. He had five Sons, viz. 1. *Tamu-* <sup>gi Baya-</sup>*zin*, or *Zingis Chan*; he did not take this last <sup>dur.</sup>Name till after he was proclaim'd *Chan*. 2. <sup>21. Ta-</sup>*Zuzicar*, which is as much as to say a Guest like a <sup>muzin, or</sup>*Wolf*; *Zuzi* signifying in the *Mogull* Language <sup>Zingis</sup>a Guest, and *car*, or (in the *Persian* and *Turkish* <sup>Chan.</sup>Language) *Dan*, importing a carnivorous Beast. 3. *Kazun*, 4. *Tamuka*, and 5. *Belgatai*. These five Brothers were all of a fair Complexion, inclining to yellow, with a red Circle between the black and white of their Eyes: and because the *Mogulls* call this kind of Eyes *Borzugan*, all the Descendants of these five Brothers



Borzugan  
Kajat  
Tribe.

thers were surnamed *Borzugan Kajat*. *Tamuzin* and his four Brothers descended in the ninth Generation from the three Brothers, born in the manner above related of *Alancu* the Widow of *Dejunbajan*.



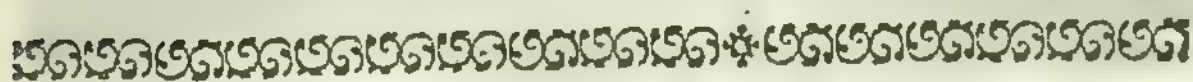
PART





PART III.

Which contains the History of the Reign  
of Zingis Chan, *from his Birth to his  
Death.*



CHAP. I.

*Of the Birth of Zingis Chan, and his  
first Years, to the Death of his Fa-  
ther, and his Advancement to the  
Throne of the Mogulls.*

**Z**ingis Chan was born in the Country of *An. Dom:*  
*Blunjulduk* in the Year 559, which is 1163.  
called *Tongus*, or the Hog in the *Mogull Lan-* *Birth of*  
*guage*; he brought into the World with him a *Zingis*  
piece of coagulated Blood in his Hand, of *Chan.*  
which his Mother having acquainted his Father,  
he advised with his principal Officers about  
this odd Accident; one of whom assur'd the  
*Chan*, it was a Prefage that the new-born Prince  
should subdue many Provinces and Nations to  
his Empire, which in reality came to pass after-  
wards. At his Birth his Father called him *Ta-* *Tamuzin*  
*muzin*, but when he was declar'd *Chan*, he took *his first*  
the Name of *Zingis*; tho I have spoken before *Name.*

[\* Called *Dilon Yldac* in the History of Genghiz Chan, p. 13.]  
of



of his Original, nevertheless I shall repeat here his Genealogy in form.

Genealogy  
of Zingis  
Chan.

How the  
Mogulls  
name the  
Degrees of  
Ancestry.

*Jessugi Bayadur Chan* was the Father of *Zingis Chan*, his Father was *Bortan Chan*, whose Father was *Cabull Chan*, the Son of *Tumana Chan*, the Son of *Kaidu Chan*, whose Father was *Dutumin Chan*. 'Tis to be observ'd here, that the *Turks* and \* *Tadsiks* are accustom'd in reckoning up Genealogies not to go backwards above the seventh Generation. The *Mogulls* call the Father in the first Generation *Izka*, the Grandfather or Father in the second Generation *Ulugan*, him in the third *Atinzak*, him in the fourth Generation *Budutur*, in the fifth *Badakur*, in the sixth *Murki*, and the Father in the seventh Generation *Dutakar*.

But to return to the Genealogy of *Zingis Chan*. The Father of *Dutumin Chan* was *Tocha Chan*, his Father was *Budensir Mogak*, born of the Widow *Alancu*, Grand-daughter of *Juldus Chan*, who was brought up with his Grandfather; because his Father, of whose Name we are ignorant, and who was the Son of *Juldus Chan* died, being as yet very young. The Father of *Juldus Chan* was *Mengli Chodsa Chan*, who was the Son of *Temirtash Chan*, the Son of *Kaymazu Chan*, Son of *Simsauzi Chan*, Son of *Bukbendun Chan*, Son of *Menkoazin Borell Chan*, Son of *Kipzi Mergan Chan*, Son of *Bizin Kajan Chan*, Son of *Kaw Idill Chan*, whose Father was *Bertezena Chan*.

Between the Reign of *Bertezena* and the Flight of *Kajan*, who went and inhabited in the Country of *Irgana-kon*, after the Defeat of his Father, there is a Vacancy of 450 Years;

[\* *Tagicks* are the Inhabitants of *Mawaralnahr* and *Iran*, that are neither *Turks*, *Mogulls*, nor *Tartars*. Vid. Hist. of *Timur Bec*. Pag. 13. Vol. II.]

which



which is just the time that the *Mogulls* were *AVacancy*  
 confin'd within the Mountains of *Irgana-kon*, *of 450*  
 and were in perfect Ignorance of the Order *Years in*  
 of the Succession, and Names of the Princes *the Success-*  
 who reign'd over the *Mogulls* in that Interval, *sion of*  
 tho we are certain they were all of the Posterity *Mogull*  
 of *Kajan*; and inasmuch as we don't find the *Emperors*  
 least Certainty in the Books of the *Mogulls* on  
 this Head, I am likewise obliged to leave a  
 Gap in this Place.

The Father of *Kajan* was *Ill Chan*, his Father was *Mengli Chan*, the Son of *Julduss Chan*, who succeeded *Ay Chan*, *Julduss Chan* having been neither the Brother nor Son of *Ay Kan*, or *Kiun Chan*, but only their Relation. *Ay Chan* succeeded his Brother *Kiun Chan*, whose Father was *Ogus Chan*, the Son of *Cara Chan*, the Son of *Mung'l Chan*, Son of *Alenza Chan*, Son of *Kajuk Chan*, Son of *Dibbakui Chan*, Son of *Jelza Chan*, Son of *Taunak Chan*, whose Father was *Turk*, the Son of *Japhis*, the Son of *Nui*, whose Father was *Zamach*, the Son of *Matusblach*, the Son of the Prophet *Idriss*, called in the Language of *Funan*, *Achnuch*, whose Father was *Berdi*, the Son of *Melabil*, Son of *Sbinan*, Son of *Anus*, whose Father was the Prophet *Shifs*, who was the Son of *Adam*, furnam'd *Sapfi Jula*.

At the Death of *Jessugi Bayadur Chan*, his Mogulls Son *Zingis Chan* was but thirteen Years of Age, and his Brothers were still younger than he. 'Tis a Law among the *Mogulls* for the Subjects to give yearly to their *Chan* the Tithe of all their Cattle of all Denominations; and tho a *Chan* leaves five or six Sons, the eldest is of right his Successor, and the other Brothers are to serve him just like the rest of his Subjects, excepting that they give him yearly one Beast of every



Chan's  
Brothers  
only ex-  
empt.

fort ; but this Exemption extends only to themselves, their Children and Descendants being obliged to the ordinary Tithe just like the other Subjects.

Thirty or  
forty Thou-  
sand Fami-  
lies under  
Jessugi  
Bayadur  
at his  
Death.

At *Jessugi Bayadur's* Death, they reckon'd under his Obedience between thirty and forty thousand Families paying Tithe, all sprung from the same Stock ; besides which there were several neighbouring Tribes whose Chiefs paid him Tribute, of which Number among others was one *Busander Chan*. *Zingis Chan* being very young at his Father's Death, most of those Families taking Advantage of his Youth would no longer obey him, nor pay him Tithe, and with-  
drew themselves into Places out of the way.

Most of 'em  
revolt  
from Ta-  
muzin.

Burgany  
Kariltuk.

The Tribe of the *Tayzeuts*, which was the richest and most considerable of them all, was the first which revolted from *Zingis Chan*, having submitted to one *Burgany Kariltuk*, whom the other Branches, which had withdrawn themselves from the Obedience of *Zingis Chan*, in like manner acknowledg'd afterwards for their Head. The Father of *Burgany Kariltuk* was called *Arall*, whose Father's Name was *Kadun Tayshy*, the Son of *Muranck Ducozina*, the Son of *Hurmalancum*, the Son of *Kaydu Chan*.

Only a  
third Part  
continue  
firm to  
Tamuzin.

Of all those Families which were under the Obedience of *Jessugi Bayadur Chan* at his Death, there was but one third of them which continued firmly attach'd to *Zingis Chan*, the other two thirds having wholly deserted him. The third Part which continued faithful to him, consisted of the Descendants of his Great Grandfather, who were all united to him ; of half the Tribe of the *Mankatts*, and of divers Families of the other Tribes, out of some of which there remain'd 50, out of others 100, or 200, and out of some only 5 or 10 Families. The Tribe  
of

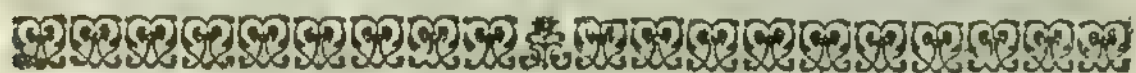


the *Mankatts*, tho not very numerous, yet had its particular Chief, called *Kojuldar*; but *Zingis Chan* was their Sovereign Prince.

These are the Names of the Tribes which went away with *Burganay Kariltuk*; the *Cataguns*, the *Zipzuts*, the *Dsoigerats*, and the *Nirons*, of which there did not stay so much as one Family with *Zingis Chan*. The Tribe of the *Markatts*, which never would submit to the Father of that Prince, went over also to *Burgany Kariltuk*, as soon as they were inform'd that he had separated himself from *Zingis Chan*, and corrupted such Numbers; but *Zingis Chan* having made War upon these Revolters, reduc'd them to their Obedience one after another.

*The Tribes that deserted with Burganay Kariltuk.*

*Goigerats.*



## CHAP. II.

*Of some Things that fell out during the first Years of the Reign of Zingis Chan.*

THE Mother of *Zingis Chan* was called *Uluu Iga*, *Uluu*, Surnamed *Iga*, which is as much as to say great in the *Mogull* Language. She also had another Surname which was that of *Kuzin*, which signifies in the Language of *Kitay*, an old Woman. In the Language of the *Tadiks*, an old Woman is called *Banu*, and in the *Usbeck* Language *Baybiza*, which signifies also a Governess: She was descended of the Tribe of the *Allaknuts*, and had a vast deal of Wit. After the Death of the Father of *Zingis Chan*, the above-mention'd *Menglik Izka* marry'd her; and because he was of the Tribe of the *Cunach-*

*Uluu Iga, Tamu-zin's Mother.*

*Tagicks.*

*Marries*

*Menglik*



Cunach-  
mars sub-  
mit to Ta-  
muzin.

Author's  
Apology  
for not  
writing  
more am-  
ply.

How this  
History  
was com-  
piled.

Nothing  
material  
omitted.

*mars*, and was in great Credit with the People of his Tribe, he order'd it so that all that Tribe submitted to *Zingis Chan*.

I had at first a Design to write more fully of the Empire, and the different Branches of the *Mogulls*; but a great Illness, with which I was surpriz'd, giving me cause to fear with a good deal of reason, that I should die before I finish'd this Book; I have been oblig'd to abridge my Work, that I might not leave it imperfect after me. I have also continued throughout the Course of my Distemper \*, to labour at it, having for that End four Clerks, to whom I dictated whilst they wrote, whenever my Sickness gave me any Respite. With regard to that Part of my History which reaches from *Adam* down to *Sheybani Chan*, I have extracted part from the Authors which wrote on that Subject, and part from particular Memoirs of divers *Mogull* Tribes: But with regard to the other Part, which begins with the Reign of *Sheybani Chan*, and reaches down to my own time, I have not had much Occasion to consult Books in order to render that perfect; because I have had before hand an exact Knowledge of the chief Transactions within that Period. As for what relates to remarkable Actions, and the Names of Princes, and of the different Tribes, I have taken particular care to preserve them, without omitting any: But for Actions of the lesser kind,

\* 'Twas of the same Distemper that our Author *Abulgasi Bayadur Chan*, after having languished near six Months, died at last in the Year of the *Hegira* 1074, which answers to the Year 1663 of the *Christian Æra*, before he could put the last hand to this Book. His Son *Anulha Mahamet Bayadur Chan* brought this Work to Perfection two Years after the Death of his Father, as we have remark'd at the beginning of this Book.



and other Circumstances of small importance, I have pass'd them over in silence, that I might not swell this Book more than was needful.

When *Burgany Kariltuk* corrupted the *Tay-Tamuzin zeuts*, the *Nirons*, and the other aforesaid Tribes from their Obedience to their natural Prince, there remain'd with him very few Families of the Tribe of the *Nirons*. 'Tis true that *Zingis Chan* did all he could to remedy this Evil in the beginning, and that for this end, while he was scarce thirteen Years old, he took the Field against those Revolters, and fought a bloody Battle with them; but in regard it was not decisive, he saw himself obliged to temporize until the Year *Bars*, or of the *Tiger*; when entring into the 40th Year of his Age, a Man belonging to the Revolting Tribes, came to tell him that the *Tayzeuts* and the *Nirons* were joyn'd with the *Bayzeuts*, the *Markatts*, and the *Tatars*, intending to surprize him. Upon this News *Zingis Chan*, who had already considerably augmented his Forces, and acquir'd great Experience in the Business of War, having given a general Rendezvous to the thirteen Tribes which were under his Obedience, and assign'd to every Tribe as they arriv'd, the Post which they were to be employ'd in; having afterwards order'd the Baggage and Cattle to be plac'd in the middle of the Camp, he put himself at the Head of his Troops, and in this Posture expected the Enemy without stirring: but at their Approach he rang'd his 30000 Men in a Line, to cover by so large a Front his Baggage and Beasts; and having in this manner engag'd the Enemy, he gain'd a compleat Victory over them, leaving between five and six thousand slain upon the Field of Battle, besides a great Number of

*takes the Field at Thirteen, against the Revolting Tribes.*

*Tamuzin enters the 40th Year of his Age.*

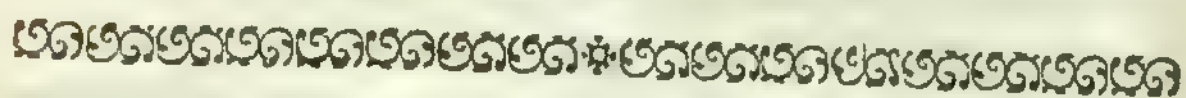
*Defeats the Tayzeuts, Nirons, Bayzuts, Markatts and Tatars.*



Prisoners, which fell into the Hands of *Zingis Chan*.

*Cruel Execution.*

Immediately after the Battle, *Zingis Chan* having order'd seventy large Caldrons of Water to be put upon the Fire, he caus'd the principal of the Revolters to be thrown in Head-foremost while the Water was boiling hot. After which he march'd towards the Habitations of the Revolted, and having sack'd them, he carry'd away the Men and the Cattle, and every thing in general which he found to be of use. He condemn'd the Children of the chief Men of the Tribes to Slavery, and distributed the rest among his Troops to serve for Recruits, which considerably increased the Number of them.



### C H A P. III.

*Of the War of Zingis Chan, against Aunak Chan of the Caraits; and of the Defeat of the latter.*

*Goigerats.  
Zamuca  
Zizin stirs  
up Aunak  
or Ung  
Chan a-  
gainst Ta-  
muzin.*

THERE was a Man of the Tribe of the *Dsoigerats*, called *Zamuca Zizen*; the Term *Zizen* in the *Mogull* Language, signifies an eloquent Man; in the *Arabick* such a Person is called *Akill*, and in the *Persian* Tongue *Bachirath*. This Man going to *Sungun*, eldest Son of *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, said to him, "You and your Father imagine that *Zingis Chan* is your best Friend; but I can assure you that he has sent to desire *Tayan Chan* of the *Naimanns*, and *Bairak Chan* to join him, in order to war upon you; and none can know it better than I, because I have been brought up with him; and am of the same Tribe  
" and



“ and I have had what I tell you, not only from  
 “ *Zingis Chan*’s own Mouth, but also from those  
 “ who are in Confederacy with him.” *Aunak*  
*Chan* calling to mind upon this Advice, that the *Ung*  
*Chan* of the *Naimanns* had an old Grudge against *Chan con-*  
 him, believ’d that this Intelligence was not al- *sults his*  
 together to be despis’d. Nevertheless consult- *Son Sun-*  
 ing his Son *Sungun* about it, he gave him to *gun.*  
 understand that it was almost impossible to give  
 entire Credit to the Report of *Zamuca Zi-* *Suspects*  
*zen*, because of the constant Friendship which *Zamuca*  
*Zingis Chan* had always shewn for them for the *Zizen.*  
 time past; that consequently it was no way ad-  
 visable that they should be the first who should  
 break that Amity, upon the Report of only *Is inclined*  
 one Man who might be false, but that they *not to*  
 should observe the Motions of *Zingis Chan*, and *make War*  
 hold themselves in readiness let what would *on Tamu-*  
 happen; to the end that if he was determin’d *zin.*  
 to make War upon them, the Blame at least *Under*  
 might lie at his Door. At the same time, he *great Obli-*  
 put his Son in mind of the great Obligations *gations to*  
 which he had to the House of *Zingis Chan*, in *the Family*  
 the time of his Wars against his Brothers. *of Zingis*  
*Chan.*

For it must be observ’d that *Margus Ili*, Prince  
 of the Tribe of *Caraits*, having at his Death *History of*  
 left six Sons, the eldest called *Korzacur*, and *Ung*  
 the youngest *Cavar*; these two Brothers agreed *Chan,*  
 together to divide the Inheritance of their Fa-  
 ther between them. *Korzacur* had in process  
 of Time five Sons, called, 1. *Aunak*, or *Tay-*  
*rell*, 2. *Jacacara*, 3. *Baytimut*, 4. *Numissai*, 5.  
*Zukambu*, all active Men and of uncommon  
 Bravery; who after the Death of their Father,  
 quarrelling among themselves for the Succession,  
 the eldest and youngest joined against the other  
 three, and having got the better of them, they  
 obliged their Brother *Jacacara*, who was the



Ung  
routed by  
his Bro-  
ther, flies  
to Jessugi  
Bayadur.

Flies to  
him a se-  
cond time.

Is re-esta-  
blished by  
Jessugi  
Bayadur.

Ung  
Chan's  
Plot to in-  
snare Ta-  
muzin.

chief of the Party, to retire among the *Naimanns*; who having given him Assistance, put him in a Condition to go back, and chase his Brother *Aunak* in his Turn, who fled to the Father of *Zingis Chan*. This Prince having lent him Succours re-establish'd his Affairs, put *Jacacara* again to flight, and plac'd *Aunak* once more in the Possession of the Country of the *Caraits*. *Jacacara*, who took shelter with his Uncle *Cavar Chan*, wrought so upon him by his Importunities, that he prevailed with him to interpose his Authority with *Aunak Chan*, in order to oblige him to come to an Agreement with his Brothers, and part the paternal Inheritance among them. But *Aunak Chan* giving little heed to the Remonstrances of his Uncle, *Cavar Chan* enter'd his Territories with an Army, and reduc'd him a second time to fly for Refuge to the Father of *Zingis Chan*; because the greatest part of his Subjects refused to take Arms against his Uncle, whose sole Business was to reconcile him with his Brother. Whereupon *Jessugi Bayadur Chan* coming anew to the Assistance of *Aunak*, and having this time put to death his Brother *Jacacara*, who fell into his Hands, he re-settled him in the Possession of his Country, without reaping any other Advantage by this Expedition, than the Glory of having laid the Foundation of the Riches and Power to which *Aunak Chan* afterwards arriv'd.

The Remembrance of these Benefits could not but oblige *Aunak Chan* to have much regard for the Person of *Zingis Chan*: but as on the other hand he fear'd him extreamly on account of his active Spirit, he came to a Resolution with his Son to send Embassadors to him; who to testify that the Remembrance of so many Benefits were not blotted out of their Minds,

I. . . . . should



should demand the Continuance of his Friendship, and at the same time propose a more strict Alliance betwixt his Family and that of *Aunak Chan*, by the Marriage of his Son *Zuzi* with the Daughter of *Aunak Chan*: That to settle this Affair, they should endeavour to engage him to make a Visit in Person to their Master, and that as soon as he arriv'd, they should put him to death, and so be under no necessity of engaging in a War on that Occasion.

Pursuant to this Resolution, *Aunak Chan* sent one of his Officers he most confided in, called *Bukadai Kanzat*, to make the afore said Proposals to *Zingis Chan*; who having given a favourable Reception to this Embassador, and having had no Knowledge of the false Reports which *Zamuca Zizen* had made on that Head to *Aunak Chan*, set forward, accompany'd with only two of his Men, to go and see him: But meeting with his Father-in-Law *Menglik Izka* on the Road, who inform'd him of the ill Designs of *Aunak Chan* against his Person, he return'd back again; and after causing the Embassador to be handsomely treated, sent him back with answer, "That he wish'd it was in his Power to return the Civilities of his Master by inviting him to his Court; but that the Cattle was so lean at present that his Entertainment must be very indifferent: that therefore he was oblig'd to put off the Invitation till the Season came when the Beasts would be fatter; and then if *Aunak Chan* would do him the Honour to come and see him, he would not fail going to visit him in his Turn."

Five or six days after the Departure of that Embassador, one named *Badu*, and his Brother *Kishlik* came to find *Zingis Chan*, and desiring to

*Tamuzin accepts the Invitation to Ung Chan's Court.*

*Is met on the Road by his Father-in-Law, who discovers the Plot.*

*Tamuzin returns, and sends an Apology to Ung Chan.*

*Ung Chan designs to surprise Tamuzin.*



*Design discover'd.* to speak to him in private, they said to him,  
 “ We keep the Horses of one of the chief Of-  
 “ ficers of the Court of *Aunak Chan*, when  
 “ I *Badu* going Yesterday to carry the Milk,  
 “ which I had been some days gathering, to my  
 “ Master's House, I heard by chance from be-  
 “ hind the Door, my Master saying to his Wife,  
 “ Our Embassador is return'd, and forasmuch  
 “ as our *Chan* finds he has miss'd his Point,  
 “ he is resolv'd to go and surprize *Zingis Chan*  
 “ before he suspects any thing of the Matter ;  
 “ and he designs to begin his March imme-  
 “ diately, or in the Evening, that he may be  
 “ up with him early, because he knows he is  
 “ accusom'd to lie long a-bed in the Morning.  
 “ Struck with Horror at so black a Treason, I  
 “ did not delay a Moment's time after I had  
 “ deliver'd my Milk in my Master's Kitchen,  
 “ from coming to inform you of it, to the end  
 “ you might be upon your Guard.”

*Tamuzin lies in Ambush expecting Ung Chan.* Upon this Advice *Zingis Chan*, having dis-  
 patch'd immediate Orders to his People that  
 were nearest hand to repair to him, sent the  
 Women and Children, together with the Cattle  
 and all their other Effects, to a Place out of the  
 way called *Balzunabalak*, saying, “ If God gives  
 “ us Victory, we shall bring them back quick-  
 “ ly again :” But he stay'd himself with about  
 2500 Men, which were all he was able to get  
 together in haste, in the same Place where he  
 then was ; ordering his Men, that during the  
 Night, every one should hold his Horse by the  
 Bridle, that they might always be in readiness  
 for the Combat. *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*  
*Ung Chan appears at Day-break with 12000 Men.* drawing nigh about Sun-rise, at the Head of  
 12000 Men, *Zingis Chan*, by Advice of a Man  
 of Parts, of the Tribe of the *Mankatts* called  
*Kojuldar Zizen*, divided his Men into two Bo-  
 dies,



dies, and put himself with one of them in Ambuscade, while the other Part expected their Enemies resolutely in the Open Field. In this manner the Van of the Enemy being attack'd in Front and Rear at the same time, was immediately routed, and tho *Aunak Chan* advanc'd in Person with his Son *Sungun* at the Head of a great Body of their Troops to support them, <sup>Is defeat-</sup> far from being able to rally them, they were <sup>ed.</sup> so roughly attack'd themselves in their Turn, that *Sungun* having receiv'd a great Stroke with a Pike in his Face, all the rest were put to flight. After which *Zingis Chan*, content with the Honour of having beat the Enemy with such a Handful of Men, judg'd it convenient to retreat before all the Forces of the Enemy came down upon him, and shaping his March towards *Balzunabalak*, where he had sent the Women and Baggage of his Men the Night before, he found at his Arrival there so little Water, that he was constrain'd to decamp and march towards the River *Kalassui*, and in regard the Tribe of the *Kunkurats* at that time dwelt upon *Orchon*; the Banks of that River, and had a Chief call'd *Turk-illi*, who was a Relation of *Zingis Chan*, he sent one of his Officers to tell him, that being his Friend and Relation, he would come and see him, and that if he was dispos'd to keep up the old Friendship which was between them, he should always find him ready to do it on his side with the greatest Exactness; but that in case he was resolv'd to renounce that Amity, and enter into Engagements contrary to his Interests, he need only speak his Mind and then he knew what he had to do.

Upon this Message *Turk-illi* thought proper <sup>Turk-illi</sup> to put himself under the Obedience of *Zingis* <sup>with the</sup> *Chan*, and join him with all the Tribe of the <sup>Kunkurats</sup> <sup>joins Ta-</sup> *Kun-* <sup>muzin.</sup>



Tola.

*kurats*. From thence they march'd together towards the River *Collanuaer*, upon the Banks of which they stop'd some time. After which *Zingis Chan* sent a Man of the Tribe of the *Badurgins*, called *Aarcaizum Bayadur* to *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, to represent to him

Tamu-

zin's Let-

ter to Ung

Chan.

“What Ingratitude it was in him to attack him without any Reason, after he had been twice establish'd in his Dominions by the Arms of his Father, and had receiv'd from himself on five or six different Occasions, so authentick Proofs of his Friendship, that he had never attempted to corrupt his Subjects, or seize his Lands; having on the contrary always sought Occasions to serve him without any View to Interest: That he ever believ'd he ought to consider him and his Son *Sungun* as the two Shafts of his Chariot; and remember, that one of them ought not to be broken, unless the Chariot did not run true, how strong and good soever the other Shaft might be.” *Aunak*

Sungun

opposes the  
Peace.

*Chan* having heard these Remonstrances with some kind of Confusion, acknowledg'd that there was nothing in the Whole which was not very true; but forasmuch as it was in compliance with the Advice of his Son *Sungun* that he had begun the War, he sent back that Envoy to his Son, to receive from him the final Answer to those Articles; and he who purpos'd to have his Revenge for his late Hurt, would upon no Account hear of an Accommodation.

Tamuzin  
advances  
with his  
Army.

*Zingis Chan* having yet try'd many other ways to bring them to Peace, and seeing in the end he only lost his Labour with them, set forward with all his Troops in quest of them, and having quickly encounter'd *Aunak Chan* and his Son, who came to meet him with a very numerous Army, they came to a bloody Battle, in



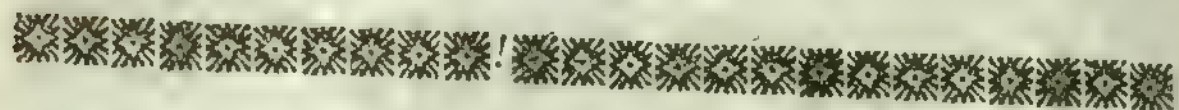
in which Fortune having declar'd in favour of *And de-*  
*Zingis Chan, Aunak Chan* and his Son *Sungun* <sup>feats Ung</sup>  
 were constrain'd to save themselves by Flight, <sup>Chan and</sup>  
 and to abandon their Dominions, and all those <sup>his Son.</sup>  
 of their Subjects who liv'd on the Produce of  
 their Lands and Cattle, at the Discretion of the  
 Vanquisher.

After this Defeat, *Aunak Chan* resolv'd to <sup>Death of</sup>  
 fly for Refuge to *Taijan Chan* of the *Naimanns*; <sup>Ung</sup>  
 but in the way falling into the Hands of two <sup>Chan,</sup>  
*Mursas* of the *Naimanns* called *Kurimazu* and  
*Tamika*, who knew there had always been much  
 Animosity between their Chan and him, they  
 kill'd him with all his Attendants; and having  
 strip'd the dead Bodies of whatever they had a-  
 bout them of any use, they cut off the Head of  
*Aunak Chan* and brought it for a Present to  
 their Chan, who blam'd much this Action, say-  
 ing, "That being a great Prince, and vene-  
 "rable for his Age, they had better serv'd for  
 "his Guard than been his Executioners." And  
 to honour the Memory of so great a Prince,  
 he had his Head enchas'd in Silver, and plac'd  
 upon his own Seat with the Face turn'd to the <sup>Ung</sup>  
 Door. They give out, that one Day when the <sup>Chan's</sup>  
 Head was become dry, the Tongue was ob- <sup>Head en-</sup>  
 serv'd to stir and thrust it self three times out <sup>chas'd in</sup>  
 of the Mouth, which gave occasion for many <sup>Silver.</sup>  
 Speculations to those who pretended to draw  
 some Prefage from thence.

*Sungun* the Son of *Aunak Chan* hid himself <sup>Death of</sup>  
 for some time among his own Subjects; but <sup>Sungun.</sup>  
 observing that they sought after him to take  
 away his Life, he retir'd to the Town of *Cha-*  
*teen*, which was in the Hands of a Lord of the  
 Tribe of *Kallatz*, called *Calizobara*; who in-  
 stead of protecting, put him to death, and  
 sent



sent his Head, with his Wife, his Children, and all the Effects he found, to *Zingis Chan*.



## C H A P. IV.

*Zingis Chan is acknowledg'd Chan of the Mogulls.*

*The lesser  
neighbour-  
ing Tribes  
submit to  
Tamuzin.*

AFTER this Event, all the lesser neighbouring Tribes putting themselves under the Power of *Zingis Chan*, he began to grow formidable : but the other Tribes, who thought themselves numerous enough to make head against them, would not hear of submitting to him.

*An. Dom.  
1202.*

*Nauman-  
cura, or  
Oman  
Curule.*

*Tamuzin  
takes the  
Name of  
Zingis  
Chan.*

In the Year 599, called by the *Mogulls* *Tongus*, or the *Hog*, *Zingis Chan* being full forty Years old, all the Tribes of the *Mogulls* which had submitted to him, acknowledg'd him for their *Chan* in the Country of *Naumancura*, where he resided at that time ; on which Occasion he gave his Subjects a great Feast. The most remarkable thing which happen'd at this Solemnity was, that one *Cokza*, surnamed the *Image of God*, Son of *Menglik Izka* by the first Venter, sprung from the Tribe of the *Cunachmars*, Father-in-Law to *Zingis Chan*, came to this Prince, called till then *Tamuzin*, and declar'd to him, “ That he came from God, to tell him that from thenceforth he should take the Name of *Zingis*, and order all his Subjects for the time to come to call him *Zingis Chan*.” He foretold at the same time, that all those of his Posterity should be *Chans* from



“ from Generation to Generation.” The word *Deriva-*  
*Zin* in the *Mogull* Language signifies *great*, and *tion of the*  
the Termination *gis*, making the Superlative, *Name of*  
*Zingis* is as much as to say, *the most great* \*.

The aforesaid *Cokza*, who brought him this *Cokza*, “  
Message, was accustom’d to go much in Winter *sort of*  
with his Feet bare, and very thin of Clothes; *false Pro-*  
and as he was nevertheless in good Health, while *phet.*  
others would have but ill endur’d such a Course  
of Life, they gave him the Name of *the Image*  
of God. He gave out also, that a white Horse  
† came to him from time to time, and that as  
soon as he was upon his Back, the Horse moun-  
ted with him up to Heaven, where he convers’d  
with the Divinity †.

\* As our Author gives in this Place an exact Derivation  
of the Name of Zingis Chan, it seems to me that there is no  
room to doubt, that all those who write that Name after a  
different manner do but maim it; nevertheless, as a Confir-  
mation, it is proper to take notice that Marco Polo, who  
pretends to have lived several Years in great Repute at the  
Court of Coplai Chan, Grandson of Zingis Chan, writes the  
Name of that Conqueror just as our Author. ’Tis on ac-  
count of the same Derivation that the Callmuks, who use at  
present the true Language of the Mogulls, give the Name of  
Zingis to the Sea, as tho to signify an Extent of extraordi-  
nary Greatness.

[† This Story is copied from the Fable of Mohammed’s  
Al Borak.]





## C H A P. V.

*Of the War of Zingis Chan, against Taijan Chan of the Naimanns; and of the Reduction of the Tribe of the Naimanns under the Obedience of Zingis Chan.*

Taijan  
Chan of  
the Nai-  
manns in-  
vites Ala-  
kus to join  
against  
Zingis  
Chan.

I N the mean time, *Taijan Chan* of the *Naimanns* dispatch'd an Envoy to *Alakus*, Chief of the Tribe of the *Ungutts*, with Instructions to tell him, that *Zingis Chan* began to make himself more formidable every Day, and treated with extreme Severity those whom he brought under his Power; causing the principal Men of them to be slain, and preserving the common People only to augment the Number of his Slaves: That he had treated in this manner the Tribe of the *Caraits*, tho it was one of the most considerable Tribes of the *Turkish* Nation; that he had order'd *Aunak Chan* to be slain, with the chief of his Subjects, and had seiz'd all his Demesns; that the Dread of these Violences had already brought the other small neighbouring Tribes to submit to that Prince: That for his part, not doubting but he would serve them the same Sauce, he judg'd it proper to attack him with their Joint Forces before he could arm himself, and that he summon'd *Alakus* to enter into that Confederacy.

Alakus,  
Chief of  
the Un-  
gutts, sends  
Notice to  
Zingis  
Chan.

But *Alakus* not only rejected these Measures, but sent to inform *Zingis Chan* of the Proposal which had been made to him on the Part of *Taijan Chan*. Upon which *Zingis Chan* having consulted with the Heads of the Tribes dependent on him, they were unanimously of Opinion,



nion, that they were not in a Condition to undertake any thing till their Horfes were somewhat recover'd from the Fatigue of their last Expedition. But *Daritlai Olzingan*, or *Daritlai-bulai*, *Zingis Chan*'s Uncle by the Father's side, disapproving all Delay on this Occasion, said to them, "If you have no other Reason for deferring so long, an Expedition of such Importance, but the bad Condition of your Horfes, you shall have mine, which are in very good Case, and I take upon me to furnish the whole Army." Upon these Offers, the War against the *Naimanns* was resolv'd on, and *Zingis Chan* assembled his Troops without Delay to be before-hand with his Enemies.

It was in the Year 600, called by the *Mogulls* *An. Dom.* *Zizkan*, or the *Mouse*, that the War against the *Naimanns* began: but before he took the Field, *Zingis Chan* sent a trusty Person called *Zena Noyan*, to get Intelligence of the Enemy, and inform himself whether the *Naimanns* were yet in Motion to come and attack him. *Zena Noyan* having seiz'd a *Naimann*, brought him to *Zingis Chan*; who questioning him about the Motions of those of his Tribe, learn'd that *Taijan Chan*, after joining the *Markatts*, the *Virats*, and the *Dsoigerats*, had pass'd the River of *Altai*, and made great Marches in order to surprize him.

*Zingis Chan* upon this Advice, setting forward instantly with his Troops, was before hand with him. After many days March, he was at length inform'd by his forlorn Hope, that the Front of his Enemies Army appear'd; whereupon he gave the Command of the Right Wing of his Army to his Brother *Zuzicar*, and that of the Left to his eldest Son *Zuzi*, placing himself



himself in the Center; in which Order, he made the Charge to be given.

Taijan  
Chan  
wounded  
at the first  
Onset.

At the beginning of the Battle, it happen'd unluckily for the *Naimanns*, that their *Chan* was dangerously wounded, which oblig'd him to retire out of the Fight to a neighbouring Height; and the Commanders of his Troops perceiving, by his making no Answers to any thing they spoke about, that he was so weak, as he had not long to live, unanimously resolv'd to defend themselves to the last, to avoid being expos'd to the ill Treatment of *Zingis Chan*, in case they fell into his Hands. With this Resolution they return'd to the Fight, and left their *Chan* dying in that Place.

Advise  
his Men to  
submit to  
Zingis  
Chan.

After Numbers had been kill'd on both sides, *Taijan Chan* sent to tell the Chiefs of his Troops that he desir'd them to surrender at Discretion to *Zingis Chan*; that they had done their Duty sufficiently, and he was fully satisfy'd with the Services they had already done him: but seeing it was in vain to sacrifice themselves to oppose the happy Star of *Zingis Chan*, he exhorted them to provide for their Safety; but they continually refus'd to come to any Agreement, and persisted in the Resolution of Fighting to the last Man, as they really did. The wounded *Chan*, finding nothing could divert them from such a desperate Resolution, strove to save himself by Flight with his Son and the few Men he had to guard his Person, but he died on the Road. However his Son *Kutshluk* happily retreated towards *Bairak Chan*, who was his Father's eldest Brother.

Dies, and  
his Son  
Kutshluk  
flies to  
Bairak  
Chan.



C H A P. VI.

*Of the Reduction of the Tribe of the Markatts under Zingis Chan, and of the Conquest of the Town and Kingdom of Tangut.*

IN regard the Season was already much advanced at the time that *Zingis Chan* went in quest of *Taijan Chan*, he return'd immediately after the Battle with his Troops, to take up their Winter Quarters in the Lands belonging to him. In the Spring following he enter'd the Country of the *Markatts*; the *Chan* of this Tribe called *Tochtabegi*, had on several Occasions openly declar'd himself against the Interests of *Zingis Chan*: he was also present at the Battle which *Zingis Chan* fought the Autumn before with *Taijan Chan*; but foreseeing from the beginning of the Action that *Taijan Chan* would be defeated, he knew so well how to shift for himself, that escaping with his Men from the Rout, he retir'd towards *Bairak*, another *Chan* of the *Naimanns*.

*Zingis Chan* having beaten the *Markatts*, and reduc'd that Tribe under his Obedience, chose a great Number of Men out of them to reinforce his Troops, and march'd from thence towards the Capital of the Country of *Tangut*. Upon the News of this March, the *Chan* of that Country, who was a very aged Prince, shut himself up in his Metropolis, which gave name to the whole Country, and resolv'd to defend himself to the last. *Zingis Chan* being arriv'd before the Town, summon'd the *Chan* to surrender; who refusing, he besieg'd it in Form: and

*Zingis Chan returns.*

*Invades the Markatts.*

*Subdues them.*

*Invades Tangut.*

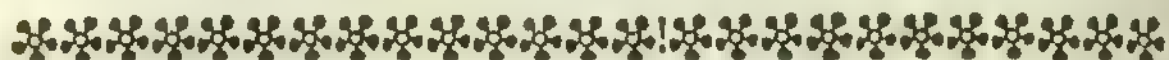
*Besieges and takes Tangut.*



*Puts the  
Chan to  
death.*

*Raises the  
Walls of  
Tangut.*

and having taken it after a Siege of several Weeks by a general Assault, he caus'd the *Chan* to be put to death, and the Walls of the Town to be thrown down. Then having conquer'd some other Towns thereabouts, he put strong Garisons into them, and return'd to his own Dominions.



### C H A P. VII.

*Of the Death of Bairak Chan of the Naimanns, and of Tochtabegi Chan of the Markatts.*

*Bairak  
Chan of  
the Naimanns  
taken and  
killed.*

**Z**ingis Chan having return'd from the Expedition of *Tangut*, and rested during the Winter in his own Territories, went in the Spring following in quest of *Bairak Chan*; but arriving at the Place of his ordinary Residence, he understood he had gone a hunting some days before. Upon this Advice he follow'd him with all the haste he could, and having taken him Prisoner, order'd his Head to be cut off.

*Kutshluk  
and  
Tochtabegi  
fly the  
Country.*

In the mean time, one of the Retinue of *Bairak Chan*, having escap'd out of the Hands of the *Mogulls*, went to find out *Kutshluk*, the Son of *Taijan Chan*, and *Tochtabegi Chan* of the *Markatts*, and his Sons, who thought themselves perfectly safe, and told them of the Misfortune which had happen'd to *Bairak Chan*; whereupon they all betook themselves to flight and retir'd towards the Banks of the River *Irtis*. *Zingis Chan* for his part return'd to his Dominions, carrying with him the Wives, the Children, and in general all that belong'd to *Bairak Chan*.



*Chan.* He pass'd the Winter at home, and took the Field about Spring with a good Body of Troops in search of *Kutshluk* and *Tochtabegi*, who had settled themselves upon the Banks of the *Irtis*.

In his Approach to that River, he arriv'd in the Neighbourhood of the Habitations of the *Dsoigerats* and the *Carliks*, the first of which had a Chief called *Conacabegi*, and the latter a *Chan* named *Arslan*: These two Princes not seeing themselves in a Condition to try their Forces with those of *Zingis Chan*, put themselves under his Subjection, and led him towards the Habitations of *Kutshluk* and *Tochtabegi*, who getting News of the Approach of *Zingis Chan* fled as fast as they could: but he pursued them so close that *Tochtabegi* fell into his Hands, whom he instantly caused to be put to death. As for *Kutshluk*, he happily escaped for this time also, and took shelter in *Turkestan*, with *Cavar Chan* of *Carakitay*, who at that time reign'd in *Turkestan*. *Cavar Chan* receiv'd that unfortunate Prince with all the Distinction imaginable; and not only gave him his Protection, but also his Daughter in Marriage, and look'd upon him as his own Child. In the mean time *Zingis Chan* having no more to do on that side, return'd to his own Dominions.





## C H A P. VIII.

*Of the Reduction of the Kergis under the Obedience of Zingis Chan, and of the Death of Zamucha Zizen.*

Kergis  
submit to  
Zingis  
Chan.

Shungar,  
a rare  
Bird.

Zamuca  
Zizen  
deliver'd  
up to Zin-  
gis Chan.

Put to a  
cruel  
death.

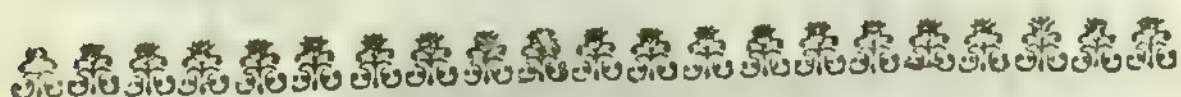
**Z**ingis Chan, on his Return from the Expedition against *Tochtabegi*, sent two Embassadors, called *Altai* and *Taramish*, to the *Kergis*, to summon them to submit to him. The Chief of the *Kergis* called *Urussinall*, seeing himself in no Condition to refuse with Impunity so powerful a Prince, accepted the Proposal, and dispatch'd one of his principal Officers to *Zingis Chan* to assure him of his Fidelity, and present him among other magnificent Presents, with a very rare Bird, called by the *Turks* *Shungar*, and by the *Russians* *Kratzshet*. This Bird is all over white, having nothing but the Head, Feet, Bill and Eyes of a fine red\*.

After the Death of *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, *Zamuca Zizen* retir'd to *Taijan Chan* of the *Naimanns*, and some time after the Death of the latter he return'd to his Tribe, which was that of the *Dsoigerats*; but the *Dsoigerats* considering that *Zingis Chan* was not only then their Master, but also of the same Blood with themselves, and that this *Zamuca Zizen* had been the only Cause of the Ruin of *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, and of *Taijan Chan* of the *Naimanns*, their former Masters, they resolv'd to carry him bound Hands and Feet to *Zingis Chan*, who caus'd him to be put to death by drawing him Limb from Limb. And in the midst of his Torments he declar'd, that if ever

\* See Page 37.



*Zingis Chan* had fallen into his Hands, he would have put him to the same Death which he then suffer'd \*.



CHAP. IX.

*Of the Voluntary Submission of the Vigurs to Zingis Chan.*

THE *Vigurs* liv'd under the Protection of *Vigurs Cavar Chan* of *Turkestan*, and annually throw off sent him magnificent Presents, tho they had a the Yoke of Prince of their own called *Idikut Chan*. But *Cavar Chan* of *Turkestan* resolving to send one of the Lords of his Court called *Shuwakom* to the *Vigurs*, with the Character of *Deruga*, or Intendant of the Policy, to take exact Information of the Condition of their Country, the *Vigurs* consider'd this as an Innovation which might be made a President of; and as on the other hand that Prince exerted his Power with much Violence, they resolv'd to throw off *Cavar Chan's* Yoke.

\* This is the same *Zamuca Zizen*, who is pretended to have been the Rival of *Zingis Chan*, with the Daughter of *Aunak Chan*, at the time of his supposed Retreat to the Court of the Chan of the *Caraits*; and who fired with Disdain, to see himself contemned by that Princess, for the Love of *Zingis Chan*, leaves no Stone unturn'd to destroy that too happy Rival. But as our Author makes no mention of those romantick Adventures, and reports very ingenuously the Circumstances of all these Events, one may venture to depend on him on this Occasion; especially since he explains himself precisely enough thereupon, assuring us that *Aunak Chan* endeavour'd to ensnare *Zingis Chan* by Proposals of Marriage between his Daughter and the eldest Son of this last; and that he does not put the Daughter of *Aunak Chan*, upon whom all this Intrigue turns, among the Wives of *Zingis Chan*; as may be seen, Chap. XII. of this same Part.



*Kills Cavar Chan's Deruga.*

Wherefore having understood that *Zingis Chan* was a very formidable Prince, who receiv'd very graciously all those who voluntarily put themselves under his Subjection, they persuaded *Idikut Chan* to have the *Deruga* kill'd which *Cavar Chan* had sent among them; after which he sent Embassadors to *Zingis Chan*, with Commission to propose to him, that having heard so many Wonders about his Person and Government, he offer'd to put himself with all his Subjects under his Obedience, provided he could be assur'd of his Protection against the Resentment of *Cavar Chan*.

*Seeks Zingis Chan's Protection.*

*Vigurs submit to Zingis Chan.*

*Idikut marries a Daughter of Zingis Chan.*

*Zingis Chan* having embrac'd this Proposal with Joy, dispatch'd one of the principal Officers of his Court with his Embassadors to assure *Idikut Chan* of his Protection. Whereupon that *Chan* having resolved to wait on *Zingis Chan* in Person with magnificent Presents, this Prince receiv'd him with so many Marks of Affection, that *Idikut Chan* besought him to receive him among the Number of his Children. *Zingis Chan* having granted him his Request, gave him his Daughter in Marriage, and ever after preserv'd much Friendship for him. I have already observ'd, that the Word *Idikut*, signifies a *free Man* that is subject to no body.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C H A P. X

### Of *Zingis Chan's War against Altan Chan of Kitay.*

*Zingis Chan wars on Altan Chan of Kitay.*

**Z**ingis Chan having reduc'd to his Obedience the whole Nation of the *Mogulls*, resolv'd to revenge on *Altan Chan* of *Kitay* all the Matters



Matters of Complaint which he had on several Occasions given, as well to his Father and him as his Ancestors; and having propos'd this Affair to the Heads of the different Tribes under his dependence, they advis'd him to send one of his Officers called *Zachiredsa*, in quality of Embassador to the Court of that *Chan*. This Minister arriving at the Court of *Altan*<sup>Summons</sup> *Chan*, gave him to understand that God having <sup>Altan</sup> made *Zingis Chan* Master of a vast Empire, he <sup>Chan to</sup> was sent to summon him to submit himself to his Obedience, and acknowledge him for his Lord and Master; that he had Orders to demand a direct Answer to the Point, and that without Delay; that in case of refusal he was to prepare for War, and that it would soon appear which of the two would be Master.

*Altan Chan* having heard this Proposal, fell into a Passion both against *Zingis Chan* and his Minister, saying, "You believe perhaps you have to do with one of your petty *Turkish* Tribes; but if your *Chan* is so eager to be at it, he may come; I shall endeavour to have his Work ready for him." The Embassador<sup>Embassa-</sup> returning with this Answer, carefully observ'd<sup>dor ob-</sup> all the Rivers, Roads, and Avenues to the<sup>serves the</sup> Frontiers of *Kitay*, that he might make his Use<sup>Roads.</sup> of it in time and place. *Zingis Chan* having heard his Report, took the Field off-hand with *Zingis* very considerable Forces: *Altan Chan* having<sup>Chan and</sup> likewise on his Part gather'd a numerous Ar-<sup>Altan</sup> my, advanc'd to meet his Enemy, and en-<sup>Chan</sup> camp'd very advantageously about the Frontiers<sup>prepare for</sup> of his Empire. War.

In the mean time *Zingis Chan* entring *Kitay*, *Zingis* took several Towns in sight of *Altan Chan*, of<sup>Chan en-</sup> which he burnt some, and put the best part of<sup>ters China.</sup> the Inhabitants to the Sword. *Altan Chan*, to hinder



hinder him from making farther Progress, detach'd one of his Generals with a considerable Body of his Army to oppose his Passage. This General having learn'd by a Defenter that *Zingis Chan* had newly taken one of the greatest Cities of *Kitay*, the Throats of whose Inhabitants he had order'd to be cut, march'd immediately on that side, in hopes of surprizing the *Mogulls* before they got any Tidings of his March, the rather because that Man assur'd him, that he fled to them at the very time they were busy in dividing the Spoil which they had made on that Occasion; but *Zingis Chan* who put all his trust in God, came and attack'd him briskly when he thought him far enough off; and having entirely defeated him, made himself Master of a great many Towns thereabouts. After which falling unexpectedly upon the grand Army of *Altan Chan*, he slew 30000 Men, and oblig'd that Prince to shut himself up in his City of *Chan Balik* \*.

*Routs Altan Chan's General.*

*Zingis Chan subdues many Places in Kitay.*

After so great a Victory, *Zingis Chan* took, without much Resistance, many of the considerable Towns of *Kitay*; mean while *Altan Chan* observing that *Zingis Chan* pierc'd farther every day within his Empire, and even drew near the Town of *Chan Balik*, held Council with the principal Lords of his Court, to know what he had to do in so ticklish a Juncture, and whether they judg'd it most convenient to continue a War so unfortunate in the beginning, or to make Peace with *Zingis Chan*. On this Occasion one of the prime Lords of his Court call'd *Dsing-Dsang*, gave his Opinion for Peace, by reason that as soon as it was concluded *Zingis Chan* would return into his Dominions, and that then they

[\* *Tis a Tatar Name, signifying the City of the Chan, Balik is a Town, so is Bally in Irish.*]



would be at full liberty to assemble the States of the Empire, and consider deliberately what they had to do in so nice a Situation. This Altan Council was approv'd by *Altan Chan*, who having quickly dispatch'd an Embassador to *Zingis Chan*, order'd him to propose Peace, and his Daughter in Marriage. *Zingis Chan* having accepted these Proposals, espoused the Daughter of *Altan Chan*, and retir'd after the Conclusion of the Peace into his hereditary Dominions.

*Altan Chan* finding after the Retreat of the *Mogulls* that all the Northern Provinces of his Empire were ruin'd, left the Government of *Chanbalik* to his Son, and went to reside in the City of *Namkin*, which his Father had very strongly fortify'd. This Town had a triple Enclosure of Walls; the outmost of which was forty Leagues about; it was built by the side of a great River, and of so vast Extent, that one would not be less than a Day passing by Barge from one end of the City to the other.

*Altan Chan* having, before his Departure to *Namkin*, cut off the Heads of some Lords of *Cara Kitay* for some slight Faults, it very much disgusted the *Carakitayans*, and induced some of them after *Altan Chan's* Departure, to take whatever they could lay hold on of the Effects and Cattle belonging to his Son their Sovereign, and retire afterwards to the Countries in Subjection to *Zingis Chan*. Another of the Lords of *Cara Kitay* having surpriz'd and ruin'd some Towns in the Domains of *Altan Chan*, sent one of his Men to *Zingis Chan* to sound whether he should meet with an agreeable Reception from him; and having receiv'd a favourable Answer, he went over to him, and in regard he was treated very honourably by that Prince, many great Lords and other People of

*Cara*



*Cara Kitay* follow'd his Example upon the least Pretence of Discontent.

About five or six Months after the Departure of *Altan Chan*, his Son to whom he had given the Command of the Northern Provinces of his Empire, having put the Government of the Town of *Chanbalik* into the Hands of some trusty Lords, went himself to his Father at *Nam-kin* to acquaint him with the bad Condition of their Affairs on the Frontiers. In the mean time *Zingis Chan* understanding on all Hands, that the Empire of *Altan Chan* was very much rent by Factions, would not neglect so good an Opportunity of seizing that fine Country. To effect this, he sent two of his Generals called *Zamusa Bayadur*, and *Mascan Bayadur*, with a numerous Army on that side, with Orders to make a new Irruption into *Kitay*, and to endeavour to make themselves Masters of *Chanbalik*.

*Zingis Chan invades the Northern Provinces of Kitay.*

*His Army reinforced by Deserters from Cara Kitay.*

This Army being arriv'd on the Frontiers, was considerably reinforc'd by a great Number of Deserters from *Cara Kitay*. *Altan Chan* on the News of this March, and knowing there was a great Scarcity in the Town of *Chanbalik* and the Country about it, sent thither some thousand Camels laden with Corn, under the Guard of a great Body of Troops commanded by two of his best Generals: But the Troops of *Zingis Chan* coming up with them entirely defeated them, took the two Generals Prisoners, and seized all the Camels and Corn of the Convoy. The News of that Misfortune so sensibly affected *Altan Chan* that he poison'd himself.

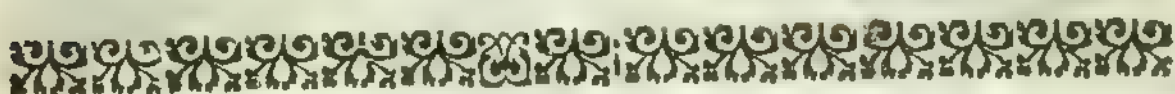
*Altan Chan poisons himself.*

*Chanbalik surrenders.*

At the Approach of the Generals of *Zingis Chan*, *Chanbalik* surrender'd without striking a Stroke. Upon this News *Zingis Chan* sent one of his principal Officers called *Kutuktu Noyan*, accompany'd with two others of his Ministers,



nisters, to *Chanbalik*, to seize the Treasure of *Zingis*  
*Altan Chan*, and carry it to the Place of his u-<sup>Chan five</sup>  
 sual Residence. Arriving afterwards in Person <sup>Years in</sup>  
 at *Chanbalik*, he apply'd all his Care to strength- <sup>his Expe-</sup>  
 en and extend more and more his Conquests in *Kitay*.  
*Kitay*: For this End he took by degrees the  
 greatest part of the Cities of that Empire, in  
 the most considerable of which he put Garisons  
 and trusty Governors; and having imploy'd  
 five Years in this Expedition, return'd into his  
 hereditary Provinces.



C H A P. XI.

*Of the Reduction of the Town of Akashin,  
 the quashing some Seeds of Rebellion,  
 and of the Death of Kutshluk.*

**Z**ingis Chan in his Return from his Expedi- <sup>Kashin, or</sup>  
 tion of *Kitay*, went and besieged the <sup>Cashin in</sup>  
 Town of *Akashin* in the Country of *Tangut*, <sup>Tangut</sup>  
 and having subdued it, as well as all the neigh- <sup>taken.</sup>  
 bouring Country, he resolved to go and finish  
 the Conquest of *Kitay*, by reducing the Towns  
 which remain'd yet untaken in that Empire;  
 but he was diverted from the Execution of that  
 Design by the Advice he receiv'd, that the  
 Tribes which had refused till then to acknow-  
 ledge him for their Master, had submitted to  
*Kutshluk* the Son of *Taijan Chan*, and had made  
 him their *Chan*. That afterwards *Kutshluk* see-  
 ing himself in a Condition to support himself  
 by his own Forces, by the Advice of *Sultan*  
*Mahamet Shab* of *Charass'm*, and on some Pre-  
 tence of Discontent ill enough grounded, had  
 unawares



Cavar Chan *deprived of half Turkestan,* unawares attack'd Cavar Chan his Father-in-Law, and had depriv'd him of the better half of his Dominions.

*by Kutshluk.* To this News was joined another Piece, viz. That a Brother of *Tochtabegi Chan* of the *Markatts*, called *Kudath*, was arriv'd with his two Nephews, the Sons of *Tochtabegi Chan*, among the *Naimanns*, and began to make the Subjects of *Zingis Chan* in those Quarters uneasy, by reason that the *Naimanns* being People newly subdued, could not as yet accustom themselves to the Government of *Zingis Chan*.

*Markats subdued.*

These Tidings having changed the Resolution of *Zingis Chan*, he resolv'd not to be absent from his hereditary Dominions in so delicate a Juncture. At the same time he sent two of his Generals called *Suida Bayadur*, and *Camu Tushazar*, with a considerable Body of his Troops against *Kudath* and his adherents; who coming up with them at the River *Dsam Muran*, killed a good Number of them, and took the rest Prisoners. This Defeat put an End entirely to the Sovereignty of the *Markatts*, which happen'd in the Year 613.

*Gam-Muran.*

*An. Dom. 1216.*

*Tumats subdued.*

As the *Tumats* in like manner had committed Hostilities on the Lands of *Zingis Chan*, while he was imployed in *Kitay*, he also detach'd one of his Generals called *Burgu Noyan* with some Troops to bring them to reason, which he did with a great deal of Rigour, having caused a great Number of them to be kill'd, and treated the rest exceeding ill. Against *Kutshluk*, who appear'd a more formidable Enemy, he sent the most experienc'd of his Generals, called *Zena Noyan*, with a numerous Army, ordering him to go and attack him where-ever he could meet him. *Kutshluk*, far from hiding himself, advanced to meet *Zena Noyan* with an Army

*Zena Noyan sent against Kutshluk.*



Army superior to that of the *Mogulls*; but *Zena Noyan* charg'd him so briskly, notwithstanding the Superiority of his Troops, that he was constrain'd to fly, follow'd by a small Number of his Men; all the rest of his Army having been cut to Pieces. *Zena Noyan*, not content with so great a Victory, stuck close to *Kutshluk*, and pursued him so briskly, that he even kill'd all the Men that accompany'd him; insomuch that not above three besides himself reach'd the *Sarekoll*. Country of *Sarekoll*, and the Neighbourhood of the City of *Badagshan*.

Mean while *Zena Noyan*, who never ceased pursuing him, meeting a Countryman in his way plowing, ask'd him if he had not seen Strangers pass by? and the Countryman telling him that four were newly pass'd by who took the Road to *Badagshan*; *Zena Noyan* redoubled his Speed, and coming up with *Kutshluk* at last in the Country of *Sarekoll*, before he could get to *Badagshan*, he order'd him immediately to be put to death. After which he went back with his Army into the Dominions of his Master, who was so pleas'd with the good Services he had done him on this Occasion, that he rewarded him magnificently at his Return.



C H A P. XII.

*Of the Wives and Children of Zingis Chan.*

**Z**ingis Chan had so great a Number of Wives and Concubines, that they reckon above five hundred. All his lawful Wives were Daughters

*Zingis Chan had 500 Wives and Concubines.*



His five  
favourite  
Wives.

ters of Chans or Princes; among which were five whom he lov'd beyond the rest. The first was called *Borta Cuzin*, by whom he had four Sons; the second *Kizu*, the Daughter of *Altan Chan* of *Kitay*; the third *Carizu*, who was the Widow of *Taijan Chan*; the fourth was called *Milu*, and the fifth *Singan*: These two last were descended of a *Tatar* Family, and were two Sisters; the last of which he espoused after the Death of the first.

Zingis  
Chan's  
four fa-  
vourite  
Sons, who  
had the  
Manage-  
ment of  
Affairs.

The four Sons which *Zingis Chan* had by *Borta Cuzin*, were called, 1. *Zuzi*, 2. *Zagatai*, 3. *Ugadai*, and 4. *Taulai*. I have already observ'd, that the word *Zuzi* signifies a *Guest*. These four Brothers had each of them his particular Imployment. *Zuzi* govern'd the *Œconomy* of his Father's Court; *Zagatai* administered Justice, and heard the Complaints of his Subjects; *Ugadai* had the Management of the Treasury, and receiv'd the Accounts of the Governors of Provinces; and *Taulai* had the Care of all that related to the Affair of War.

His five o-  
ther Sons  
made Go-  
vernors of  
Kitay.

Besides these four Sons, *Zingis Chan* had five others by his other Wives. Among these last, and his other nearest Relations, he distributed the principal Governments of *Kitay*, when he had made himself Master of all that Empire as far as the Country of *Almak*; but he divided the Sovereign Lordship of his hereditary Provinces, and in general of all his Conquests, among his four eldest Sons, exhorting them always to live in amity with one another as became good Brothers: and having assembled them all four on that Occasion, he gave them a Bundle of Arrows, bidding them break it in the Condition it was; which none of them being able to do, he unfasten'd the Bundle and gave them the Arrows one by one: then being able

This Pas-  
sage is re-  
ported of  
several  
Princes.

easily



easily to break them, he shew'd them it was the same with them, and that as long as they liv'd in Union among themselves, no neighbouring Power would dare meddle with them; but when once they came to be divided, it would be an easy Matter to bring them under: That lastly, he was desirous they should choose one from among themselves while he was yet living, to succeed him in the Empire after his Death, with the supreme Authority over the rest; each of whom should nevertheless be Master in the Dominions which fell to his Share.



C H A P. XIII.

*Of the Commencement of the War between Zingis Chan, and Sultan Mahamet Shah of Charafs'm.*

**Z**ingis Chan having establish'd Peace in his Dominions, and completed the Reduction of all the Tribes of the Turkish Nation under his Obedience, sent an Embassador called *Makinut-Jalauzi*, to Sultan Mahamet Shah of Charafs'm, to propose on his Behalf, that having become Master of all the neighbouring Dominions from the East to the Frontiers of his Empire, he earnestly desir'd that he would acknowledge him for his Father, as he on his Part was ready to consider him as his Son; because it appear'd expedient for their mutual Advantage, that the good Understanding which then subsisted between the two Empires

Zingis Chan  
sends an  
Embassy to  
Sultan  
Mohamed  
Chorazma  
Shah.



pires should be carefully cultivated for the time to come.

*Sultan  
Moham-  
med's  
Discourse  
with the  
Embassa-  
dor.*

*Offended  
with the  
Embassa-  
dor's An-  
swer.*

*Embassa-  
dor's Flat-  
tery.*

Upon this Proposal, Sultan *Mahamet Shab* of *Charass'm*, having taken the Ambassador aside, said to him, "I have one Question to ask you, provided you tell me the Truth; Is it true that your *Chan* has conquer'd *Kitay*?" and at the same time took a magnificent Scarf adorn'd with Jewels, which he actually wore at that time, and made him a Present of it, to induce him to disguise nothing from him. Whereupon the Ambassador answer'd him, "I protest before God that all which my *Chan* has order'd me to tell you is true, and that you will soon find I tell Truth, in case you come to have any Difference with him." At this Answer the Sultan fell into a great Passion, saying, "I know not what your *Chan* means by sending me word he had conquer'd so many Provinces? do you know of how great Extent my Empire is? or upon what ground your Master pretends to be greater than I, expecting I should honour him as my Father, and be content to be treated as his Son? has he then so many Armies?"

The Ambassador perceiving by this Discourse that the Sultan was angry, began to flatter him, saying, "I know very well that you are more powerful than my Master; for there is as much Difference between you two, as there is between the true Sun and a mock one: but you know on the other hand that he is my Master, and that I must execute his Orders: Nevertheless I can assure you his Intentions are very good." This Flattery having mollify'd the Sultan's Temper, he consented at last to every thing which the Ambassador propos'd,



propos'd, and sent him back very well satisfy'd with his Negotiation.

Makinut-Jalauzi having given Zingis Chan an Account of the Success of his Commission, this Prince resolv'd thence forward to live in good Understanding with the Sultan Shab of Charass'm, and not to attack him unless he gave him some great Provocation; and tho the Calif of Bagdat, called Nasir\*, wrote to Zingis Chan to

*Zingis Chan resolves to live in amity with Sultan Mohammed.*

H 2 induce

\* The Califs of Bagdat, in quality of Successors of Mahomet, ought solely to have possessed the supreme Power among the Mahometans, as well in Temporals as Spirituals; but there sprung up by degrees new Houses, which at length drew all the temporal Power from them, and left the Califs no more than an empty Shadow of Superiority.

Such was, among others, the House of the Shahs of Charass'm, which push'd things so far, that Sultan Mahomet, who is spoken of in this Place, after having seized all Persia, and several other considerable Provinces, presumed to expect that the Calif Nasir should receive a Garison of his Troops into the City of Bagdat, and permit him to come and live there whenever he thought fit: And upon being refused, he omitted nothing to obtain by force, what he could not get voluntarily yielded to him; which obliged the Calif, who was not in a Condition to make head against the Forces of Sultan Mahomet, to apply himself to Zingis Chan, as the only Prince in Asia at that time, who did not fear the Power of the Shah of Charass'm.

[This was the 8th Race of Kings in Persia which threw off the Yoke of the Chalifs: They had raised themselves upon the Ruin of the Selgukians, to whom they owed all their Greatness, the first of them being a Slave of Gelalaldin Malek Shah, the third and greatest Sultan of that Family, whom he made his Governor of Chowarazm. The Son of this Slave taking Advantage of the Distractions which ensued in Persia upon the Death of Gelalaldin, assumed the Title of King of Chowarazm, and his Successors proved the greatest Enemies the Selgukians had. Togrul the last of them being taken in Battle by Tacash the Father of Sultan Mohammed, was hang'd by him. It was in abhorrence of this Ingratitude, among other Reasons, that the Chalifs would never admit the Shahs of Chowarazm to the Enjoyment of those Honours in Bagdad which the Selgukians possessed.

*The*



Calif of  
Bagdad  
writes to  
him to in-  
vade the  
Sultan.

induce him to declare War against Sultan *Mahamet* \*, he never would do it; infomuch that for a long time there was so great a Harmony between the two Empires, that one might have carry'd Gold or Silver in his Hands from one Empire to the other without any Hazard: and this Union continued till such time as *Gagir Chan*, by the Order of Sultan *Mahamet*, caused the Embassadors and Merchants, *Zingis Chan's* Subjects, to be massacred; which happen'd after this manner.

Mogulls no  
Towns or  
Castles.

Zingis  
Chan  
settles a  
Trade be-  
tween the  
two Em-  
pires.

The *Mogulls*, who were properly the Subjects of *Zingis Chan*, have neither Towns nor Castles, being accustom'd to live in wooden Hutts, which they remove from Place to Place as they see proper; and in regard the Merchants of the neighbouring Countries could gain considerably by them, when they could go there with safety, they resorted from all Parts with great Quantities of Merchandizes into the Dominions of *Zingis Chan*; because on account of the good Order which he had establish'd there, they could carry on their Traffick with perfect Security. Those of the Country of *Ma-urennar*, who were under the Dependence of Sultan *Mahamet*, being inform'd of it, went thither also

[\* The Embassador sent by the Chalif to *Zingis Chan*, being to pass thro' Sultan Mohammed's Dominions; therefore to prevent the Consequence of having his Letters seized, the Chalif order'd the Envoy's Head to be shaven, and his Credentials impress'd upon it with Needles, after the Manner that the Arms of Pilgrims are mark'd at Jerusalem, and so sent him towards the Tatar Court: Where having deliver'd his Message, and being demanded to shew his Authority, he desired his Head might be shaven, and said it would then appear.

Histæus, Prince of Miletus, when at the Court of Darius, King of Persia, made use of the same Device, to stir up Aristagoras his Son-in-Law to a Revolt; as we find in the Fifth Book of Herodotus.]

with



with abundance of valuable Merchandizes. Up-<sup>Extortion</sup>  
on their arrival, *Zingis Chan* having sent for <sup>of the</sup>  
some of them, with the best of their Goods, <sup>Merchants</sup>  
they set so exorbitant a Price upon them, that <sup>of Mawa-</sup>  
he was enrag'd; and having shewn them above <sup>provokes</sup>  
a thousand Chests with all sorts of valuable Com- <sup>Zingis</sup>  
modities, you may see by this, says he, "That <sup>Chan.</sup>  
" it is not the first time that I have cheapen'd  
" such like Merchandizes; but since you durst  
" exact upon me with so much Assurance, I  
" intend to pay you in your kind;" and with-  
out more Ceremony, he made them take what  
they had, without paying them for any thing.  
After which, having sent for other Merchants  
of *Ma-urennar* with the same sorts of Merchan-  
dizes, he began in like manner to cheapen se-  
veral Parcels of them. But they, who were <sup>Zingis</sup>  
before inform'd of what had happen'd to their <sup>Chan</sup>  
Countrymen, said to the *Chan*, "We do not <sup>pleased</sup>  
" pretend to ask more for our Merchandizes <sup>with the</sup>  
" than they are worth; that if they are to your <sup>Conduct of</sup>  
" liking, you need only take them and give us <sup>other Mer-</sup>  
" what you think reasonable; that even if you <sup>chants.</sup>  
" have a mind to take them, and give us no-  
" thing for them, we shall nevertheless rest sa-  
" tisfy'd."

This Answer pleasing *Zingis Chan*, he not  
only order'd them to be paid double the Value  
of their Merchandizes, but also gave them free  
liberty to sell the rest of them in his Camp,  
without presenting the chief Men with the least  
Trifle. *Zingis Chan* perceiving that Trade <sup>Sends Em-</sup>  
might bring considerable Advantage to his Sub- <sup>bassadors</sup>  
jects, at the Departure of those Merchants, <sup>with his</sup>  
sent 450 Merchants of his own Subjects with <sup>Merchants</sup>  
them, to go and trade in the Sultan's Domini- <sup>into Sultan</sup>  
ons: he order'd these Merchants to be accom- <sup>Moham-</sup>  
pany'd by three Officers of his Court, called, <sup>med's Do-</sup>  
<sup>minions.</sup>



1. *Mahamet* of *Charass'm*, 2. *Ali Chodsa* of *Buchara*, and 3. *Jussuf* of *Otrar*, whom he sent in Quality of Embassadors to Sultan *Mahamet Shab* of *Charass'm*; and on this Occasion he wrote to him a very obliging Letter, importing, "That he had used his Merchants  
 " so well during their Stay in his Dominions,  
 " that he believ'd he might with reason flatter  
 " himself that he would do the same with re-  
 " gard to his Subjects which went to traffick in  
 " his Empire; that he gave him his Word he  
 " would always act the Part of a good Father,  
 " and reckon'd he would on his side continue  
 " to be a good Son to him; which being per-  
 " form'd by both Parties, it could not choose  
 " but contribute powerfully to the aggrandizing  
 " of their Empires, and the Augmentation of  
 " their common Glory."

Arrive at  
Otrar.

Gagir  
Chan, Go-  
vernor of  
Otrar.

These Embassadors being arriv'd at the Town of *Otrar*, went to salute the Governor of that Town, who was Cousin-Germain to Sultan *Mahamet's* Mother. He formerly went by the Name of *Inallzik*, but the Sultan had conferr'd on him the Name of *Gagir Chan*; the Merchants on their Part paid him also their Compliments, and offer'd him some Presents: but there happen'd to be among them a Merchant, who having been formerly an intimate Friend of *Gagir Chan's*, thought fit, without any Design, to call him by his former Name *Inallzik* \*. *Gagir Chan* was so sensibly provok'd with that Familiarity, that without more ado he caused the Embassadors as well as the Merchants to be arrested, and dispatch'd a Courier to the Sultan to inform him, that there were arriv'd at *Otrar* Strangers, who pretended some of them to be Embassadors, and others Merchants; but that having strong Reasons to suspect them of

Arrests the  
Embassa-  
dors and  
Mer-  
chants.

some

\* See Pag. 32.



some ill Designs, he had caused them to be arrested, expecting his Orders. Whereupon the Sultan without taking any farther Information of the Matter, having order'd that they should be immediately put to death, *Gagir Chan* executed that Order *according to the Letter*, and confiscated all their Effects for the Sultan's Use. *Puts them to death by the Sultan's Order.*

Nevertheless one of the aforesaid Merchants having had the good Fortune to escape the Massacre, went and inform'd *Zingis Chan* of that villainous Action. At so unexpected a Piece of News, that Prince fell into an extreme Rage, and having forthwith given the necessary Orders for assembling his Troops, he sent to tell the Sultan, that seeing by an Action so odious to all Nations he had broken all the Engagements that were between them, he declar'd himself from that Instant his mortal Enemy, and that he would make a most rigorous War upon him. After which he detach'd his Son *Zuzi* with a good Body of the Army on the side of *Turkestan*, in order to dislodge the rest of the Friends of *Kutshluk* who were establish'd there. *Zingis Chan declares War against Sultan Mohamed.*

Sultan *Mahamet* as soon as he heard this Declaration of War from the Mouth of *Zingis Chan's* Envoy, assembled likewise all his Troops and march'd towards *Samarkant*, and from thence to *Chodsan*, to go meet *Zingis Chan*: but being inform'd at this last Place, that *Zuzi* the eldest Son of *Zingis Chan*, was marching from *Turkestan*, he chang'd his Design, and took the same Road with all his Army, in hopes that he would be able to give a good Account of this part of the Army of *Zingis Chan*. To that effect, having pursued his March by great Journeys till he arriv'd on the Frontiers of *Turkestan*, he turn'd off towards the River *Cabli*, in order to cut off *Zuzi's* Retreat: but arriving



Cabli and  
Camzi  
Rivers.

between the Rivers *Cabli* and *Camzi*, he found there a great Number of Men newly slain, and causing Search to be made among the dead Corps for any who discover'd some Signs of Life, they found by chance a Man, who tho' much wounded, was yet able to speak. Upon which the Sultan having demanded who it was had handled them so ill, he gave him to understand that it was *Zuzi*; who having encounter'd them the Day before, as they were going to join his Army, had kill'd part of them and carry'd the rest into slavery, returning the same way he came.

Sultan  
Moham-  
med over-  
takes *Zuzi*.

Upon this News the Sultan set forwards, and made such haste that he overtook him next Morning. *Zuzi* seeing the Enemy draw near, held Council with the Generals that accompany'd him, about what was to be done on this Occasion; and they were unanimously of Opinion that he should retire in good Order, seeing *Zingis Chan* had not order'd him to fight with the whole Army of the Sultan, and that he was not strong enough to undertake an Action of that Consequence without exposing himself to evident Danger. That supposing also the Sultan should pursue him in his Retreat, he could only do it by making small Detachments, against which they might easily defend themselves; and that if he did not pursue them they should proceed on their way in Peace. *Zuzi* alone was of Opinion contrary to this Advice, saying, "What will my Father and Brothers say if I return and fly in sight of the Enemy? it would upon all Accounts be better for us to stand our Ground, and fight bravely with the Enemy, than to be slain in flight: you have done your Duty in admonishing me of the Danger we are in, I am now



“ now going to do mine by trying to bring  
 “ you out of it with Honour.” After which, *Come to a Battle.*  
 having rang’d his Troops in order of Battle,  
 he led them chearfully to the Charge. In the  
 height of the Confusion, *Zuzi* pierc’d two or  
 three times thro’ the Ranks of the Enemy,  
 and having encounter’d Sultan *Mahamet*, gave  
 him several Strokes with his Sword, which the  
 other parry’d with his Buckler. The *Mogulls* a-  
 nimated by the Example of their Prince, did  
 Wonders that Day, and charg’d their Adversa-  
 ries with so much bravery, that notwithstanding  
 the great Superiority of Sultan *Mahamet*’s Ar-  
 my, it was upon the Point of flying, if the Sul-  
 tan perceiving that his Example was not suffi-  
 cient to revive the Courage of his Soldiers,  
 had not called out to them to stand their  
 Ground only for a few Minutes, seeing that the  
 Night which advanced a-pace would be sure to  
 put an end to the Conflict. That Resolution  
 saved him the Shame of seeing his whole Army  
 fly before a small Part of that of the *Mogulls*.

Night having soon after separated the Com- *Night*  
 batants, *Zuzi*, who thought he might be con- *parts*  
 tent with the Honour which he had acquir’d *them, and*  
 that Day, caused great Fires to be lighted in *both Ar-*  
 several Places of his Camp, and retir’d without *mies re-*  
 Noise. Next Day the Enemy imagining that *turn.*  
 he still waited for them on the Field of Battle,  
 march’d out again to renew the Fight: but  
 finding he had decamp’d, they retir’d likewise  
 on their side. *Zuzi* having rejoin’d his Fa-  
 ther with the Troops which were under his  
 Command, afforded him much Joy by the Rela-  
 tion of this Battle: and *Zingis Chan*, to let him  
 see how well pleased he was with the Conduct  
 he had shewn on this Occasion, loaded him with  
 Praises and Presents.

Mean



Sultan  
Moham-  
med re-  
turns to  
his Capi-  
tal.

Kills She-  
ich Mage-  
deddin in  
his De-  
bauch.

Chalif of  
Bagdad  
deposed by  
Sultan  
Moham-  
med.

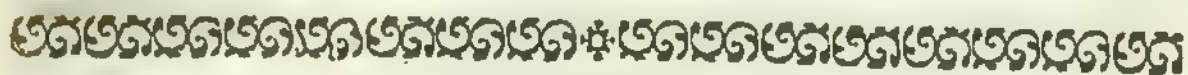
Mean while Sultan *Mahamet*, who had learned by this Sample, that he had to do with rough Gamesters, distributed his Troops into the Garisons, saying, "If *Zingis Chan* has a Desire to make War upon me, he may come and look for me." After which returning to his usual Residence, he gave himself up to Debauchery; and on this Occasion, one Day getting drunk, he caus'd to be massacred one *Sheich Magededien Bayadi*, whom he suspected of having a scandalous Commerce with his Mother *Turcan Chatun*; for which being much troubled the next Day when he had slept off his Wine, because that *Sheich* pass'd for a holy Man, and of an unblamable Life, he sent a great Bason full of Gold and Jewels to another holy Man called *Sheich Nasrudien*, praying him to grant him pardon for that Murder. But the Saint having refus'd this Present, let him know in Answer that it was not in his Power to pardon him that Crime; that with Gold and Jewels, the Life of so holy a Man, more precious in the Eyes of God than his own, and that of many thousands of other Men, was not to be purchas'd; that therefore he return'd him all again, and left the Vengeance to God.

Sultan *Mahamet* did also very ill in deposing the Calif of *Bagdat*, called *Nasirdien Abulajar\**, and

\* 'Tis the same Chalif of which our Author speaks, Page 99, who endeavoured to draw *Zingis Chan* to make War on Sultan *Mahomet Shah* of *Charass'm*: That Design not taking effect, and Sultan *Mahomet* being informed of it, he caused a general Assembly to be held of all the Men of the Law throughout *Persia* and the neighbouring States, who professed the Worship of *Mahomet*; in which, upon the Complaints of that Prince, that the Chalif instead of labouring to propagate the true Faith, entertained secret Intelligence with Infidels against the Interest of the Musulmans, the Chalif was deposed in form, and another to whom our Author gives the



and putting in his Place one *Atilmulk* of the Tribe of *Termiskifegid*; without mentioning his giving Credit so easily to the false Report of *Gagir Chan*, and which was the Cause of his ordering the Embassadors and Merchants of *Zingis Chan* to be massacred, which cost him his Crown and his Life, as we shall soon find. Many other bad Actions of the Sultan might be alledged here, but we will confine our selves at present to those we have mention'd.



C H A P. XIV.

*Of the Expedition of Zingis Chan into the Great Bucharìa.*

IN the Year 615, *Zingis Chan* took the Field *An. Dom.* with a powerful Army, in order to pe- <sup>1218.</sup> netrate into the *Great Bucharìa*: In his March, *Arslan-Chan* of the *Carliks*, *Idikut Chan* of the *Vigurs*, who inhabited the Country of *Bishbalik*, and *Saknak*, Lord of the Country of *Bishbalik*, *Amalik*, came and joined him with all their For- <sup>perhaps</sup> ces: He march'd at first on the side of the <sup>Almaleg.</sup> Town of *Otrar*, but understanding that Sultan

*the Name of Atilmulk put in his Place, at the Recommendation of Sultan Mahomet: after which that Prince immediately set about executing the Decree of that Assembly, and to that effect march'd at the Head of a powerful Army towards Bagdat, which was the Residence of the Chalifs. But as the Season was already far advanced when he took the Field, all he did there was to ruin his Army, and the War which afterwards followed between him and Zingis Chan, served to secure the Chalif against the Ill-will of Sultan Mahomet.*

[*The Chalif is much censured by the Mohammedan Doctors, for endeavouring to stir up an Infidel Prince, to destroy a Mohammedan one.*]

*Mahamet*



Nagan.

Chogend.

Etymology  
of Bucha-  
ria.Sarnuc  
besieged.Surrender-  
ed.Sarnuc,  
called  
Kutluk-  
ablik.

*Mahamet* had left the open Country to him, and had distributed his Army into the Places of Strength, he detach'd his two Sons *Ugadai Chan* and *Zagatai* with a good Body of the Army to lay Siege to *Otrar*, and his Son *Zuzi* with another Part towards the Town of *Nadsan*. He also order'd two of his Generals, one called *Alan Noyan*, the other *Suktu-buka*, with 50000 Men towards *Pharnacant* and *Chodsan*; reserv- ing with himself the Gros of his Army, with which he continued his March, accompany'd with his Son *Taulai*, towards the *Great Buchar*ia.

It is to be observ'd here, that the word *Buchar*, signifies, in the *Mogull* Language, a learned Man; because all those who have a mind to be instructed in the Languages and Sciences go in- to *Buchar*ia. The first Town that *Zingis Chan* found in his Passage was *Sarnuc*, under the Walls of which he encamp'd, with so terrible an Outcry on the Part of his Soldiers, that the Inhabitants in a Fright shut the Gates of the Town, and put themselves in a Posture of De- fence. But *Zingis Chan* sent one *Hadsip*, a very eloquent Man, into the Town, to let them know that the wisest Course they could take on that Occasion, was to open the Gates to him, because there was no likelihood of their being able to resist a Prince who had conquer'd so many Towns and Provinces: These Remon- strances having chang'd the Resolution of the Inhabitants of *Sarnuc*, they flock'd in Crouds out of the Town, loaded with Presents, to re- ceive *Zingis Chan*, and put themselves under his Obedience. *Zingis Chan* having receiv'd them very graciously, treated them with all imaginable Clemency, and chang'd the Name of their City, ordering that for the future it should be called *Kutluk-balik*. After which, ha-



ving chosen out all the young Men from among the Inhabitants for his Service in that Expedition, he permitted the old ones to return and dwell in the Town.

From thence he march'd to the Town of *Nur sur-Nur*; the Inhabitants of which, after having been *render'd* several times summon'd to surrender, resolv'd at last to submit and open their Gates to him: But *Zingis Chan*, to punish them for daring to form even a Thought of resisting him, order'd Publication to be made that the Inhabitants of the Town should set a-part the Cattle which they made use of in their necessary Affairs, as well as the Corn and other Pulse which they could not be without; which having executed off-hand, he gave all the rest for Pillage to the Soldiers. After which, he continued his March towards the Province of *Buchara*, and arriv'd the 1st of the Month of *Rebbi Achir*, in the Year 616, before the Town of *Buchara*, Capital of the *Great Bucharia*. *An. Dom. 1219.*

Sultan *Mahamet* had left in that Town a *Siege of Buchara*, very numerous Garison, under the Command of three General Officers, whose Names were *Kuk Chan*, *Siuntz Chan* and *Kutshluk Chan*. At the Approach of *Zingis Chan* these three Generals made a Sally, in the Night, upon the *Mogulls* with all the Garison, which consisted of 20000 Men; but being repulsed with great Loss, their Courage failed them, and they pass'd out of the Town by the opposite Gate with their Families, and almost all their Soldiery, in order to retire into the Towns of the Country *The Generals and Garison fly*. of *Charass'm*, in hopes the Darkness of the Night would conceal their Retreat from the *Mogulls*; but their Design having been discovered, *Zingis Chan* detached a great Body of Horse in pursuit of them, which overtaking them



Buchara  
surrendered.

Zingis  
Chan en-  
ters the  
great  
Moske on  
Horseback.

Throws  
the Alco-  
ran under  
his Horses  
Feet.

Speech  
to the  
Moham-  
medan In-  
habitants.

them on the Banks of the River *Amu*, cut them almost all to pieces. In the mean time the Inhabitants of *Buchara* seeing themselves, by the Retreat of the Garison, left at the Discretion of the Enemy, all the religious and learned Men went out of the Town next Morning, accompanied by the most considerable Citizens, and presented the Keys of their City to *Zingis Chan*. That Prince entring on Horseback into the great Moske of the City, asked merrily, if that was the Sultan's Palace. Upon his being answered, that it was the House of God, he lighted off his Horse, and giving it the principal of the Magistrates and learned Men, who accompanied him in, to hold, he mounted the Gallery where the Mullhas, or Priests, usually place themselves; and taking up the *Alcoran*, threw it under the Feet of his Horses; which one of the chief Inhabitants of the Town, of *Mahomet's* Race, called *Seigit*, perceiving, he said, What a great Sin that is? But another holy Man made answer, Hold your Tongue; 'tis a Punishment which God in his Anger has sent upon us. As soon as *Zingis Chan* had seated himself in the Gallery, his Soldiers began to drink and eat in the very Middle of the Moske, without the least regard to the Holiness of the Place. At his going out of the Moske, he sent to the Place where the Inhabitants used to assemble on great Festivals, and placing himself again in the Gallery appointed for the Priests, he ordered all those of the *Mahometan* Worship to meet together; and representing to them the perfidious Behaviour of their Sultan towards him, in causing his Merchants and Embassadors to be assassinated, he added, That God had sent him to revenge that Perfidiousness upon them: That for



for their Goods which were to be found in the Town, his Soldiers should not meddle with them; but for those which they had hidden, they must give them up of their own Accord into his Hands; or, That he knew the way of coming at them by force of Torments. Whereupon *They deliver up their Goods.* they carried to the Officers which he had commissioned for that Purpose, as well all their Goods which they had buried, as what they kept in their Houses; which seemed to satisfy him for that time: But understanding, afterwards, that many of the Sultan's Soldiers still remained hid in the Town, he ordered it to be set on fire, *Bochara burnt to the Ground.* which intirely consumed the whole Town, almost all the Houses of which were built of Wood; insomuch that there remained nothing of that great City but the Palace of the Sultan, built of Stone which they called *Ark*, and some few of the private Houses which were built with Brick. *Zingis Chan*, having afterwards sent to search all the Houses which remained standing, and especially the Palace of the Sultan, caused all the Soldiers that were there found hid to be put to the Sword. The City of *Bochara* continued some Years in this Condition, until *Zingis Chan* at last ordered it to be rebuilt a little before his death. *Rebuilt by Zingis Chan.*

Sultan *Mahamet* had left *Gagir Chan* with *Otrar* being 50000 Men near the Town of *Otrar*, to oppose *Zingis Chan* if he turned on that side: And understanding afterwards that he had detached two of his Sons to reduce that Town, he sent a farther Reinforcement of 10000 Men, under the Command of one of the Lords of his Court, called *Caraza-badsip*. With these 60000 Men *Gagir Chan* shut himself up in the Town, and made all the necessary Preparations for a vigorous Resistance. In the mean time, the Sons of *Zingis Chan*



*Chan* arriving before *Otrar*, immediately began the Siege with all possible Vigor, and omitted nothing which might hasten the Conquest of it. After the Siege had continued five Months, *Caraza-badsip* told *Gagir Chan* it was time to think of capitulating, seeing it was impossible to hold out much longer against the Efforts of the Besiegers; and that it was to be feared, if they deferred a Surrender too long, the Enemy would not then hearken to any Agreement. But *Gagir Chan*, who was conscious to himself of being the only Cause of that unfortunate War, absolutely rejected that Proposal, resolving to defend himself to the last Extremity. *Caraza-badsip* finding he had made himself liable to Suspicion by this Step he had taken, in the night time caused the Gate called *Darvassey-Sofi*, of which he had the Guard, to be opened; and retired with the 10000 Men under his Command into the Quarters of the Sons of *Zingis Chan*. But the Princes, upon reflection that a Man who was capable of betraying his natural Lord, would make no Scruple of betraying them also upon occasion, ordered him to be slain with all his Men. After which they entred into the Town by the same Gate thro' which the others went out.

*Otrar be-  
tray'd.*

*The Trai-  
tor justly  
rewarded.*

*Gagir Chan* seeing the Town taken retired with 20000 Men into the Castle: All the rest of the Garison, having been driven out of the Town, was put to the Sword. *Gagir Chan* finding the Castle too little for such a number of Men, endeavoured to free himself by continual Sallies which he made upon the Enemy, which incommoded them extreamly for some time; but the Princes redoubling their Efforts as the Defence of the Besieged became more obstinate, took the Castle at last with Sword in Hand,

*Gagir  
Chan with  
20000  
Men flies to  
the Castle.*

*Castle ta-  
ken, and  
the Gari-  
son put to  
the Sword.*



Hand, and cut the Throats of all the Garison. *Gagir Chan* seeing all was lost, retired with two Men into his Apartment; and defended himself there desperately. Those two Men also being killed, and *Gagir Chan* finding himself in want of Arrows to shoot at those who strove to get up to the Place where he was, still defended himself a long time with great Stones, which his Wife brought him for that purpose; but having been at last taken Prisoner, he was brought before the Princes, who ordered him to be loaded with Chains, and shut up in a close Prison, till *Zingis Chan* should give Orders how he should be disposed of. After this Expedition, the Princes understanding that their Father had seized the Town and Province of *Buchara*, they marched towards that side to go join him with their Troops, and being arrived at a Place called *Kuk-serai*, they caused *Gagir Chan* to be put to Death, pursuant to the Orders they had received from *Zingis Chan*.

*Zuzi Chan*, having left his Father's Army, marched towards *Signac*. As soon as he was arrived before that Town, he sent a Man of the *Mahometan* Profession, called *Affan-Hadsi*, to summon the Inhabitants to surrender, with a Promise of being well treated; but they put to death this Envoy, instead of receiving his Proposals. *Zuzi*, upon the News of this Assassination, fell into a violent Passion, and never ceased assaulting the Town till he had taken it. He caused the Throats of above 10000 of the Inhabitants of *Signac* to be cut upon this Occasion, to revenge the Death of his Envoy; and having conferred the Command of that Place on the Son of the aforesaid *Affan-Hadsi*, whom those of *Signac* had slain, he marched towards *Usgan*.



Uskant  
surren-  
ders.

Astakh re-  
sists.

Great  
Slaughter.

Nadsan or  
Nagan re-  
sists.

Taken.

Great  
Slaughter.

Farnacant  
and Cho-  
gand.

The Inhabitants of that Town, made wise by what happened to those of *Signac*, came out to meet him with magnificent Presents, and delivered up their Town to him; whereupon he forbid his Soldiers under severe Penalties to offer them the least Insult, or take any thing that belonged to them. From thence he marched towards the Town of *Astakh*, which daring to defend it self, *Zuzi*, after taking it, caused a great number of the Inhabitants to be put to the Sword. The Governor of the Town of *Nadsan* seeing it was his Turn next, abandoned the Place in time, and retired with his Garison towards the Towns of the Country of *Charafsm*; but the Inhabitants of *Nadsan* lost not their Courage for all that, refusing to enter into Capitulation with the *Mogulls*; they were also very near killing the Envoy which *Zuzi* sent to summon them to surrender: This Conduct having constrained him to apply Force, he ordered the Town to be attacked with all possible Vigor, and having carried it, caused to be put to death all those who had any Hand in the Violence offered to his Envoy; the rest of the Inhabitants were ordered to be driven out of the Town, after he had caused them to be spoiled of all they had. After which he placed there a good Garison, under the Command of one of his Officers named *Ali Chodsa Gezdivony*.

I have observed above, That *Zingis Chan* had detached two General Officers, named *Alan-Noyan* and *Suktu-Buka*, with 50000 Men, towards the Cities of *Pharnacant* and *Chodsan*. The first of these Places was taken after a Siege of three Days, and the two Generals of *Zingis Chan*, after putting the Garison to the Sword, made all the Inhabitants Captives, and went  
and



and laid Siege to the Town of *Chodsan*. The Governor of that Town, call'd *Timur-Malik*, was reputed a Man of great Courage; and, that he might not be unlike himself on this Occasion, he omitted nothing which might serve for the Defence of the Town.

The City of *Chodsan* is situate upon the side of a River, which forms an Isle right before the Town; and in regard there was at that time a Castle extremely strong upon that Isle, *Timur-Malik* posted himself there with 1000 choice Men; and having provided four covered Boats with Port-holes on both sides, they served him to shoot continually upon the *Mogull's* Quarters, which incommoded them dreadfully. The two Generals of *Zingis Chan* having taken a View of the Town, and finding it in so good a Posture of Defence, were mightily puzzled how with Honour to get off an Enterprize which appeared to them so difficult. At last, after they had well considered the Situation and Condition of the Place, they determined to employ that number of captive Inhabitants of *Pharnacant* to throw Stones into the River, in order to form a Jettee which might be of Use in attacking the Fort of the Isle. The Governor, on the other hand, opposed this Enterprize by all sorts of Contrivances, and strove to dispute with the *Mogulls* the Passage of the River as long as possibly he could; but finding, in spite of all his Efforts, that the Bank was finished, he got into the Boats with all his Men, and let himself be driven by the Current of the River.

The two *Mogull* Generals being apprized of his Retreat, ordered him to be pursued by a great Detachment of their Troops, who contented themselves with observing his Motions

*The brave  
Retreat of  
Timur-  
Malik.*



*Cuts the  
Chain at  
Farna-  
cant.*

*Escapes  
from his  
Pursuers.*

*Returns  
and sur-  
prizes Far-  
nakant.*

*Sultan  
Moham-  
med sends  
110000  
Men to re-  
inforce  
Samar-  
kant.*

from the Banks of the River, imagining he could not escape them, a Chain having been drawn a-cross the River at *Pharnacant*: But *Timur-Malik* being arrived there, found means to cut the Chain, and pass safely. Nevertheless, at length coming to a Place where the River was extremely narrow and shallow, he was obliged to quit his Boats, and try to escape by Land. But the *Mogulls* easily coming up with him, because they were on Horseback and *Timur-Malik's* Men on Foot, they slew all his Followers; so that with much ado he escaped singly out of their Hands. On this Occasion *Timur-Malik* seeing himself hotly pursued by three *Mogulls*, and having but three Arrows left, of which only two were pointed with Iron, he let fly the third which had no Point at all, against the *Mogull* who pressed him most, and having wounded him in the Eye, his Companions were so scared at it that they all three stopp'd, and let him go his way. Coming in this manner alone to a neighbouring Town, where there was a Garison of the Troops of Sultan *Mahamet*, he gathered in haste a small Body of Men, and went and surprized *Pharnacant*; and having cut the Throats of the *Mogulls* who were there in Garison, he returned towards his Master Sultan *Mahamet*, who amply rewarded his Fidelity, and gave him leave to go pass the remainder of his Days quietly in the Town of *Sham*.

The two Generals of *Zingis Chan* having happily ended that Expedition, went also to rejoin their Master. In the mean time Sultan *Mahamet* having had Advice, That *Zingis Chan* prepared to lay Siege to the Town of *Samarkant*, sent thither an Army of 110000 Men, with a great number of Elephants, under the Command



mand of 30 Generals, tho there were already an infinite number of People in the City. On the Arrival of so powerful a Reinforcement, they drew round the Town a broad Ditch, which they dug till they came to Water, and caused the Troops to encamp behind this Ditch, which served them for an Intrenchment. *Zingis Chan* having been rejoined in his March from *Bucharia* towards *Samarkant* by his Sons and Generals, who had all successfully executed the Commissions with which they had been charged, learned on the Road, that the Enemy had assembled very considerable Forces at *Samarkant*, and had very strongly fortified that Town; but that did not hinder him from pursuing his March. Upon his Approach the Enemy made a furious Sally upon him; but having been driven back to the City after a very bloody Action, he went and encamped the next Day under the Walls of the Town; and finding the Enemy had no desire to engage with him without their Walls, he gave a general Assault which lasted from Morning till Evening, without being able to gain an Inch of Ground from the Enemy; but the Night following, the Head of the Law and the Cady of the City, who were fallen out with the Commanders of the Troops of Sultan *Mahamet*, having submitted themselves to *Zingis Chan*, and been well received by him, caused one of the Gates of the City to be opened to him, which were not accustomed to be opened but on great Festival Days, of which they had the Keys in their keeping; and the *Mogulls* having entred by that Gate, went immediately and seized the other Gates, to let the whole Army into the Town. *Zingis Chan*, in this manner becoming Master of *Samarkant*, caused all the Troops

*Samarkant besieged.*

*Betray'd to the Mogulls.*



Garison  
put to the  
Sword,  
and Town  
pillaged.

An. Dom.  
1219.

which composed the Garison to be put to the Sword, *Aloub Chan* being the only Person who had the good Fortune, with 1000 Men, to escape this Massacre. After this prosperous Event he caused the Town to be pillaged, and made a Present to his Generals of 30000 of the Inhabitants with their Wives and Children. After which he pardoned the rest, whom he permitted to live in the City as before, paying him a Tribute of 300000 Dixars of Gold yearly. All this happened in the Year 616.



### C H A P. XV.

*Of the Expedition of the three Sons of Zingis Chan into the Country of Charass'm, and of the Reduction of many Towns on the Frontiers of the Indies under the Obedience of that Prince.*

Mogulls  
invade  
Chowara-  
razm.

Urgens at  
that time  
the Capi-  
tal, called  
also Cho-  
warazm.

AFTER the Conquest of the Great *Buchar*, and the taking of *Samarkant*, *Zingis Chan* sent his three Sons, *Zuzi*, *Ugadai*, and *Zagatai*, with a numerous Army towards the Capital of the Country of *Charass'm*, where four of the principal Lords of Sultan *Mahatal*'s Court, viz. *Chamar*, *Mogull*, *Hadsp*, and *Phiriduni Geri* had shut themselves up: but *Chamar*, as being a near Relation of the Sultan's, commanded in chief, and having with him a good Body of Troops for the Defence of the Town, he resolv'd to sell it very dear to the *Mogulls* in case they came to attack it. Notwithstanding as he had no News of their March, and believ'd them still at a great distance, he had given the Inhabitants leave to let their Cattle graze in the Meadows near the Town, which gave the Vanguard of the *Mogulls*



*gulls* Army an Opportunity on their Arrival to surprize the greatest Part of them. The Town-folks, at the Sight of this, made a Sally upon the *Mogulls* with 10000 Men, as well Horse as Foot, and coming up with the Vanguard, which retir'd leisurely near a Garden belonging to the Town, they attack'd them briskly: but the *Mogulls*, who had placed a good Number of Troops in Ambuscade on both sides of that Garden, seeing the Enemy so far engaged as not to be able to get back, charg'd them so hotly in Front and in Rear, that scarce a hundred of them escaped. After which they march'd as far as the Suburbs of the City, where they put to the Sword all they found in Arms, and set Fire to it after they had sufficiently plunder'd it: Next Day the whole *Mogull* Army came before the City, and laid Siege to it in Form.

The three Sons of *Zingis Chan*, understand-<sup>Siege of</sup> ing that *Phiriduni Geri*, one of the afore men-<sup>the Capital</sup> tioned General Officers, had posted himself<sup>of Chow-</sup> with 5000 Men at one of the Gates of the Ci-<sup>arazm.</sup> ty, they gave him to understand, that if the Troops which compos'd the Garison would come to a Resolution to surrender the Town, they should be allowed the Liberty to retire with their Wives and Children wherever they pleased. But *Phiriduni Geri* having imparted this Proposal to *Chamar*, and the other Chiefs of the Garison, they absolutely refused it. The Siege having lasted seven Months, the *Mogulls* detach'd 3000 Men to turn the River \* *Dsayhun* <sup>Gayhun or</sup> away <sup>Gihun.</sup>

\* As our Author does not mention the Name of the Capital of the Country of Charas'm, which is spoken of in this Place, 'tis not amiss to observe, that what is said on this Occasion of the River *Dsayhun*, or *Amu*, which passes before  
the



away from the Town, in order to cut off their Water : but the Inhabitants having had timely Notice of it, sent against them a greater Body of Troops, who put to the Sword the 3000 *Mogulls* employ'd in that Work.

As the Diffension which happen'd among the three Sons of *Zingis Chan*, was the greatest Obstacle which hinder'd the good Success of the Siege, inasmuch as the one continually cross'd the Designs of the other : *Zingis Chan*, upon Advice thereof, order'd that for the future *Ugadai* should have the chief Command at that Siege; and he to merit the Confidence of his Father, having immediately order'd a general Assault to be given, took the City and set it on Fire; above 100000 Souls were put to the Sword in the first Fury of the Vanquishers: After which the rest of the Inhabitants were order'd to go out of the Town, and with their Wives and Children were condemn'd to Slavery. The Number of which was found to be so great, that in the Distribution which *Ugadai* caused to be made of them among the Soldiers of his Army, each Soldier had twenty four to his Share. They tell you, that on this Occasion *Ugadai* sent to tell a holy Man, named

Capital  
taken and  
fired.  
Great  
Slaughter.

Bravery of  
Sheich  
Hafreti-  
cubru.

*Sheich Hafreti-cubru*, who was in the City, that unless he came out and put himself under his Protection, it would be impossible to hinder him from perishing with the other Inhabitants of the Town; but that the *Sheich* let him know in Answer, that he was bound to follow the

*the Town, shews plainly that 'tis the Town of Urgens which is meant, because that River at that time run by the Walls of that City; and 'tis but within these eighty Years that it has taken another Course, as we have observed in the Description of that Town, Part II. [This would be no convincing Reason, if we did not know by other Authorities that Urgens was then the Capital, because it was not the only Town the Gihun run before.]*

Fate



Fate of the Town, by Ties too strong to be so easily broken; insomuch that he perish'd with the rest, after he had defended himself with the utmost Bravery.

In the mean time *Zingis Chan*, who staid all the Spring after the Conquest of *Samarkant* in his Quarters about that City, march'd toward *Nachshap* at the same time that he had sent his three Sons towards the Capital of the Country of *Charass'm*, and having made himself Master of that Town without meeting the least Resistance, he march'd from thence to the Town of *Termis*, which put it self in a Posture of Defence; but being taken by Assault, all the Inhabitants were put to the Sword, except an old Woman who offer'd a great Pearl to save her Life: But being ask'd where she had that Pearl, and confessing she had swallow'd it, they immediately rip'd open her Belly, and finding the Pearl there, the *Mogulls* rip'd the Bellies of all the other dead Bodies, imagining they would likewise find Jewels.

From thence *Zingis Chan* led his Army before the City of *Balck*, which was at that time so large, that there were reckon'd to be in it 1200 great Mosks, besides small Chapels, and 200 publick Baths for the foreign Merchants and other Strangers. Upon his Approach the Town offer'd to capitulate, but *Zingis Chan* would not consent to it; being of Opinion, that while *Sultan Mahamet* lived, he could not depend upon the Inhabitants of the Town, and for that Reason he chose rather to take it by Force, to the End he might dispose of the Fate of the Inhabitants at his Pleasure; and in regard the Town was none of the strongest, he took it with ease by a general Assault: After which he put all the Inhabitants to the Sword, and levell'd the Walls of the Town with the Foundations.

After

*Nachshap taken by Zingis Chan.*

*Termed taken by Assault, and the Inhabitants put to the Sword.*

*Balck Besieged.*

*Offers of a Surrender refused by Zingis Chan.*

*Balck destroyed.*



After this he sent his Son *Taulai*, accom-  
pany'd with many Officers of Merit, with a nu-  
merous Army towards the Town of *Chorassan*,  
and after he had subdued all the other Towns  
in those Quarters, he went in Person to lay Siege  
to that of *Tallchan*; which being a Town ex-  
tremely strong by its advantageous Situation,  
defended it self above seven Months very vigo-  
rously. In the mean time *Taulai* having taken  
*Chorassan*, with several other Towns therea-  
bouts, return'd and join'd his Father before  
*Tallchan*; which putting him in a Condition to  
make a general Attack, the Town was taken  
at last, and all put to the Sword. The Town  
of *Anderab* having been in like manner taken  
after the Reduction of *Tallchan*, was treated  
much after the same manner; from thence he  
went and besieged *Bamijan*, which defended it  
self with much Obstinacy. Among several other  
Persons of Distinction, who were kill'd at this  
Siege, there having been a Son of *Zagatai's*,  
whom *Zingis Chan* lov'd much, it threw him  
into such a Rage that he instantly order'd a ge-  
neral Assault to be given to the Town; and ha-  
ving taken it by that means, he caus'd them all  
to be slain without excepting one Person, and  
afterwards raz'd it to the Ground; ordering the  
Place where that Town was situated for the time  
to come to be called *Maubalik*, which in the  
*Mogull* Language signifies *an unlucky Town*.

*Bamian*  
called  
*Maubalik*

## C H A P. XVI.

*Of some Actions of Sultan Dfalaludin,  
Son of Sultan Mahamet.*

**Z**ingis Chan before he decamp'd from about  
the Town of *Samarkant*, detatch'd *Zena*  
*Noyan*, *Suday Bayadur*, and *Togazar Kantaret*,  
three



three of his most faithful Generals with 30000 Horse, in Search of Sultan *Mahamet*, who had pass'd the River *Amu* to retire farther within *Persia*. After several Marches and Counter-marches, these three Generals of the *Mogulls* arriving before the Town of *Herat*, *Sultan-Chan-Malik*\*, who commanded there, sent to tell them, that he was a Servant of *Zingis Chan*, and that he had nothing to dispute with them: Whereupon *Zena Noyan* and *Suday Bayadur* continued their March in quest of Sultan *Mahamet*; but *Togazar Kantaret*, being of Opinion that the fair words of Enemies were not to be confided in, gave an Assault to the Town. This Enterprize cost him very dear, for not only his Men were repuls'd with much Loss, but he was also himself wounded with an Arrow in the Head, of which he died immediately. To complete his Joy, Sultan *Chan-Malik* learn'd shortly after, that Sultan *Dsalaludin*, the Son of Sultan *Mahamet*, was arriv'd at the City of *Gasmien*; whereupon he sent him word, that if he was willing, he would go join him with all the Troops he could gather, in order to give the *Mogulls* Battle.

*Herat*

*Gasnehen.*  
*Gasna.*

*Zingis Chan* had almost at the same time detach'd one of his principal Officers, called *Ugar*, surnamed *Kalshan*; which signifies in the *Mogull* Language, a pleasant Companion, with four other Generals, *Shangi*, *Kutuktu Noyan*, *Tabazik*, and *Malkaw*, at the Head of 30000 Men, to cut off the Communication between *Gasmien*, *Sagil* and *Cabul*, and the rest of the Dominions of Sultan *Mahamet*. These Generals of the *Mogulls* thought it proper to divide their Detachments into different Bodies, thereby to be in a better Condition to watch the Motions of the Enemy in those Quarters. *Kutuktu Noyan*, who with a Party of those Troops

[\* *Three great Titles united in one Name.*]

was



was advanced towards *Herat*, understood by the way that Sultan *Chan-Malik* had left *Herat*, with a Body of Troops, in order to join Sultan *Djalaludin*, and that he was encamp'd not far from him, upon which he resolv'd to go and attack him early next Morning; but Sultan *Chan-Malik* getting Intelligence in the Night, that there were *Mogull* Troops in the Neighbourhood of his Camp, decamp'd immediately and went to join Sultan *Djalaludin*.

Sagill. *Tabazik* and *Malkaw* on their side, had advanced with so little Noise to the Town of *Sagill*, that it was very near being surpriz'd by them, in regard the Inhabitants believing the *Mogulls* yet at a great Distance from their Walls, took no care to send out for Intelligence. The *Mogull* Generals having miss'd so fair a Hit, be-

Sagill  
besieged.

Siege raised  
by Sultan  
Gelal-al-  
din.

sieged the Town in Form, and employ'd all their Efforts to constrain it to capitulate; but Sultan *Djalaludin* being reinforc'd by the Troops which Sultan *Chan-Malik* had brought him, fell upon them so unexpectedly, that he obliged them to fly, and go join *Kutuktu Noyan*, after they had lost above 1000 Men in that Encounter. Not satisfy'd with this first Advantage, he pursued *Kutuktu Noyan*, and never ceased provoking him, till he obliged him to make a Stand and come to a Battle with him. The *Mogulls* seeing no way left to avoid the Battle, prepar'd themselves for it with all the Resolution imaginable; and Sultan *Djalaludin* on his side, having trusted the Left Wing of his Army to the Conduct of Sultan *Chan-Malik*, and the Right to one of his Father's old Generals, named *Sephudin Malik*, put himself in the Center, and in this Order charg'd the *Mogulls* with so much Vigor, that after a very obstinate Fight, which lasted from Morning till almost Evening, they were at last constrain'd to fly, and



and leave the most Part of their Dead on the Field of Battle.

*Kutuktu Noyan*, in this Battle, made use of a *Stratagem* which had like to have given him <sup>of Kutuk-</sup> the Victory; for having order'd a trusty Officer <sup>tu Noyan</sup> to get all the Felt Bonnets and Clokes that were in the Camp to be stuff'd with Straw, and to range them a little behind upon the Horses and Camels of the Baggage, as a kind of second Line; that Officer executed his Orders so dextrously, that the Enemy believing it to be a Reinforcement which came from the *Mogulls*, were seiz'd with Fear, and had shamefully fled, if Sultan *Dsalaludin*, suspecting it a Trick of *Kutuktu Noyan*, had not animated them by his Example and Speeches, assuring them that it was no more than a Stratagem of the *Mogulls* to frighten them; which having rous'd their <sup>Mogulls</sup> Courage, they fell a-fresh upon the *Mogulls* <sup>defeated</sup> with so much Impetuosity, that only a very <sup>with great</sup> few escaped, besides the three General Officers. <sup>Slaughter.</sup>

*Zingis Chan* hearing the News of this Disaster was much incens'd, and prepar'd to march immediately on that side with all his Forces. In the mean time Sultan *Dsalaludin*, before he turn'd back, divided the Spoil among his Troops upon the Field of Battle: upon which Occasion <sup>Quarrel</sup> a Quarrel happen'd between Sultan *Chan-Malik*, <sup>between</sup> and *Sepbudin Malik*, about a Horse, which went <sup>Sultan</sup> so far that Sultan *Chan-Malik* gave *Sepbudin Ma-* <sup>Gelal-al-</sup> *lik* a Lash in the Face with his Whip. *Sepbudin* <sup>General's</sup> did not fail to complain to Sultan *Dsalaludin* of this Insult; but finding no hopes of obtaining such a Reparation as would satisfy him, he quitted that Prince in the Night with all those of the Tribe of *Kanklis*, which were under his Command, and retir'd into the Mountains of *Kir-*



*Kirman.* Sultan *Chan-Malik*, on the other hand, return'd soon after to his Government of *Herat*.

River In-  
dus.  
Gafna  
surrenders  
to Zingis  
Chan.

Zingis  
Chan  
overtakes  
Gelal-al-  
din, at  
the Indus.

Battle at  
the River  
Indus.

Gelal-al-din  
passes the  
Indus on  
Horseback.

Sultan *Dsalaludin*, upon Tidings that *Zingis Chan* was coming upon him with all his Forces, went and gained the River of *Sirr-Indi*; but *Zingis Chan* made no Delay in following, and appear'd so unexpectedly before the Gates of *Gasmien*, that the Inhabitants lost their Courage, and let him enter their Town without any Resistance. That Prince was content for that time to place a Governor there; and being inform'd by the Inhabitants of *Gasmien*, that it was but fifteen days since Sultan *Dsalaludin* decamp'd from before their Town, he continued to pursue him by great Marches, endeavouring to come up with him before he could pass the River; and arriving at length near that Prince's Camp, he went in the Night and posted himself between the River and him, in order effectually to cut off the Passage of it. Sultan *Dsalaludin* perceiving at Day-break that he was surrounded on all sides by the *Mogull* Troops, resolved to fight, tho there was no Proportion between his Handful of an Army and the great Forces of the *Mogulls*.

Before the Engagement, *Zingis Chan* order'd two of the bravest Officers of his Army, named *Cugur Kalsban*, and *Kotur Kalsban*, to observe as much as possible the Person of Sultan *Dsalaludin*, and to endeavour to take him alive. But after the Fight had lasted from Sun-rise till Noon, Sultan *Dsalaludin* finding himself too hardly press'd by the *Mogulls*, and seeing no more of his Army left, made a last Effort to break thro' the *Mogulls*, and having happily gained the Bank of the River, he spurr'd his Horse, which being very vigorous, carry'd him sound and safe thro' the Stream to the other side in view of the Enemy.



my. This Action pleased *Zingis Chan* extremely, and he said on this Occasion, that one might justly give the Title of *Happy*, to the Father who had such a Son. Notwithstanding he did not fail to seize the Treasure of the Sultan, and to condemn to Slavery the few Men who were not kill'd in the Battle. After which he detached *Dubay Noyan* and *Bala Noyan*, two trusty Hubbe Officers, to pursue the Sultan; who having follow'd him in vain as far as the Frontiers of the *Indies*, were obliged to return to their Master, without being able to give him any certain Tidings relating to the Person of Sultan *Dsalaludin*.



## CHAP. XVII.

*Of the Expeditions of the two Mogull Generals into divers Provinces of Persia, and of the Death of Sultan Mahamet.*

WE have observ'd before, that *Zingis Chan* Three Generals sent in quest of Sultan before he decamp'd from the Neighbourhood of *Samarkant*, had detach'd *Zena Noyan*, *Suday Bayadur*, and *Togazar Kantaret*, Moham- three of his best Generals, each with a Body of med. 10000 Men, in pursuit of Sultan *Mahamet*, upon the News he had receiv'd of that Prince passing the River *Amu*, in order to retire farther within *Persia*. On dispatching these three Generals, *Zingis Chan* enjoin'd them, "To treat all those Towns kindly which should open their Gates to them; but entirely to plunder such



“such as should make Resistance and carry the  
 “Inhabitants with them Captives; adding, I  
 “hope you will find less Difficulty in executing  
 “your Orders than you imagine, and that I  
 “shall see you return safe into our native Coun-  
 “try; for I don’t intend to stay long in these  
 “Provinces.”

Herat o-  
 pens its  
 Gates to  
 them.

*Togazar Kantaret* having been slain before the City of *Herat*, in the manner related in the preceding Chapter, the rest of the Detachment which were under his Command went and joined *Zena Noyan* and *Suday Bayadur*, giving them an Account of the Misfortune which had befallen him. Whereupon they march’d immediately that way, but the Inhabitants of the City coming out to meet them with many Presents, and declaring they had no hand in what happen’d between the Troops of *Togazar Kantaret* and those of *Sultan Chan Malik*, they contented themselves with exacting some Provisions for the Sustenance of their Troops, and turn’d of a sudden towards the City of *Neshabur*.

Sultan Mo-  
 hammed  
 retires to  
 Irak.

Carender.  
 Nishabur,  
 or Iran  
 Shaher,  
 and Aber  
 Shaher.

Caswin.

*Sultan Mahamet* being inform’d that *Zingis Chan* had detach’d 30000 Men in pursuit of him, resolv’d by the Advice of the Lords of his Council, with a very small Attendance, to take the Road of the Province of *Irak*, and send the Sultana his Consort, with his Son *Kijasudin* to the Town of *Carender*. At his Departure from *Neshabur* he left the Government of that City, and the neighbouring Provinces in the Hands of four principal Lords of his Court, *Tasber-Ulmulk*, *Nesamudin*, *Abulmahalicatip*, and *Shaulmulk*, not to mention many other Persons of Distinction who shut themselves up with them in the Town of *Neshabur*. As for himself, he went designing to reach the Province of *Irak*, and the City of *Caswin*, in which



which his Son Sultan *Ruknudin* had the Command with a Body of 30000 Men. At his Approach Sultan *Ruknudin* went out to meet him with a Detachment of his Troops, and conducted him into the City with all the Marks of Respect imaginable.

*Zena Noyan* and *Suday Bayadur* being arriv'd <sup>Nishabur</sup> at the Town of *Neshabur*, sent to summon the <sup>summon'd</sup> Lords who commanded there for Sultan *Mahamet* <sup>to surren-</sup> to surrender the City to them; whereupon they let them know in Answer, that they need only pursue Sultan *Mahamet* briskly, and <sup>Makes</sup> that when they had happily executed that Part <sup>Condi-</sup> of their Commission, they would not fail to deliver up the Town to them at their Return. This Answer having been accompany'd with very magnificent Presents, *Zena Noyan* and *Suday Bayadur* judg'd it proper to rest satisfy'd, and sent them a Copy of the Orders they had to treat kindly all the Towns which opened their Gates to them, and to destroy all such as made Resistance. After which, having taken Guides from *Neshabur*, they march'd towards the City of *Masanderan*; and that Place having <sup>Masande-</sup> been carry'd by force, they cut the Throats of <sup>ran City</sup> all the Inhabitants without giving Quarter to <sup>taken by</sup> any one. Then understanding that Sultan *Mahamet* <sup>Storm.</sup> was at *Caswin*, they took the Road of the Province of *Irak*, and in the way they treated with much Kindness all the Towns which opened them their Gates; but shewed no Mercy to those which constrain'd them to make use of Force.

The Town of *Ilan*, where the Mother of <sup>Ilan Town</sup> the Sultan, with the youngest Children of that Prince were shut up, being very strong by its Situation, and appearing resolv'd to defend it self vigorously, they would not meddle with it, tho it lay in their way; but the Town of *Rudin* did <sup>Rudin</sup> not come off so cheaply, for it was plundered and <sup>Town</sup> all the Inhabitants slain, for offering to defend itself. <sup>plundered.</sup>

K

Upon



Sultan  
Moham-  
med e-  
scapes to  
Carender.

Retires to  
Istadura.

Caspian  
Sea.  
Aboscun  
Gesira.

Ilan be-  
sieged.

Upon the News of the Approach of the Mogulls, Sultan Mahamet resolved to retire to the Town of Carender, but falling in the way among some Mogull Troops, he narrowly escaped being made Prisoner: For the Mogulls having at the first dispersed his Guards, press'd him so vigorously on all sides, that it was by the best Luck imaginable that he escaped their Hands and got to the Town of Carender, after having his Horse shot under him by an Arrow. But being informed some time after, That the Mogulls were coming also to Carender to look for him, he went into the Country of Gilan; so that Zena Noyan and Suday Bayadur, who were actually on the March towards Carender, did not find him in that Town on their Arrival: Wherefore they were content to leave some Troops about Carender, and pursue him with rest; but the Sultan arriving in the Country of Gilan went to Istadura, and in the way he lost his Money and all his Equipage. From Istadura he embarked on the Kulsun, and arrived in the Country of Abascum-Casira\*. The Mogulls perceiving he had escaped them returned and besieged the Town of Carender, and this Place being taken after a very vigorous Resistance, the Sultana, Wife of Sultan Mahamet, and his Son Kiasudin, fell into their Hands. From thence they went, and laid Siege to the Town of Ilan, which was situated in so rainy a Climate that tho there were neither Wells in the Town, nor River in its Neighbourhood, yet it had never been in want of Water till that time, inas-

[\* The French Editor supposed this to be the Country of the Abasses, a People in the Mountains of Caucasus near the Black Sea; but by Abascum Casira, or rather Aboscun Gezira, which signifies the Peninsula or Isle of Aboscun (the Arabs having but one word to express those two things) is to be understood a Place, whether Island or Peninsula, in the Caspian Sea near Astrabat.]



much as the frequent Rains which fell in those Parts constantly furnished it with Plenty of it. Nevertheless, from the Instant the *Mogulls* came before the Town, it ceased raining for the Space of 40 Days, which reduced the Inhabitants of the Town to such Distress, that out of a Persuasion that so extraordinary an Accident could be no other than a visible Sign of the Wrath of Heaven upon the Family of Sultan *Mahamet*, they obliged their Commander *Nazurdin* to repair to the Camp of the *Mogulls* to capitulate <sup>Ilan sur-</sup> renders. for them: Which was no sooner done than it began to rain so plentifully that all the Streets of the Town were overflowed.

The Generals of *Zingis Chan* becoming Masters of the Town of *Ilan* in this manner, and having found there a vast Quantity of Jewels and other valuable Goods, they sent them immediately to their Master, with the Mother and Children of Sultan *Mahamet* who were found in this Town, and *Zingis Chan* caused them all to be slain upon the Spot. Sultan *Mahamet* was so overcome at so afflicting a Piece of News that he fell down dead; and of all the great Riches which he possessed before, there was not enough left at his Death to bury him honourably, so that they were obliged to inter him in the Clothes he died in; which happened in the Year 617, called *Gilan* or the <sup>An. Dom. 1220.</sup> Serpent, after he had reigned 20 Years.

After the Reduction of *Ilan*, *Zena Noyan* <sup>Provinces</sup> and *Suday Bayadur* marched towards the <sup>of Aran</sup> Provinces of *Aran* and *Adirbeindsan*, and having <sup>and Ader-</sup> reduced all the Towns in those Parts under the <sup>bagan sub-</sup> Obedience of *Zingis Chan*, they turned at length towards the City of *Shamakie*, and that Place having been obliged to surrender after some <sup>Shamakie</sup> Resistance, they treated the Inhabitants with <sup>taken</sup> much Rigor to punish them for their Rash-



Mogulls  
march to  
Derbent.

Kipzaks  
and Alans  
join to op-  
pose their  
Passage.

Kipzaks  
desert the  
Alans.

Alans de-  
feated.

Kipzaks  
join with  
the Russi-  
ans against  
the Mo-  
gulls.

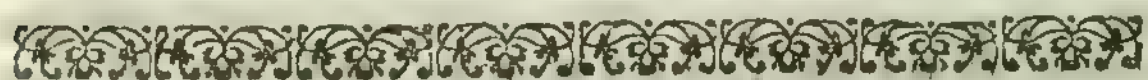
Country of  
Zerkass or  
Circassia.

ness. After which they took ten Guides to shew them the shortest Road to the City of *Derbent*, and to frighten them, caused one of them to be slain in presence of the rest, threatening to serve them all the same sauce if they did not bring them the right Road. But, notwithstanding that Precaution, the Guides conducted them by another Rout, where they knew the *Kipzaks* and *Alans* lay in Ambuscade to surprize them. The *Mogull* Generals perceiving the Danger they were in, sent one of their Officers with magnificent Presents to the *Kipzaks*, and to tell them, That they were very much surprized to see that those who were of the same Blood with the *Mogulls* should join themselves with the *Alans*, who were a People intirely Foreigners to them, to make War against their Relations and Allies who had never offended them, and with whom it would be far more honourable for them to live in Amity. The *Kipzaks* shaken by this Message separated themselves from the *Alans* without joining however with the *Mogulls*, and in the mean time these last fell with such fury upon the *Alans*, that after killing a great number of them, they made Slaves of all the rest.

The *Kipzaks* on their side being seized with their first Surprize, and beginning to distrust the fair Words of the *Mogulls*, retired towards the Frontiers of the *Urusses*, and being joined by them returned to seek the *Mogulls*, whom they easily found because they had no desire to shun them. At the Approach of the *Urusses* and the *Kipzaks*, the *Mogulls*, pretending to be afraid, retired before them the Space of ten Days; till having drawn them at length into the Country of *Zerkass*, in a Place very advantageous for them, they faced about, and charged



charged them very briskly. After they had fought stoutly for seven Days, the *Kipzaks* and *Urusses* were intirely defeated, and the *Mogulls* having slain the greatest part of them carried all the rest into Slavery, and returned joyfully thro' the Country of the *Kipzaks* to join *Zingis Chan*, whom they met upon the Frontiers of great *Bucharia*. That Prince having heard their Account, and seen the great number of Captives which they presented him, was much satisfied with their Expedition ; and not content with giving them publickly great Commendations, he heaped on them Honours and Favours in abundance.



C H A P. XVIII.

*Of the Expedition of Taulai Son of Zingis Chan into the Province of Chorassan.*

WE have observed in the fifteenth Chapter, that *Taulai* was detached by his Father, with a numerous Army, to reduce the Province of *Chorassan* ; but in regard we have there spoken of that Expedition too succinctly, we shall here relate some Circumstances of it.

The City of *Chorassan* was at that time very fair, and its Inhabitants so wealthy, that they preserved themselves in a sort of Independency, without submitting themselves to any absolute Government. The City of *Meru*, which was near it, was also very powerful ; and in this last Sultan *Mahamet* had placed a Governor called *Masar Ulmulk*, but his Father having long be-

*Chorassan  
City near  
Meru.*

*City Meru.*



fore been in disgrace with the Sultan, *Masfar Ulmulk* had been dismissed from the Government of *Meru*, and *Bacha Ulmulk* put in his Place. At the Approach of *Taulai*, and while he was busied about the Town of *Ghorassan*, Sultan *Mahamet* let the Commander of *Meru* know, that he ought not obstinately to contend against the *Mogull* Army, but endeavour to obtain good Terms from *Taulai* for the City. Upon these Orders *Bacha Ulmulk* intirely abandoned the Town, and retired to *Wafir*: One part of the Garison dispersed themselves in the neighbouring Towns, and the rest remained in *Meru* by the consent of the Inhabitants. *Taulai* being informed of what passed in the City of *Mern*, detached two General Officers with a good Body of Troops to take possession of that Place. At their Approach the Sheich *Ulislan*, Father of *Bacha Ulmulk*, came forth to meet them with a numerous Train and magnificent Presents, and presented them with the Keys of the Town.

The *Mogull* Generals, satisfied with this Submission of the City, turned their Arms another way. In the mean time one *Bucha Turkmann*, who had formerly been Head of the Guides in the Service of Sultan *Mahamet*, and who at the time of the Commander of *Meru's* Retreat, had retired into the neighbouring Forest with the *Turkmanns*, who made part of the Garison of that Town, returned not long after the Departure of the *Mogulls* to *Meru*, followed by *Tadsiks*, *Turkmanns*, and all other Partisans of the Sultan, who had fled at the Approach of the *Mogulls*. These Men unanimously conferred the Government of *Meru* upon *Bucha Turkmann*, and obliged all the Inhabitants of the City to acknowledge him in that Quality. About the

Wafir.

Meru submits.

Bucha Turkmann, made Governor of Meru by his Party.

Tagiks.



the same time *Masar Ulmulk* being informed, in the Country of *Irak*, where he resided since the time he lost the Government of *Meru*, That Sultan *Mahamet* was dead in the Country of *Abascum-Casira*, mounted a Mule which ran exceeding swift, and made all the haste he could to *Meru*; but *Bucha Turkmanu* refused him admittance into the Town. Nevertheless *Masar Ulmulk* having found means, some Days after, to get in by stealth, *Bucha Turkmanu*, upon Advice of it, assembled immediately all the Inhabitants; and having informed them that *Masar Ulmulk*, who had been formerly their Governor, was arrived in the City, he declared, that for the love of Peace and publick Good, he was content to give up the Command to him, and to live among them as a private Man, which was accepted of with a great deal satisfaction by the Inhabitants.

*Aboscum  
Gezira.*

*Masar Al-  
mulk cho-  
sen Gover-  
nor of Me-  
ru by the  
Inhabi-  
tants.*

The Country of *Charass'm* had already submitted to the Obedience of the *Mogulls*, and *Zingis Chan* had established there an Intendant, to take care of what concerned the Polity and the Revenue of the Country. He that had the Management of the Revenue at *Meru*, held a secret Correspondence with the aforesaid Intendant of the Country of *Charass'm*; but the Vanguard upon the Road to *Charass'm*, having one Day intercepted the Messenger who was charged with these Letters, sent him with the said Letters to *Masar Ulmulk*, who immediately caused the Correspondent of the Intendant of *Charass'm* to be put to death.

*Chowa-  
razm sub-  
dued.*

While these things pass'd at *Meru*, the *Mogull* Generals, who reckoned themselves from thenceforth secure of that Town, were gone to take in the Towns of the Province of *Masanderan*; but upon their Approach to the Capital of

*Mogull  
Generals  
march to  
Masander-  
an.*



Masanderan City.

the Country, *Bacha Ulmulk*, who from the Town of *Wafir* was come to that of *Masanderan*, came forth to meet them, and related to them what had happened at *Meru* in their Absence, adding thereto, That provided they would give him some Troops, he would do his best to bring the City of *Meru*, without delay, into subjection to the *Mogulls*; and, that if the Inhabitants would surrender without Resistance, he would only lay a large Tax upon them; but if they made Opposition, he would treat them with all the Rigor they deserved.

*Bacha Ulmulk baulked in his Design against Meru.*

Pursuant to these Offers, the *Mogull* Generals having given him 700 Men, he marched towards *Meru*: But being informed on the Road, that *Masar Ulmulk* had augmented his Forces in the City to 80000 Men, he durst not pass farther; but sent to him two Officers with a Letter, importing, That inasmuch as he was not in a Condition long to hold out against the Arms of the *Mogulls*, he summoned him to deliver up the Town, because he was sent for that Purpose with proper Troops by the *Mogull* Generals: But *Masar Ulmulk* having ordered those two Officers to be slain, prepared for a vigorous Defense, and fortified in the best manner he could the Avenues by which the *Mogulls* might come at him. This News being spread among the *Mogull* Troops which were under the Command of *Bacha Ulmulk*, they killed their Commander and turned back.

*Is slain by the Mogulls under his Command.*

*Amuya Town.*

*Masar Ulmulk* being informed of the Death of *Bacha Ulmulk* was so overjoy'd at it, that he gave a magnificent Treat upon that Occasion to the principal Inhabitants of the Town of *Meru*. But this Joy did not last long, for the Governor of the Town of *Amuya*, who was a Chief of the *Turkmanns*, went to him the Day after the



the Feast with some *Turkman's* of his Garison, to inform him that the *Mogulls* were on their March towards the Town of *Meru* with a powerful Army, and he did not doubt but their Vanguard was already arrived at *Amuya*. Tho this News was not very pleasing to *Masar Ul-mulk*, he did not lose his Courage, but that Moment ordered it to be published, that every one should provide what was necessary to make stout Resistance against the Enemy, which were expected every Minute. In the mean time the Commander of *Amuya* having assembled a small Body of *Turkmans*, went and posted himself upon the Banks of a River which was between *Meru* and the *Mogulls*, in order to dispute the Passage of it as long as they could: but the Vanguard of the *Mogulls* having fallen upon them unexpectedly, he and Part of his Men there lost their Lives, and those who were not slain were made Slaves by the Conquerors.

*Masar Ul-mulk prepares for a vigorous Defence.*

*Governor of Amuya slain.*

It was *Taulai* himself, who having subdued the Province of *Chorassan*, came in Person with his whole Army to make a Visit to *Meru*: He arriv'd the 1st of the Month of *Maharem*, in the Year 618, before that City. The People of *Meru* try'd at first to keep him at a distance from their Town by a vigorous Sally; but having lost above a thousand of their Men in less than an hour's time, they return'd faster than they went out. That Siege having lasted above three Weeks, *Taulai*, who began to be impatient, order'd his whole Army to be drawn out, and having commanded that those who were arm'd with Bucklers should place themselves in the Front, he divided the rest of his Army into two hundred Troops, and led them in Person to the Assault; but just as he was going to give it, *Masar Ulmulk* desir'd to capitulate, and

*Taulai invests Meru.*

*An. Dom. 1221.*

*Masar came capitulates.*



Plunder-  
ing of Me-  
ru.

100000  
of the In-  
habitants  
slain.

Nisshabur  
besieged  
and taken.

All the  
Inhabi-  
tants slain.

Herat be-  
sieged.

came himself with grand Presents to make his Submission to *Taulai*. This Prince after he had seiz'd the Treasure, and all that could be there found of any Value in the Town, gave Orders for all the Inhabitants to go out without exception; and that City was so populous at that time, that they were four days about it. After which he caused all the Tradesmen to be separated from the rest, and spared them, but put all the Remainder to the Sword: And having order'd one of his Secretaries to take an exact Account of the Number of those who were slain on that Occasion, he found them to be above 100000. After that he gave the Government of the City to one *Amirisia Udin*, and the Management of the Revenue to *Jarmist*, ordering them to make a strict Search after the Inhabitants, who might still have lain concealed in the Town, and to put them in Possession of their Lands again in order to cultivate them. This was the fourth time that *Meru* had been plunder'd, and each time above 50 or 60000 Inhabitants were slain.

*Taulai* decamping from about *Meru*, went and laid Siege to *Neshabur*; and having taken the City, caused all the Inhabitants to be put to the Sword. From thence he turn'd towards the City of *Herat*, whereof *Melik Shamsudin Mahomet* had taken the Government by his own Authority, and had arm'd near 100000 Men for the Defence of the Place. *Taulai* as soon as he was arriv'd before that Town, sent and summon'd the Governor to surrender, but he caused the Envoy to be kill'd: After which he made a furious Sally upon the *Mogulls*, which he continued to do regularly for seven days successively, with so great Havock on both sides, that the Blood stream'd on all hands like Rivers, and

*Taulai*



*Taulai* lost in that time above 1700 Officers, *Bravely* besides private Soldiers: But the eighth Day, *defended.* after a long and obstinate Fight, *Melik Shamsu-din Mahamet* was mortally wounded with an Arrow, which having sunk the Courage of those of *Herat*, they retir'd in Confusion into the City; but the *Mogull* Troops entring pell-mell with them, *Taulai* who headed them took off his Helmet, calling out to the Inhabitants to surrender, that he was the Son of *Zingis Chan*, and promis'd they should be well treated, and that they should pay to his Father but half the Taxes which they till then paid to Sultan *Dsalaludin*. These Proposals having bred Dissension among those of the Town, the Inhabitants who accepted of the Offers of *Taulai* rang'd themselves on one side, and the Soldiers who refus'd them, rang'd themselves on the other. But *Herat* *Taulai* having caused these last to be disarm'd *ken and* off-hand, put them all to the Sword and punc-*spared.* tually perform'd his Word to the Inhabitants. After which he made *Malik Abubeker* Governor, and trusted the Management of the Revenue of the City to one named *Mengetei*; which done, he return'd and joined his Father before the Town of *Tallchan*.

The People of *Herat* were at first very well *Herat re-* satisfy'd with their Governor and Intendant, who *volts.* at the bottom were Men of Merit: But some time after the Departure of *Taulai*, the Generals of *Zingis Chan* having lost the aforefaid Battle against Sultan *Dsalaludin*, the Inhabitants of the City of *Herat*, as well as those of the Provinces of *Ma-urenner* and *Chorassan*, believ'd that Fortune was going from thenceforth to turn her Back upon *Zingis Chan*, since the Arms of Sultan *Dsalaludin* had once begun to get the Advantage of him: and in this Imagina-  
tion



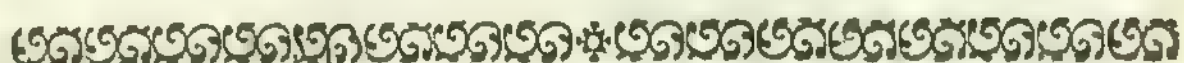
Slays the  
Mogull  
Governor.

tion those of *Herat* slew the Governor and Intendant which *Taulai Chan* had given them, and elected one *Melik Mobarisudin* for their Governor ; not at all doubting that all the neighbouring Towns would immediately do as much towards shaking off the Yoke of the *Mogulls*. At this News *Zingis Chan* chid his Son *Taulai*, for not having put to the Sword the Inhabitants of *Herat* when he had taken that City, which had given them the Boldness to commit that Murder, and order'd one of his Generals named *Ilziktei Noyan* forthwith to march on that side with 80000 Men, ordering them not to spare one living Soul in *Herat*. *Ilziktei Noyan* being arriv'd before *Herat*, divided his Army into four Bodies, each of 20000 Men, and never ceased assaulting the City at four different Places, till he had taken it after six days Attack. Of all that liv'd in the Town, they left but fifteen Persons, the rest having been put to the Sword. After which the *Mogulls* razed the Walls of *Herat* to the Ground, and went to join their Master in the Country of *Chorassan*. This happen'd in the Year 619.

*Herat taken, and all but fifteen Persons put to the Sword.*

*Walls of Herat ras'd.*

*An. Dom. 1222.*



## C H A P. XIX.

*Of the Return of Zingis Chan, into his hereditary Provinces, and of his Death.*

*Insurrection in Kitay.*

**Z**ingis Chan having brought all the Country of *Iran* under his Obedience, and put to death all those who seem'd inclinable to a Revolt, receiv'd Tidings that the *Kitayans* began to rise ; upon which he resolv'd, by the Advice of



of his Sons and most trusty Officers, that his Son *Zagatai* should march towards *Gilan* in quest of Sultan *Dsalaludin*, upon the Report which was current that that Prince was lately return'd into *Persia*; that his third Son *Ugadai* should march with another Army towards *Gasmien*, to oppose the Designs of one of the Lords of the Court of the late Sultan *Mahamet*, named *Subuktagin*, deceased, and to punish the Town of *Gasmien* which favour'd him underhand; and that for himself he should march in Person, accompany'd by his Son *Taulai* towards the Country of *Turan*, so to be nearer hand to *Turan*: observe what pass'd on the side of *Kitay*.

*Gazne-  
hen.*

*Ugadai* having soon put an end to his Expedition, immediately follow'd his Father towards the Country of *Turan*, after he had destroy'd the City of *Gasmien*, and put all the Inhabitants to the Sword. *Zagatai* having enter'd the Province of *Gilan* after some Resistance from the Inhabitants, took the Town of *Mangara*, and all the other Towns of that Province, in which he caus'd a great Number of the Inhabitants to be kill'd; and not having been able to learn any thing of Sultan *Dsalaludin* in these Parts, he march'd also towards *Great Bucharla*.

*Gasmien  
destroyed  
and its In-  
habitants.*

*Gilan sub-  
dued.  
Mangara  
Town.*

It was in the Spring of the Year 620, when *Zingis Chan* set forward in his March towards the Country of *Turan*, after he had placed good Garisons, and Commanders of approv'd Fidelity, in all the Cities of Defense, which were upon the Entrances into the Country of *Iran*. Shortly after his Arrival in the Country of *Great Bucharla*, his two Sons *Zagatai* and *Ugadai* came to join him with the Troops under their Command, after they had executed their Commissions in the manner as has been related.

*An. Dom.  
1223.*

During



Zingis  
Chan's  
Discourse  
with two  
learned  
Buchars.

A Deist.

Dislikes  
Pilgri-  
mages and  
Set-places  
for Wor-  
ship.

During the Stay which *Zingis Chan* made in that Country, he ask'd to speak with some learned Person among the *Buchars*, because he had a mind to discourse him about several important Matters; whereupon two of the first Learning in *Great Bucharia*, of which one was the Cady *Asbraf*, and the other named *Woaasis*, being come before him, he inquir'd of them what was the meaning of the Name of *Mahometans* which they assumed, and in what their Worship truly consisted? The two learned Men answer'd him thereupon, 1. We are *Mahometans*, that is to say, Servants of one omnipotent God, to whom nothing is to be compar'd, and we honour the Prophets whom God has sent to teach us the Good, and to forbid us the Evil: Upon which he was pleas'd to reply, I agree with you that nothing is comparable to God. 2. We are obliged to give yearly to the Poor the 40th Part of our Income, and whatever else we are able to get by our Industry or Traffick: This *Zingis Chan* likewise approv'd of. 3. We are commanded, with regard to God, to pray five times a Day, which we must punctually perform: This he allow'd to be very good also. 4. We are permitted during eleven Months of the Year to eat what we please, and at what Hour we please, but the twelfth Month we are obliged to fast; insomuch that during that Moon, we can eat nothing till after Sun-set, which he did not disapprove of. 5. A Command is laid on those whose Health will permit them, at least once in their Life, to perform a Voyage to *Mechka* to worship God there. *Zingis Chan* did not relish this last Article at all, who, perswaded that God is present every where, and that all the World belongs to him, maintain'd that every Place is equally proper to offer



offer up Prayers to him, and thought it ridiculous for any one to say, that one Place should be fitter than another to adore God. After this Conversation he dismiss'd them.

In the mean time the *Buchars* making use of *Buchars* so favourable an Opportunity, obtain'd Letters <sup>freed from</sup> Patent from him, that for the time to come <sup>Taxes by</sup> they might not be charg'd with any Imposts, <sup>Zingis</sup> Chan, without an exprefs Command from the *Chan*.

Departing from the *Great Bucharia*, *Zingis* <sup>A hunting</sup> *Chan* went to *Samarkant*, and sent from thence <sup>Match</sup> a Messenger to his Son *Zuzi Chan*, who had <sup>proposed by</sup> settled his Abode in *Dashté Kipsak*, to acquaint <sup>Zingis</sup> him, that being inform'd there were great Numbers of Fallow Beasts towards the Confines of *Turkestan* and *Dashté Kipsak*, he desir'd he would order them to be hunted by the People under his Government towards the Frontiers of *Turkestan*, and that he on his side would cause the same to be done by his People, to the end he might divert himself for some time by hunting in those Quarters. I have observ'd above, that *Zingis Chan* had given an Army to his three Sons *Zuzi*, *Zagatai*, and *Ugadai*, to go and subdue the Capital of the Country of *Charass'm*, and that the Discord which happen'd among the three Brothers having prolong'd the Siege, *Zingis Chan* had conferr'd the chief Command in that Expedition on *Ugadai*. This Preference touch'd *Zuzi* so sensibly, as being the eldest Brother, that he retir'd into *Dashté Kipsak*, where he was <sup>Dashté</sup> receiv'd with open Arms by the Inhabitants of *Kipzak* the Country, who becoming acquainted with <sup>submits to</sup> his Merit, afterwards voluntarily submitted to <sup>Zuzi</sup> his Obedience; and in that Country he made Hunting, which he passionately lov'd, his chief Exercise.

As



Zuzi's Pre-  
sents to his  
Father.

As soon as *Zuzi* had receiv'd his Father's Message, he immediately order'd as much People to be assembled as could be, to rouze a great deal of Game and chase them towards the Frontiers of *Turkestan*; knowing also that the Cavalry of his Father was in bad order, he sent him 100000 Horses to remount them, viz. 20000 white Horses, 20000 Dappled-greys, 20000 Brown-bays, 20000 black Horses, and 20000 spotted Horses; and at the same time he sent a great Quantity of Presents of all sorts to his Brothers. After which coming in Person to meet his Father, he was receiv'd with much Tendernefs.

Zingis  
Chan  
and his  
Sons hunt  
in Tur-  
kestan.

Shidurku  
Governor  
of Tangut  
revolts,  
and is de-  
feated.

Shidurku  
submits  
himself.

*Zingis Chan* having for some time taken the Diversion of Hunting with his Children, in the Country of *Turkestan*, return'd from thence into his hereditary Dominions; but he was scarce arriv'd, before he was inform'd that the Governor of the Country of *Tangut*, called *Shidurku*, had revolted against him. At this News he march'd immediately that way with a numerous Army. *Shidurku* had the Rashness to meet him with an Army almost equal to that of *Zingis Chan*; but having been entirely defeated, he shelter'd himself in the City of *Tangut*. In the mean time *Zingis Chan* having destroy'd every thing with Fire and Sword in the Country of *Tangut*, return'd into his Dominions with a great Number of Captives, and was follow'd immediately by an Envoy of *Shidurku*, who was commission'd to propose on his behalf to *Zingis Chan*, that provided he would pardon him what was past, he was ready to come and wait upon him. *Zingis Chan* receiv'd this Envoy with much Civility, and dismiss'd him with all sorts of good words, without putting himself under any positive Engagement with regard to *Shidurku*. But this Envoy was no sooner depart-  
ed



ed than *Zingis Chan* fell into a great Disorder, <sup>Zingis Chan falls sick.</sup> and perceiving that it increased every Day, he called to mind a certain Dream which he had formerly in his *Kitayan* Expedition; whereby being sensible that his End approach'd, he order'd his Sons, and the Children of his eldest Son *Zuzi*, who was then dead, with all the prime Officers of the Court, to be called, and after he had earnestly exhorted his Children to Union, and to lay aside all Animosity and Ambition, not to be allow'd of among Brethren and Relations, he presented *Ugadai* to them as his Successor in the Empire; ordering that all the Subjects of the Empire of the *Mogulls* should acknowledge and obey him in that Quality, immediately after his Death. This he deliver'd to them at the same time in writing, enjoining them moreover to conceal his Death, till such time as they had punish'd *Shidurku*, and entirely destroy'd the Town of *Tangut*. After which having embrac'd them separately, he dismiss'd them, and died a few Minutes after. <sup>Makes Ugadai his Successor in the Empire.</sup> <sup>Zingis Chan's Will.</sup> <sup>His Death.</sup>

The Princes his Sons, conformable to the last Orders of their Father, kept his Death closely concealed; and having assembled a great Army, went and besieged *Tangut*, which falling into their Hands after a very obstinate Resistance, they put to death *Shidurku*, with a good Number of his Soldiers who were in the City, and carry'd the rest into Slavery. After this Expedition they publish'd *Zingis Chan's* Death thro' all the Provinces of the Empire, and caus'd his Corps to be interr'd in the Place which he had chosen for that Purpose: for being one day a hunting, and perceiving a Tree exceeding tall and strait, he order'd that they should inter him under it after his Death; which his Sons having executed with all the requisite Ceremony, there

L

grew



Burchan-  
caldin,  
where  
Zingis  
Chan  
was buri-  
ed.

grew in time such fair Trees about the Tomb, and in such Numbers, that an Arrow shot from a Bow could hardly find a Passage thro' them. From that time they have given to that Place the Name of *Burehan-caldin*, and all the Princes of the Posterity of *Zingis Chan*, who since then died in those Provinces, have been interr'd in the same Place.

An. Dom.  
1163.

*Zingis Chan* was born in the Year 559, called *Tongus*, or the *Hog*; was proclaim'd *Chan* the same Year of the *Hog*, and died in the Year

An. Dom.  
1226.

624, which the *Mogulls* call *Tauch*, or the *Hen*, having lived 65 Years, and reigned 25 Years, in Quality of *Chan*. After the Publication of his Death, his Sons employ'd three Months in Mourning his Death, and all the neighbouring Princes who were the Allies of their Father, came to testify to them the Concern which they shar'd in so great a Loss.

Character.

*Zingis Chan* was a Prince of a great Genius, which partly appears by the Discipline which he establish'd among his Troops, which he divided into several Bodies of 10000 Men, and each of these Bodies had its particular Commander called *Tuman Agasi*; *Aga*, signifies a Commander, and *Tuman*, 10000. These Bodies were subdivided into Battalions of 1000 Men, having each its chief called *Miny Agasi*, or Commander of a Thousand. These Battalions were likewise divided into Companies of 100 Men, having each its Captain, called *Gus Agasi*, or Commander of a Hundred: and these Companies were yet sub-divided into Platoons of ten Men, having each its Officer called *Un Agasi*, or Commander of Ten: but all these Divisions were subordinate one to the other, and receiv'd their Orders from the Commander in chief of the whole Body. When he

Discipline  
establish'd  
by Zingis  
Chan in  
his Army.

was



was about taking the Field, every one of his Subjects knew how much he was to furnish towards the Equipage of the Army: He never let a commendable Action go without its Reward, and Virtue without Commendation; but he punish'd as rigorously Vice and Crimes. He was not satisfy'd to choose strong Men for the Wars, 'twas necessary also that they should discover some Parts, and out of the bravest of those he made his Officers. He usually appointed the best Footmen among the Captives to take care of the Horses, and employ'd the dullest among them to look after the Sheep. So many good Regulations gave him an easy Conquest over the neighbouring Countries and Kingdoms where there was not the like Disposition. He was also accusom'd once a Year to assemble all his Officers, as well Civil as Military, and examine if they had the Capacity requisite for the well discharge of their Employments; never failing to give large Praises to those who appear'd to have discharg'd the Duties of their Posts. In short he put every thing in so good order, that it is impossible to recount all the Measures he took for that Purpose.

*His Conquests owing to this Discipline among his Troops.*

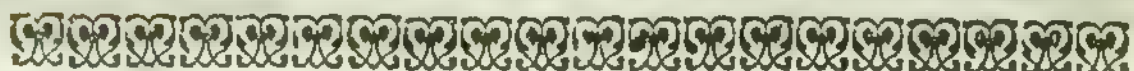






## P A R T IV.

Which contains the History of *Ugadai Chan*, third Son of *Zingis Chan*, and of his Successors in the Empire of the *Mogulls* of the Posterity of *Zingis Chan*.



## C H A P. I.

*Of the Reign of Ugadai Chan.*

*Ugadai declines the Succession as settled by Zingis Chan's Will.*

TWO Years after the Death of *Zingis Chan*, his Sons *Zagatai Chan* and *Taulai Chan*, as also the Children of *Zuzi Chan* his eldest Son, being assembled in Presence of all the great Officers of the Empire of the *Mogulls*; *Belgatai-Noyan* and *Ilziktei-Noyan*, two of the principal Lords of the Court of their deceased Father, caused the last Dispositions of that Prince to be publicly read, and following the Tenor of those Dispositions, they requir'd *Ugadai Chan* to accept of the Empire; but he excused himself on the Score, that having an Uncle by the Father's side, and two Brothers living, he desir'd from his Heart that one or other of them would take the Charge upon himself, and that he would take care not to envy him that Honour.

After



After that Assembly had spun out forty days without being able to unfix the Resolution of *Ugadai Chan*, his Brothers, who were willing to comply with the Disposition of their Father at any rate, laid hold of him, the eldest by the right, and the youngest by the left Arm, and placed him, in some measure whether he would or no, in the Throne of the Empire. *Ugadai Chan* having been obliged in this manner to submit to the officious Zeal of his Brothers, and all the Grandees of the State, gave a great Feast to all the Assembly; and upon that Occasion distributed magnificent Presents to those who were at it. After which he apply'd himself effectually to remedy all the Irregularities which had crept into the Government during the two Years Interregnum. It was in the Year 627, that *Ugadai Chan* attain'd to the Empire of the *Mogulls*.

*His Brothers constrain him to accept of it.*

*An. Dom. 1229.*

In the mean time Sultan *Dsalaludin*, who had fled to the *Indies* after the last Battle which he lost against the *Mogulls*, being inform'd of the Death of *Zingis Chan*, was return'd into the Country of *Iran*, and had taken the Cities of *Kirman* and *Shiras*; and from thence was gone into the Province of *Adirbeindsan*, where he had taken the City of *Tauris*, and almost all the other Cities in those Parts, which *Zingis Chan* at the time of his Expedition into the Country of *Iran*, had brought under the Power of the *Mogulls*. But *Ugadai Chan*, upon the Intelligence he had receiv'd thereof, sent thither two of his Generals with 30000 chosen Men, who defeated the Army of Sultan *Dsalaludin*, and forced him to fly for shelter into the Country of *Baker* and *Curdistan*, where at length he ended his unhappy days; for the Inhabitants of those Countries, not satisfy'd with having robb'd him of

*End of Sultan Gelal-al-din.*

*Persia at large.*

*Diarbekr.*



all, slew him with all his Men; and with him expir'd the Family of Sultan *Mahamet Shab* of *Charafs'm*.

*Progress in  
Kitay.*

After *Ugadai* had remedy'd the Disorders within his Dominions, and sent, as we have before related, a good Body of Troops into the Country of *Iran*, he resolv'd to defer no longer putting in order the Affairs of *Kitay*; and for that end, he went thither in Person, at the Head of a powerful Army, the same Year that he ascended the Throne of the *Mogulls*. At his Arrival in *Kitay*, he laid Siege to a great City which was situate on the River *Cara-Muran*: This Place defended it self for forty days with much Vigor; but having at last been taken by Assault, 12000 of the principal Inhabitants escaped by help of their Boats: All the rest were put to the Sword, or made Slaves of.

*Altan  
Chan  
sends  
100000  
Men a-  
gainst  
Taulai  
Chan.*

After this Expedition, *Ugadai Chan* advanc'd farther into *Kitay*, and sent his Brother *Taulai Chan* before with a Body of 10000 Men. *Altan Chan* having receiv'd Advice of this Advance of the *Mogulls*, caus'd 100000 Men to march against *Taulai Chan*, under the Command of some of his best Generals; who having surrounded *Taulai Chan*, and his Troops on all sides, had infallibly cut them in Pieces, if it had not come into that Prince's Head to command one of the Magicians which accompany'd

*Taulai  
escapes by  
the Assist-  
ance of  
Magick.  
Dfadadat-  
zi, Magi-  
cians.*

him to make the *Dsada*; that is to say, to produce a boisterous Winter Season in the midst of Summer, which these Men know how to bring to pass by their Sorceries; and 'tis from thence that these Magicians are called *Dfadadatzi*. The Magician, in obedience to his Master's Orders, having continued his Inchantments for three days, there fell at last so much Snow and Hail, and



## Chap. I. of the TATARS.

III

and the Weather became on a sudden so cold, <sup>Kitayans</sup> tho it was then in the height of Summer, that <sup>over-</sup> the Soldiers of the *Chan* of *Kitay*'s Army, with <sup>thrown by</sup> their silken Clothes, and other thin Stuffs, could <sup>Inchant-</sup> not stir Hand nor Foot. Then *Taulai Chan* falling upon them, cut the Throats of all but 5000 Men, who were happy enough to save themselves by flight from so strange a Misfortune.

At this News *Altan Chan* made away with himself, tho it is not known for certain what became of him: However, 'tis believ'd that he <sup>Chan</sup> threw himself in despair, into a great Fire which <sup>makes</sup> he order'd to be made for that Purpose. <sup>himself a-</sup> <sup>way.</sup>

*Taulai Chan*, having inform'd his Brother *Ugadai Chan*, of the happy Success of the Battle which he gave the Enemy, and of the Report which ran with regard to the Fate of *Altan Chan*, that Prince hasten'd towards him by great Marches; and having afterwards taken in most of the Towns of *Kitay*, he establish'd a Governor there, named *Machmut Delauzi*. These <sup>A Gover-</sup> Transactions detain'd *Ugadai Chan* for some <sup>nor placed</sup> <sup>by Ugadai</sup> <sup>in Kitay,</sup> Years Space in *Kitay*; but having at length finish'd all his Affairs on that side to his satisfaction, he return'd into his Dominions; having lost in this Expedition his Brother *Taulai Chan*, <sup>Taulai</sup> <sup>Chan</sup> <sup>dies.</sup> who died of Sicknefs in *Kitay*.

In the Year 634, *Ugadai Chan* sent his Son *Kajuk*, with *Batu* the Son of *Zuzi Chan*, <sup>An. Dom.</sup> <sup>1236.</sup> *Man-* <sup>Expedition</sup> <sup>against the</sup> <sup>Urusses,</sup> <sup>Zerkass,</sup> <sup>Bashkirs,</sup> <sup>and Bul-</sup> <sup>gars.</sup> <sup>Carakum.</sup> <sup>Painters in</sup> <sup>Kitay.</sup> *gu* the Son of his Brother *Taulai Chan*, and *Baidar* the Son of his third Brother *Zagatai Chan*, with considerable Forces towards the Country of the *Urusses*, the *Zerkass*, the *Bulgars*, of *Tura*, and of the *Bashkirs*; but he himself continued to reside in the Country of *Carakum*, where he built a magnificent Palace for his Residence, and sent for thither the most able Painters in *Kitay* to add the Ornaments suitable to it. At



Palace  
and City  
built in  
Carakum.  
Fine Foun-  
tain.

Vast Park.

Herat re-  
built.

Urusses,  
&c. sub-  
dued.

Ugadai's  
Death.

An. Dom.  
1244.

the same time he injoin'd all the Princes of his House, and the other great Officers of the Empire to build handfom Houses about this Palace. He also order'd a fine Fountain to be made there, which he adorn'd with a Tiger in full proportion, cast in Silver, which spouted the Water out of its Mouth. At some distance from the said Palace, he caused a Park to be made two days Journey in compass, which he stock'd with all sorts of Fallow Deer, and other Game; in order to take therein from time to time the Pleasure of Hunting, and inclosed it with Pales two Fathom high. He caused also the City of *Herat* to be rebuilt, which had been intirely destroy'd by his Father's Orders.

After seven Years Absence, his Son *Kajuk*, and his Nephews return'd from their Expedition into the above-mention'd Countries, which they had intirely brought under the Subjection of the *Mogulls*. On account of the glorious Success of that Enterprize, and the great Advantages which he had obtain'd himself in *Kitay*, *Ugadai Chan* assembled all the Heads of Families among his Subjects, and gave them a Feast more than ordinarily magnificent: and we are assur'd that the Number of those who were at that Feast, was so great, that it was impossible to reckon them. Not long after *Ugadai Chan* was seized suddenly with a grievous Sickness, which carry'd him off in a few days, to the great Regret of all his Subjects. This happen'd in the Year 642.



C H A P. II.

Concerning some memorable Actions of  
Ugadai Chan.

**U**gadai Chan was a Prince of great Judgment, and withal very charitable. I shall relate some remarkable Instances of it. A Man of the Tribe of *Virats*, who hated the *Mahometans* exceedingly, having come to acquaint him that *Zingis Chan* had appear'd to him in a Dream, and commanded him to order *Ugadai* from him to put to the Sword all the *Mahometans* in his Dominions: The *Chan* ask'd him if *Zingis Chan* had spoken to him himself, or only by an Interpreter? Whereupon that Man having assur'd him that he had spoken in Person; the *Chan* ask'd him if he could then speak in the *Mogull* Language? And having reply'd that he could not, *Ugadai Chan* said to him, " My Father spoke no other Language but that of the *Mogulls* ; how durst you then come to tell me that he spoke to you, seeing you understand not the Language which he spoke ; and that he understood not that which you speak ? " And having in this manner detected him in a Lye, he order'd that his Impudence should be immediately punish'd with Death.

Another time, *Ugadai Chan* having caused an Ordinance to be published, forbidding all his People for the time to come, to kill Sheep any other way than by striking a Knife into the Breast ; it happen'd one Day, that a *Mahometan* having bought a Sheep, shut the Door of his House that no body might see what he was going to do, and then cut the Head off. In the mean

Ugadai  
Chan's  
Charity.

Another  
Instance.

Law about  
killing  
Sheep.

mean



mean time a *Mogull* suspecting the Design of the *Mabometan*, from the Care he had observ'd him take to shut the Door after he had carry'd the Sheep in, it came into his Head to get up on the House ; and having by that means been a Spectator of the Action of the *Mabometan*, he went and seiz'd him by the Collar, and carry'd him fast bound before the *Chan* ; who having well consider'd the Affair, order'd the *Mogull* to be put to death, and the *Mabometan* set at liberty. For this reason, that the last by taking all possible Care not to be seen by any body, had obey'd his Law ; but that the first had violated the Law, by getting a-top of his Neighbour's House without his Knowledge.

Another  
Instance.

A poor Farrier having made six Iron Bodkins, went to the Market to see if he could sell them ; and observing *Ugadai Chan* to pass by, he held up his Bodkins that he might see them : whereupon the *Chan* having sent to ask what he meant by it ; the Farrier answer'd, that they were six Bodkins he had a mind to make him a Present of ; and the *Chan* having accepted the Bodkins, gave him a Dinar of Gold for each of them.

Another.

A poor old Man, who had neither Wives nor Children, having likewise come to see *Ugadai Chan*, gave him to understand that he had a great Inclination to fall into some little way of Trade, but he wanted Money for carrying it on. Upon which the *Chan* having order'd 200 Dinars of Gold to be given him out of his Treasury, to be employ'd in some advantageous Business ; some of the Lords of his Court, who were then present, endeavour'd to dissuade him from it, by reason that that Man having neither Wives nor Children, the Money which he gave him would of course pass after his Death into  
the



the Hands of Strangers: But the *Chan* persisted in his first Resolution, saying, " Since this Man has implor'd my Assistance, it would be unjust in me to send him away empty-handed, when it is in my Power to help him ;" and thereupon he commanded that the 200 Dinars which he had promis'd him should be given him immediately ; adding, that after that he might dy when it pleased God: But the old Man had scarce handled the Money, before he fell stone dead.

Another poor Man called *Muslies*, having *Another* come to make his Complaint to *Ugadai Chan*, that he had not wherewithal to support Life ; he order'd 500 Dinars of Gold to be given him. After he had eaten out that Money, he came again to see the *Chan*, and receiv'd 500 Dinars of Gold more. Those being spent like the rest, he came a-new to implore the Assistance of the *Chan*; but the Lords who were about *Ugadai*, chid him much for daring still to importune the *Chan*, after having already received so much Money ; saying it was unjust to give so much Money to one Man ; and that after the manner which that went, all he was able to give him would not last long with him. The *Chan* having taken Occasion thereupon to inquire what he had done with his Money, and understanding that he employ'd it in clothing and feeding himself well, he declar'd he could find no Cause to chide the Man so much ; and at the same time order'd 500 Dinars of Gold more to be given him ; recommending to him nevertheless, to be a little better Manager for the time to come of them, than he had been of the 1000 Dinars which he had receiv'd before.



## C H A P. III.

*Of the Reign of Kajuk Chan, Son of Ugadai Chan; and of the Posterity of those Princes.*

Ugadai's  
Wives.

Ugadai Chan had four lawful Wives, and sixty Concubines: His four Wives were called, 1. *Burakzin*, 2. *Turagana*, whom some would affirm to have been of the Tribe of the *Markats*; and others pretend to have been the Wife of a Chief of the Tribe of the *Virats*; and that falling into the Hands of *Ugadai Chan*, with many other Captives, after the Defeat and Death of her Husband, that Prince marry'd her afterwards, and loved her more than all his other Wives and Concubines, tho she was not over handsom. The third was called *Zazin*, and the Name of the fourth is not known to us.

His Chil-  
dren.

Pamak  
Country.

*Turagana* brought five Sons to *Ugadai Chan*; but he had none by his other lawful Wives. The first Son of *Ugadai Chan* was called *Kajuk*, and resided, while his Father lived, in the Country of *Pamak*; but he was always in a very languishing State of Health. This was he who succeeded his Father in the Empire, conformable to his last Dispositions. The second Son of *Ugadai Chan*, was called *Kutan*; the third *Kuku*, who was a promising Prince, but died before his Father; the fourth *Carazar*, the fifth *Kasbi*, to whom that Name was given, because he was born just at the time that *Zingis Chan* conquer'd the Country of *Tangut*: but in regard he gave himself up excessively to drinking, he died in the Flower of his Age.

This shews  
it is also  
called  
Kachin.

*Kajak*



Kajuk Chan, at his coming to the Throne of the Mogulls, distributed such magnificent Presents among all the Lords and other Persons of Distinction throughout his Empire, that he out-did all that his Predecessors had done on the like Occasions; but in regard he was very sickly, he held the Scepter but one Year, and died in the Year 644\*. He left three Sons, of which the first named Chodsa Ogul, and the second Bagu, were born of the same Mother, called Chamish: Bagu had a Son named Oku, who had likewise ten Sons.

\* The Monk Rubruguis reports, that Brother Andrew who was some time before him in Grand Tartary, had assured him that Kajuk Chan, whom he calls Ken Chan, died of a certain Drink which had been given him, and that Batu, his Cousin-German, was accused as the Author of that Mischief; but that he had learned since upon the Place, from several Persons, that Kajuk Chan having order'd Batu to hasten to his Court to do Homage to him as his sovereign Lord, he indeed set forward immediately with a very great Equipage, and all the Magnificence imaginable to obey the Orders of the Chan; but that under the Apprehension he was in of not being well received at Court, he sent one of his Brothers, whom Rubruguis calls Stichen, before, to observe how Matters stood; and that Stichen being one Day to wait on Kajuk Chan at Table, took Occasion to quarrel with him at a time when only they two were in the Tent, and that this Quarrel run so high that they slew each other on the Spot, which deliver'd Batu from a Voyage which made him very uneasy in his Mind.





## C H A P. IV.

## Of the Reign of Mangu Chan, Son of Taulai Chan.

*Doubt about a Successor.*

AFTER the Death of *Kajuk Chan*, it was a Doubt for a long time on whom to confer the Government, considering the great Number of *Zingis Chan's* Descendants: But forasmuch as the favourite Widow of *Taulai Chan*, named *Siurchochtny-begi-Geban*, had gained the Hearts of all the Subjects of the Empire by her Charities, every one wish'd that such an Honour might light on one of her Sons.

*Batu declines the Succession.*

*Batu*, Son of *Zuzi Chan*, who resided in the Country of *Dasht Kipzak*, seem'd to be the Person whom the Succession to the Empire naturally had an Eye to, but he had no desire to take the Trouble upon him: And having invited all the Princes of the House of *Zingis Chan* to come to him, to regulate among themselves the Succession to the Empire, some of them resolv'd to go thither, and others refus'd to do it; alledging, that the Election ought to be made in the Place where the *Chans* usually resided: but the aforesaid Widow of *Taulai Chan* perswaded her Sons to go there, seeing that as *Batu* was very much distemper'd in his Feet, it was but fit they should go pay him a Visit, a thing which they might very conveniently do upon that Occasion, and thus kill two Birds with one Stone.

*Summons the Princes to an Election.*

*Mangu, Son of Taulai, chosen.*

The Names of the five Sons which *Taulai Chan* had by *Siurchochtny-begi-Geban*, were, 1. *Mangu*, 2. *Halaku*, 3. *Artokbuga*, 4. *Coplai*, 5. *Moka-*



*Moka-ogull.* These five Brothers having then gone to see *Batu* by their Mother's Advice, he receiv'd them with all the Honours imaginable; and the Day of Meeting being come, he represented to all the Princes of the House of *Zingis Chan*, that in his Opinion they could not make a better Choice for filling the vacant Throne, than in the Person of *Mangu*, eldest Son of *Taulai Chan*; that nevertheless he left it intirely to themselves; who, as being on the Spot, should better know the Necessity of the Empire, than he who was at some distance. This Proposal having met with a general Approbation, they agreed to put off his Inauguration till the end of the current Year; and at the beginning of the next, they assembled all the great Officers and Heads of the Tribes of the Nation, that they might acknowledge *Mangu* in quality of Successor to the Empire of the *Mogulls*.

Pursuant to this Resolution, *Mangu* having <sup>Proclaimed</sup> been solemnly proclaim'd *Chan* in a general Assembly of all the Lords of the Empire, which was held in the beginning of the Year following; he treated very magnificently for seven days together all those who met at that Ceremony. At that Feast were consumed every Day eight Chariot Loads of Wine, two of Brandy, and twenty of Kumisse for Drink, and three hundred Horses, with three hundred Cows, and two thousand Sheep for the Kitchen. This happen'd in the Year 648.

Shortly after *Sbiramun*, one of the Grand <sup>Shira-</sup> Sons of *Ugadai Chan*, persuaded the other Princes of the Posterity of that *Chan*, that they ought to rid themselves of *Mangu Chan*, who usurp'd in prejudice to them the Throne of the Empire; and that such a blow might be struck with

*An. Dom.*

1250.

*Shira-*

*mun's Plot*

*to kill*

*Mangu*

*Chan.*



with very little Risk, because he mistrusted nothing. This Proposal having been relish'd by all the Parties concerned, *Shiramun* march'd before, with a Detachment of 500 Men, and some Chariots loaded with Arms: but one belonging to *Mangu Chan*, who was in search after some of the *Chan's* Camels, by chance passing by a Place where *Shiramun* with his 500 Men and his Chariots had halted, expecting Night-Fall, suspected they might have had some ill Design in hand, and went immediately and told the *Chan* of it, who sent off-hand 1000 of the principal Officers of his Troops who were at that time about him, with 2000 Soldiers, to know the meaning of it. These having soon met with *Shiramun*, demanded at once where he was going; and receiving for Answer, That he was going with his Company to pay his Court to the *Chan*, they brought them along with them Chariots and all. *Mangu Chan* regaled them, very handsomely for three days; but the fourth Day, having examin'd very strictly some of *Shiramun's* Men to what End they had been assembled; and understanding by their own Confession that their Intention was to revolt, he put to death eighty of them; but he pardon'd *Shiramun* and the Children of *Kajuk Chan*, as well as the remaining 420 Men who were in the Plot\*.

*Shiramun  
pardon'd.*

\* *The Monk Rubruquis reports, that Shiramun was Kajuk Chan's Brother, and that he undertook this Plot by the Advice of his Wives and his Vassals; but that his Design having been discovered in the manner our Author relates, Mangu Chan put him to death with his eldest Son, and 300 Gentlemen who followed him on that Occasion; that the Wives of Shiramun were whipp'd with Rods till they had discovered all the Particulars of that Conspiracy, and that afterwards they were likewise put to death; but that Mangu Chan pardon'd the youngest Daughter of Shiramun, because she was too young to have had a Hand in that Treason.*

He



He had so much Gratitude towards *Batu*, Batu called Sagin Chan. the Son of *Zuzi Chan*, who had contributed most to his Elevation to the Throne, that he yielded to him in every thing, and rely'd upon him in all Affairs of Consequence; he also chang'd his Name *Batu*, into that of *Sagin Chan*.

*Mangu Chan*, perceiving on several Occasions Mangu that all his Neighbours, as well on the Eastern Chan as the Western side of him, were forming Designs against his Empire, sent his Brother *Coplai* sends out three Armies. with an Army Eastward, and his Brother *Hala-ku*, with another Army into the West, marching himself towards *Zinumazin*; and having subdued all the small Towns of that Country, he went and laid Siege to the Capital named *Zinu*. The same as Dsurd-sut, p. 14. This Siege began in the Winter, and having lasted till the Spring, a great part of his Army perish'd by Sicknes, the *Mogulls* not being used to the unwholesomeness of the Air of that Climate; which giving his Generals Cause to fear, lest the Plague had got into the Army, Sickness in the Chan's Army. they strove to persuade him to raise the Siege and renew it at the end of the Summer, seeing their Men could better bear the Inconveniencies of the Winter, than the great Power which the Air has in that Country in the Spring. But he would by no means hearken to that Council, Mangu Chan insomuch, that obstinately persisting to continue the Siege, he fell ill himself of the same Distemper, and died after a Sicknes of eight days, dies before Zinu, An. Dom. 1257. which happen'd in the Year 655.



## C H A P. V.

## Of the Reign of Coplai Chan, fourth Son of Taulai Chan.

Coplai  
proclaim-  
ed Chan  
by the  
Army.

Artokbu-  
ga the  
Regent  
proclaim'd  
Chan.

Artokbu-  
ga attacks  
Burga  
Chan.  
  
Is beaten.

Submits to  
Coplai  
Chan.  
Division of  
the Em-  
pire.

AS soon as the News of the Death of *Mangu Chan* was known in the Army, which was in the Field towards *Kitay*, under Command of *Coplai*, they proclaimed him *Chan*, in the room of his deceased Brother. On the other side *Artokbuga*, who was also a Brother of *Mangu Chan*, and on whom that *Chan* had conferr'd the Regency of the Empire in his Absence, being inform'd of the Death of his Brother, got himself also proclaim'd *Chan*. *Coplai Chan* having had Intelligence of this Matter, dispatch'd a Messenger to dispose him to quit his Pretensions; but *Artokbuga* put to death that Envoy, which highly enrag'd *Coplai Chan*.

In the mean time, *Batu-Sagin-Chan*, who reign'd over the Country of \* *Dasht-Kipzak*, happening to die, and his Subjects having elect'd his Brother *Burga* in his stead, *Artokbuga* made War upon him: But having been beaten, he was constrained to fly into the Provinces neighbouring on *Carakum*. Upon these Tidings *Coplai Chan* went to find him in those Parts at the Head of his Army; but he sav'd himself by flight, and found means sometime after to make his Peace with *Coplai Chan*, and obtain his Favour. *Halaku* being wiser, sent to make his Compliments to his Brother *Coplai Chan* upon his Advancement to the Empire; who granted him,

[\* It is every where in the French Translation *Dashtè Kipzak*; but as it is written *Dasht* by Dr. Hyde and all other Authors, I have thought fit to leave out the final e.]

upon



upon that Consideration, the Property of all which the Mogulls possess'd at that time beyond the River Amu\*. Burga Chan remained in Possession of Dasht Kipzak; and Algu, Grandson of Zagatai Chan, had for his Share all the Country lying between the Altai, and the River Amu†.

At length Coplai Chan died full of Glory, shortly after he had taken the Town of Zinu; having lived seventy three Years, and reigned thirty five‡. Zinu taken.

M 2 CHAP.

[\* With regard to us it should be on this side the River; but it must be considered, the Author, when he wrote, was beyond it.]

† The part of Mount Caucasus which runs directly East from the River Irtis to the Sea of Japan, and which the Tatars call Tugra Tubusluk, sends forth two Branches which run along on each side of the Irtis as far up it as the Lake Sayssan, and bear the Name of the Great and Little Altai; so that 'tis easy to see that by all the Country situate between the River Amu and the Altai, which Coplai Chan granted on that occasion to Algu, Grandson of Zagatai Chan, must be understood the Country which is known to us at present by the Name of Great Bucharia, Charass'm, Turkestan, and the western part of the Country of the Callmucks.

‡ Coplai Chan was one of the greatest Princes that have reigned over the Tatars: 'Twas this Prince who accomplished the Reduction of China under the Power of the Tatars about the Year 1278; for Zingis Chan conquer'd only what lies to the North of the River Hoangso; Ugadai Chan afterwards subdued what is situate between the River Hoangso, and that of Kiang; but Coplai Chan completed that fair Conquest by the Reduction of all the Southern Part of China beyond the Kiang.

As our Author says nothing of the Posterity of Coplai Chan, altho we know from others that he had several Sons; I shall add here, that his Descendants reigned after him in China, so long as the Tatars kept Possession of it; and as after they had been driven out of China, those of them who went and settled towards the Shores of the Sea of Japan, continued always to have

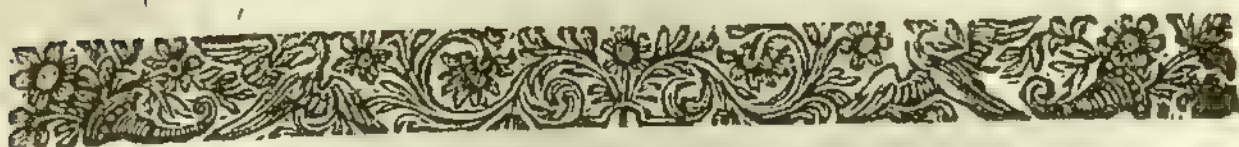


have Chans: It is probable that the present Emperors of China are descended from the Posterity of Coplai Chan; seeing there are no other Princes of the House of Zingis Chan among that Part of the fugitive Tatars from China, but those of the Posterity of Coplai Chan, and that the Tatars preserve too great a Veneration for the Memory of Zingis Chan, willingly to obey other Chans of their Nation, while there remained among them Princes of his Race. But whether the Chans of the Mogulls of the West be likewise sprung from the Posterity of Coplai Chan, is a Point a little difficult to determine; tho there is much Probability for the Affirmative.



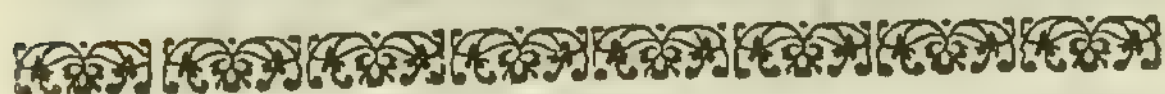
P A R T.





## PART V.

Which comprises the History of *Zagatai Chan*, second Son of *Zingis Chan*, and of the Princes of his Posterity who have reigned over the Cities of the Kingdoms of *Cashgar*, and *Ma-urenner*.



### CHAP. I.

*Of the Life and Reign of Zagatai Chan.*

**Z**agatai Chan had something very severe in his Countenance, infomuch that every one was afraid to look at him; but he had a vast deal of Wit, and it was on that account that *Zingis Chan* gave him for his Share all the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and half of what belong'd to the Towns of the Country of *Charafs'm*, as well as the *Vigurs* and the Cities of *Cashgar*, *Badagshan*, *Balck* and *Gasmien*, with their Dependences, as far as the River *Sirr-Indus*. *Indi*: but he always resided with his Brother *Ugadai Chan*, and conferr'd the Government of



the Provinces of his Dominions to Officers of consummate Prudence.

Story of a Sorcerer.

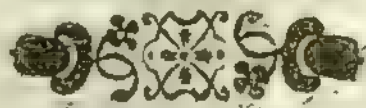
He had at his Court a Sorcerer, who knew so well how to dazzle the Eyes of those he had a mind to deceive, that they thought they saw whole Armies march before them; tho at the same time they saw nothing at all of it. *Zagatai Chan* having likewise had the Curiosity once to see some such Representation, conceiv'd a strong Aversion for the Man; and upon some Complaints which one of the Lords of his Court made against that Sorcerer some short while after, he order'd him to be bound Hand and Foot and cast into Prison, where he died; but *Zagatai Chan* did not survive him long, for he was seized soon after with an incurable Disease, which carry'd him off in the Year 640.

*Zagatai Chan's Death.*

*An. Dom. 1242. His Wives.*

Among a great many Wives and Concubines which he had, he distinguish'd two above all the rest, who were two Sisters, Daughters of *Caba Noyan*, Chief of the Tribe of *Kankratts*; the first of whom called *Bussulun*, bore him many Sons, which he loved best of all his Children: And the second was called *Tarchan Chatun*, whom he espoused after the Death of the first. These are the Names of the Sons of *Zagatai Chan*; 1. *Mutugan*, 2. *Muzi*, 3. *Balda Shab*, 4. *Sagin-lalga*, 5. *Sarmans*, 6. *Bussumunga*, 7. *Baidar*.

*His Sons.*





CHAP. II.

*Of the Princes of the Posterity of Zagatai Chan, who have reigned in the Country of Ma-urenner after the Death of Zagatai Chan.*

*C*ara-Halaku, Son of Mutugan, reign'd in the <sup>Cara-Halaku.</sup> Country of Ma-urenner after the Death of his Grandfather Zagatai Chan, and that Prince was succeeded by his Son Mubarak Shah; but <sup>Mubarak Shah.</sup> in regard he was very young at his Father's Death, his Mother Argata Chatun took the Title of Regent, till her Son had attain'd the Age which qualify'd him for reigning by himself. After the Death of Mubarak Shah, <sup>Algu.</sup> Algu Son of Baidar came to the Crown, and had for his Successor a Grandson of Mutagan, named Barak <sup>Barak Chan.</sup> Chan, the Son of Jasuntu; who after he had reigned two Years, embraced the Mahometan <sup>turns Mo-</sup> Profession, and took the Name of Sultan Gela- <sup>hamme-</sup> sudin: He was the first of the Posterity of Za- <sup>-dan.</sup> gatai Chan who profess'd Mahometism. After his Death, the Dignity of Chan was conferr'd on Begi, the Son of Sarmans, who had a great <sup>Begi.</sup> Grandson of Mutagan, called Buga Timur, for <sup>Buga Ti-</sup> his Successor. <sup>-mur.</sup>

After the Death of Buga Timur Chan, Doizi <sup>Doizi</sup> Chan, Son of Barak Chan, held the Scepter; <sup>Chan.</sup> and had for Successor his Son Conza <sup>Conza</sup> Chan. <sup>Chan.</sup> Conza Chan dying, Baliga who was also a Grand- <sup>Baliga.</sup> son of Mutugan, succeeded him. After Baliga <sup>\* or A-</sup> Chan, Isan Boga \*, second Son of Doizi Chan, <sup>mul Chod-</sup> held the Scepter of the Country of Ma-urenner, <sup>sa.</sup>

[\* Upon Isan Boga's being called to reign in Cashgar, I suppose he left the Throne of Mawar-al-nahr to his Brother Dui-Timur. See p. 176.]



Dui Ti-  
mur.Tarma-  
shir.Moham-  
medism  
lost and  
restored.Butan  
Chan.  
Zangshi  
Chan.Jasun Ti-  
mur,  
another  
Nero.Aly Sul-  
tan.

and was succeeded by his Brother *Dui Timur*. *Dui Timur Chan* was follow'd in the Throne by his Brother *Tarmashir*, who again embrac'd the *Mahometan* Religion: for tho *Barak Chan* and his Subjects had already embrac'd and carefully preserv'd in their time the Worship of *Mahomet*, it nevertheless came to pass, that the succeeding Generations had by degrees so far lost it, that there was hardly to be found any Footsteps of that Religion in the Countries of *Maurenner*, and the Provinces dependent thereon, when *Tarmashir Chan* undertook to restore it.

*Tarmashir Chan* was slain by his Brother *Butan Chan*\*, who afterwards seiz'd the Throne, and had for his Successor his Nephew *Zangshi*, the Son of his Brother *Ulugan*. *Zangshi Chan* had a Brother, called *Jasun-Timur*, who envying him the Throne he possess'd, resolv'd to make him away without Disturbance: but the Widow of *Ulugan*, who was Mother of them both, suspecting his Design, advis'd *Zangshi Chan* to be upon his Guard, who immediately took the Field against his Brother; but he had the Misfortune to lose the Battle, with his Life, on that Occasion; after which *Jasun Timur* caused his Mother's Belly to be rip'd up, in Revenge for having appriz'd *Zangshi Chan* of the Design which he had form'd against his Life.

During his Reign, there was a Prince of the Posterity of *Ugadai Chan*, called *Aly-Sultan*; who became so formidable, that *Jasun Timur*, and the other Princes of the Posterity of *Zagatai Chan* were not able to make head against him; insomuch that after the Death of *Jasun Timur*, he brought the Country of *Maurenner*

\* [Turmashirin, 16 from Zagatai, died in 1336. Tim. Rec, pag. 18.]



under Subjection to him : but after his death, <sup>Casan Sultan.</sup> *Casan Sultan*, Son of *Jasur*, Son of *Urek Timur Chan*, Son of *Cutugai*, Son of *Bosai*, Son of *Mutugan*, Son of *Zagatai Chan*, re-enter'd into the Possession of the Patrimony of the House of *Zagatai Chan*; infomuch that there were in all sixteen *Chans* of the Posterity of *Zagatai Chan*, who reign'd without Interrup-<sup>Power of the Chans ceases in</sup> tion over the Provinces of *Ma-urenner*; and af-<sup>Mawar-al-nahr.</sup> ter them there were indeed other *Chans* in that Country; but they were such as only bore the Name of *Chan* without having the Power, each Head of a Tribe assuming the Liberty of doing what he pleased, and obeying the *Chan* as much as he thought fit.

*Casan Sultan* was a very cruel Prince; he at <sup>Casan Sul-</sup> first maintain'd a War successfully enough a-<sup>tan very</sup> gainst *Amir Casagan*, seeing that he constrain'd <sup>cruel.</sup> him after defeating his Army to save himself by flight: But *Casan Sultan* having after that taken up his Winter Quarters in the Country of *Carshi*, he had the Misfortune to lose that Winter, which was very severe, so many Horses in his Army, that almost all his Cavalry was reduced to march a foot: Upon which *Amir Casagan*, who had good Intelligence of the bad Condition of the Troops of *Casan Sultan Chan*, return'd <sup>Slain by Amir Casagan.</sup> immediately, and falling upon him depriv'd him of Life, together with the Scepter of the Country of *Maurenner*, which happen'd in the Year <sup>An. Dom.</sup> 749. *Casan Sultan Chan* was the last of the six-<sup>1348.</sup> teen Princes of the Posterity of *Zagatai Chan*, who reign'd without interruption during 109 Years in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, with the Power belonging to the Sovereign Dignity with which they were invested.



## C H A P. III.

*Of divers other Chans who have reigned in the Country of Ma-urenner until Amir Timur\*.*

Amir Casagan.

AFTER the death of *Casan Sultan Chan*, *Amir Casagan* mounted the Throne of the Country of *Ma-urenner*: This Prince was the Son of *Danishmanza*, Son of *Kaydu*, Son of *Kasbi*, Son of *Ugadai Chan*, Son of *Zingis Chan*. He was slain after he had reigned two Years, but it is not known by whom †. After his death *Bayanculi*, *Bayanculi* Son of *Surga*, Son of *Doizi Chan*, Son of *Barak Chan*, Son of *Jasuntu*, Son of *Mutugan*, Son of *Zagatai Chan*, seized the Throne tho *Amir Casagan* left several Sons, among which there was one called *Abdula*, whom *Bayanculi-Chan* caused to be slain upon a Suspicion of having a criminal Correspondence with his Wife ‡. *Amir Hussain* was a Nephew to *Abdula*, and one of his Brothers Sons.

Timur Shah.

Adill Sultan.

*Timur Shab* succeeded *Bayanculi Chan*, he was Son of *Jasun Timur Chan*, Son of *Ulugan*, Son of *Doizi Chan*, Son of *Barak Chan*, Son of *Jasuntu*, Son of *Mutugan*, Son of *Zagatai Chan*. After *Timur Shab* *Adill Sultan* came to the Throne: he was of the Posterity of *Zagatai Chan*, being the Son of *Mahomet Pulat*, Son of *Conza Chan*, Son of *Doizi Chan*, &c.

[\* 'Tis *Amir Timur Chan* in the French; but the word *Chan* being put in by the Editor, without any Authority, I have left it out.]

† Vide *Timur-bec*, p. 13. slain by *Cotluc Timur*, his Son-in-Law.

‡ Vide *Timur-bec*, p. 15. where *Abdalla* is said to have slain the Chan for the same Cause.]

Among



Among the Vassals of *Adill Sultan*, there were two Heads of Tribes, one named *Amir Timur*, Son of *Taragai* of the Tribe of *Bur-lafs*; and the other called *Amir Hussain*, Nephew of *Abdula* of the Posterity of *Ugadai Chan*, as we have already related. These two Lords having plotted together against *Adill Sultan*, seized his Person, and having bound his Hands and Feet, afterwards drowned him. They nominated in his room *Cabull Sultan* to bear the Dignity of *Chan*: That Prince was Son of *Dord-fi*, Son of *Ilzaktai*, Son of *Doizi Chan*. In his reign the two fore-mentioned Lords seized the Town of *Balck*, and slew the *Chan* who reigned there at that time, but 'tis not known what his Name was.

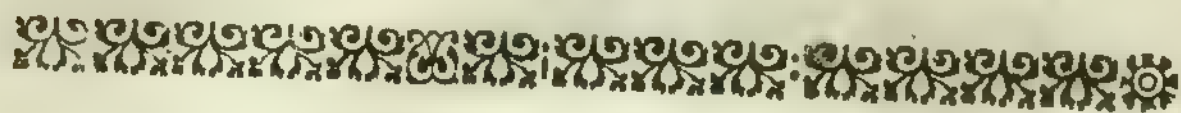
After *Cabull Sultan Chan* these two Lords raised *Soiruk-Tamish* to the Dignity of *Chan*; he was of the Posterity of *Ugadai Chan*, being the Son of *Danishmanza*, Son of *Kaydu*, Son of *Kashbi*, Son of *Ugadai Chan*. After the death of *Soiruktamish Chan*, *Mahomet Sultan* his Son was invested with the Title of *Chan*\*. All the *Chans* we have mentioned since *Casan Sultan Chan*, have only born the Name of *Chan*, without having any real Power; forasmuch as each Lord of their Vassals, who saw himself at the head of

\* *Cabul Chan* was the last of the Posterity of *Zagatai Chan*, and *Mahomet Sultan Chan*, the last of the Descendants of *Ugadai Chan*, who reigned in Great Bucharria after the Death of *Zagatai Chan*; for after that *Tamerlan* caused himself to be proclaimed *Chan* of that Country, and his Descendants possessed it after him till the end of the 15th Century, when *Shabacht Sultan* of the Posterity of *Sheybani Chan*, Grandson of *Zingis Chan*, whom our Historians commonly call *Sheybec*, drove them out of it; and since that time all the *Chans* who have reigned in Great Bucharria, have been of the Posterity of *Zingis Chan*. [All the *Chans* at present sprung from *Zuzi*. See Part 2.]

some



some numerous Tribe, believed he had right to make a *Chan* according to his own fancy, and to obey him no more than was his pleasure.



## C H A P. IV.

*Of the Life and principal Actions of Amir Timur.*

Amir Ti-  
mur wars  
on the o-  
ther  
Tribes.

Togalak  
Timur  
Chan sub-  
dues part  
of Mawa-  
ral Nahr.

Amir Ti-  
mur re-  
tires to  
Chowa-  
razm.

WHILST the Government was upon so unsteady a Footing in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, *Amir Timur*, Son of *Tarragai*, of the Tribe of *Burlafs*, made war against all the other Tribes of that Country, getting sometimes the better, other times the worst. *Togalak Timur Chan* of the Country of *Cashgar* \*, who was become very formidable during these Troubles, perceiving so favourable an occasion to enlarge his Power, enter'd the Country of *Ma-urenner* with a great Army, and at his approach one part of the Inhabitants of the Country, wearied with Civil Wars which raged among them for so many Years, submitted to him, without making any Resistance †. Another part of them which oppos'd that Prince, were put to the Sword, and the rest retired with *Amir Timur*, and *Amir Hussain*, into the Country of *Charafs'm*.

*Togalak Timur Chan*, having staid a whole Year in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, gave the Government to his Son *Ilyas Chodsa*, and return'd to *Cashgar*, where he died a Year after his Return ‡.

[\* Called King of the Getes, *Timur-bec*, p. 18. hence *Cashgar* and *Gete* seem to be the same.

† *Heg.* 761. *A. D.* 1359. *Timur-bec*, p. 18. 'Tis his second Expedition. *Heg.* 762. *A. D.* 1360. which is here referr'd to. Vide *Timur-bec*, p. 28.

‡ Died *A. D.* 1372. *Timur-bec*, p. 28.]

Upon



Upon the News of his Death, *Amir Timur* <sup>Amir Ti-</sup> and *Amir Hussain* return'd into the Country of <sup>mur forces</sup> *Ma-urenner*, and constrained *Ilyas Chodsa* to re- <sup>Ilyas</sup> <sup>Choga to</sup> <sup>return to</sup> <sup>Cashgar.</sup> These two Lords lived for some time in very good Understanding together, and divided between them the sovereign Authority in the Country of *Ma-urenner*; but at length they fell at variance, infomuch that they came to a bloody Battle in the neighbourhood of the Town of *Balk*; and Fortune having upon this Occasion decided in favour of *Amir Timur*, *Hussain* *Amir Hussain* remained dead upon the Field of <sup>defeated</sup> Battle, and by his Death left his Rival sole Mas- <sup>and slain.</sup> ter of the Country of *Ma-urenner*. 'Tis true that the forementioned *Mahomet Sultan Chan* continued always to bear the Title of *Chan*; but it was *Amir Timur* who in fact reigned: <sup>Amir Ti-</sup> And *Mahomet Sultan Chan* was so far from en- <sup>mur in ef-</sup> <sup>fect</sup> <sup>Chan.</sup> vying him, that on the contrary he continually prayed to God to preserve the Life of *Amir Timur*.

After *Amir Timur* had reigned in this manner during thirty three Years, he enter'd at the Age <sup>Invades</sup> of sixty Years into the Country of *Ruhm*, and <sup>Ruhm, or</sup> fought a bloody Battle with the sovereign Prince <sup>Asia Mi-</sup> <sup>nor.</sup> of that Country called *Sultan Bajasiet*. This Battle lasted with horrible Slaughter from Morning till late in the Night; but at length *Sultan Bajasiet* found himself obliged to betake himself to flight, and his Army was entirely destroyed. <sup>Defeats</sup> <sup>Bajazet,</sup> <sup>Sultan of</sup> <sup>the Turks.</sup> *Amir Timur* perceiving the Battle won, immediately detach'd *Mahomet Sultan Chan* to pursue *Sultan Bajasiet*; who coming up with him next Day about Noon, put to the Sword the few Followers that were about him, and brought him Prisoner to the Camp\*.

*Amir*

\* 'Tis not difficult to see that 'tis of the famous Tamerlan our Author speaks in this Place; and certainly one can't but be



be highly pleased to find him so moderate upon the Subject of a Man who had in his time done all the mischief imaginable to his Ancestors, and the rest of the Princes of the Posterity of Zingis Chan: and this Moderation is a good Security to us of the Faithfulness of the History of our Author; since we see thereby, that as he could not prevail with himself to say all the good he might of a Man he had so much reason to hate, he chose rather to say but a few things of him, than fail of the essential Duty of an Historian, by charging him with Falshoods; and for that reason, there is no room to doubt, but what he relates of the Origin of Tamerlan is intirely agreeable to truth; for whereas some Authors make him descend from the meanest of the People, and others on the contrary derive his Pedigree from I know not what Emperors and Princes of the Tartars, our Author relates very ingenuously, that he was Chief of the Tribe of the Burlafs, who descended from Tumana Chan, great great Grandfather of Zingis Chan, by Cazuli his sixth Son; as may be seen, p. 60 \*.

But inasmuch as he speaks only of those Expeditions of this Conqueror, which the Connection of the History necessarily obliges him to relate, I shall add here in a few words, that the Exploits of the grand Tamerlan far surpass those of all the Heroes of Antiquity; for after being raised from the quality of Subject, to that of Master, he carried his Arms with an astonishing Rapidity thro' all Asia, united all the Mahometan Tatars under his Empire, conquer'd the Indies, subdued Persia, vanquished the Turks, penetrated as far as the Straits of Dardanelles, ravaged Egypt, and crush'd to pieces all the Princes who durst oppose him: and as he wanted only China, with some neighbouring Provinces, to see the Dominion of all Asia united in his Person, he was actually on the march thither at the head of a prodigious Army, when Death came and put an end to all his Power.

Tamerlan, as to his Person, was very ill favour'd, as are most of the Tatars; he was lame of a Wound which he received in some of the first Actions of his Life, and from thence he had the Name of Timurlang, that is, Timur the lame, which Custom has since changed by corruption into that of Tamerlan. He professed the Mahometan Religion, as did all the Tatars of both the Bucharria's and the Country of Charass'm in his Time, which 'tis probable those Authors were ignorant of, who seem to be so much astonished that he never touch'd any of the Moskees of so many Towns which he had

\* [I cannot agree with the Editor in this place, for I think the Author's Partiality appears not only by the slight Account he gives of Timur's Actions; but also by charging him with the Death both of Bajazet and Sultan Mohammed Chan, contrary to the Fact. See Hist. Timur-ec, Vol. 2. p. 270, 285.]



*Amir Timur* having remained a Year in the <sup>Amir Ti-</sup>Provinces depending on *Rubm*, return'd into <sup>mur</sup>his own Dominions; and at this Juncture he <sup>assumes the</sup>caused to be put to death, not only *Sultan Ba-Chan*. <sup>Title of</sup>*jasiet* his Prisoner, but also the good *Mahomet Sultan Chan*; after which he caused himself to be proclaimed *Chan*. He was scarce arrived in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, when he resolved to undertake an Expedition into *Kitay*, but he

destroyed. He had some Knowledge of Mathematicks and Philosophy; he protected the Learned on all occasions, and was a great lover of the Sciences; as it still appears by the Academy of Sciences, in the City of *Samarkant*, which owes its Establishment to him. He was sober, modest, wise, and as great a Dissembler as ever Prince was; but above all, he shined in the Virtues of War, of which his grand Actions will be everlasting Monuments.

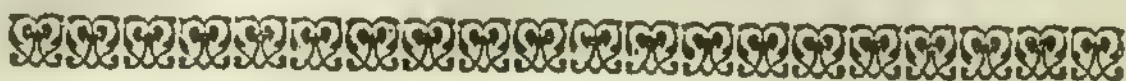
The defeat of *Sultan Bajazet I.* Son of *Sultan Amurat I.* was the most famous of his Victories, seeing that Prince had acquired the Reputation of the greatest Warrior of his Age, by the great Advantages which he had gained at different times over the Christians. That Battle was fought near the Town of *Simisa*, in *Natolia*, on Friday July 28, 1402. 'Tis to be observed that our Author reports, that *Tamerlan* put *Sultan Bajazet* to death; whereas our Historians assure us, that he dashed out his Brains against the Bars of an Iron Cage, which the Conqueror caused him to be inclosed in. 'Tis said *Tamerlan* had the Custom when he besieged a Town, to set up over his Tent the first Day white Colours, to notify that then was the time to have recourse to his Clemency; the second Day red Colours, to signify that the principal Inhabitants of the Town should pay with their Blood for their rashness in endeavouring to stop the Course of his Victories; and the third Day black Colours, to shew that the Day of Grace was past, and that the Town was thenceforth destin'd to be destroyed; nevertheless, as I don't find any Foundation for advancing this Particular, I think it ought to be look'd upon as an Invention.

Our Historians give us but very little Light into the Life of *Tamerlan*; and as for the Oriental Writers, they are all to be read with caution in their Histories of illustrious Men, because in that sort of Writings they usually give such a Latitude to their Imagination, naturally very lively, that they seem to be writing a Romance, at the same time that they are treating of Facts of great importance, and very true.

got



*Dies at Otrar in his way to China. An. Dom. 1404.* got no farther than the City of *Otrar*, where he fell sick and died, after he had reigned thirty six Years, and lived in all sixty three. This happen'd in the Year 807\*.



## C H A P. V.

*Of the Princes of the Posterity of Zagatai Chan, who have reigned in the Country of Cashgar.*

*Ifan Boga Chan called out of Mawar-al-nahr to reign in Cashgar. Vide p. 167.* IN the mean time it came to pass that the Inhabitants of the Cities of *Cashgar* and *Jer-keen*, of the Countries of *Alatach* and the *Vigurs*, finding none of the Posterity of *Zagatai Chan* among them, who was capable of filling the Throne of their Country which was vacant, they found themselves obliged to call in *Amul Chodsa*, who reigned at that Juncture, under the Name of *Ifan Boga Chan*, in the Country of *Ma-urenner*. This Prince, as we have above observ'd, was Son of *Doizi Chan*, Son of *Barak Chan*, Son of *Jasuntu*, Son of *Mutugan*, Son of *Zagatai Chan*. He had a Wife named *Satiltamish*, and as she bore him no Children, he got

\* After the Death of Tamerlan, his vast Empire which grew up almost as suddenly as a Mushroom, disappeared almost as soon; for his Descendants immediately after his Death, lost all that he had conquered to the South of the River *Amu*, with the Kingdom of *Cashgar*; so that they only kept the *Indies*, with the greatest part of his Conquests in the North of Asia. These last Provinces were also taken from them towards the end of the 15th Age by a Prince of the Posterity of *Zingis Chan*, called *Shabacht Sultan*; but the *Indies* remained to them, where they at present possess one of the finest Empires of the Earth, which we are wont to call the Empire of the Great Mogull; because those Princes are sprung from the Mogulls by Tamerlan their Founder.

one



one of his Slaves with Child, called *Manlagi*: History of the Woman Slave Manlagi  
 But one Day when the *Chan* was gone a hunting, his Wife, who could not but be very jealous of that Slave, gave her in marriage, with Child as she was by her Husband, to a *Mogull* named *Shiragol*, and obliged him to carry her off with him immediately into his own Country.

The *Chan* at his Return from hunting having enquir'd after the Slave, was inform'd that his Wife had given her to a *Mogull*, and in regard he had no mind to have a Quarrel with his Wife, he resolv'd to pretend ignorance of the Matter, and say not a word to her about it. In the mean time *Isan Boga Chan* happening to die without Isan Boga dies. Children, the State was all in confusion, by means of the different Factions which rent it in pieces. In this Extremity one of the principal Lords of the Kingdom of *Cashgar*, named *Amir Jolauzi*, who knew the Affair of the Slave, sent off-hand for a Man whose Fidelity he had prov'd, named *Tash Timur*; and having provided all Tash Timur sent in search of the Slave. sorts of Cattle for his Sustenance, sent him in quest of the Slave, ordering him not to return till he could bring him certain Tidings of the Child, with which she was big at the time that the Wife of the deceased *Chan* made her depart with the *Mogull*.

*Tash Timur*, after he had to no purpose travell'd thro' many Countries in hopes of finding what he look'd for, came at length to a Place where there were many Habitations of *Mogulls*, and having enquir'd the Name of the Chief of those Habitations, he understood not only that his Name was *Shiragol*, but also that the Slave *Manlagi* was in the same place, and that in reality Togalak, Son of Isan Boga Chan by the Slave Manlagi, born Heg. 730. A.D. 1329. she had had a Son called *Togalak* by the deceased *Chan* of *Cashgar*: They also shew'd him the Boy, who was playing with his Brother by the N Mother's



Togalak  
made  
Chan of  
Cashgar  
about  
Heg. 748.

Conquers  
Mawar-al  
Nahr.  
Heg. 762.

Leaves his  
Son Ilyas  
Choga  
Governor  
of Samar-  
kant.

Togalak  
the first  
Moham-  
medan  
Prince in  
Cashgar.

Mother's side, called *Timur Malik*. Upon which that Man, having taken his Opportunity when no body observ'd him, carry'd off young *Togalak* and brought him to *Amir Jolauzi*; who causing him off-hand to be proclaimed *Chan* of *Cashgar*, gave in his Name all the accustom'd Banquets and Rejoycings on these sorts of Occasions, and made him take the Name of *Togalak Timur Chan*.

This *Chan* was obliged to employ a great part of his Reign in suppressing the different Factions which oppos'd him in the Towns of *Cashgar* and *Ferkeen*, and in the Countries of *Alatach* and the *Vigurs*, after which he enter'd with a powerful Army into the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and brought it also under his Obedience. After which having left his Son *Ilyas Chodsa* in the City of *Samarkant* to govern in his Name the Country of *Ma-urenner*, he return'd to the Town of *Cashgar*, where he died some time after.

*Togalak Timur Chan* was the first of the Princes of the Posterity of *Zingis Chan* reigning in *Cashgar*, which embrac'd the *Mahometan* Religion, which happen'd in this manner. *Togalak Timur Chan* being one day a hunting, perceiv'd some foreign Merchants in the Place which he had pitch'd upon for assembling the Game, which put him in a great Passion; inasmuch as he had order'd a Decree to be publish'd, prohibiting every body to shoot or walk in the Places where he was accustom'd to hunt, to avoid frightening away the Game; and for that reason he order'd those Men to be brought before him bound Hand and Foot; which having been instantly executed, he ask'd them how they came to infringe his Laws? whereupon the most considerable among them, who was a *Sheich*, named *Sama-*



*Samaludin*, having answer'd, that they were Strangers of the Country of *Kattack*, who knew not there was any such Prohibition in that Country. The *Chan* reply'd, " 'Tis like <sup>Tagicks</sup> held in Contempt. " you are *Tadsiks*, and consequently worse than " Dogs; for I make much more account of a " Dog, than of a *Tadsik*." But the *Sheich Samaludin* made answer, " If we were not true " Believers, there would be reason for making " no more Account of us than a Dog; because " that with the Reason that we have, we should " yet be less reasonable than Beasts." This Answer touch'd the Heart of the *Chan*, who thereupon order'd those Strangers to be detain'd till he return'd from the Chase; and then sending for the *Sheich Samaludin*, he took him in private and said to him, " What is your Religion, that you durst tell me a while ago, " that if you were not true Believers I had reason to make no more Account of you than " a Dog?" Upon which the *Sheich* having amply explained all the Articles of the *Mahometan* Faith, the *Chan* was so convinced of the Truth of that Religion, that he resolv'd to embrace it immediately: but in regard divers Considerations hinder'd him from undertaking as yet so great a Change in the State, he besought the *Sheich* to return to him some time after, to concert together the Means to be employ'd to bring about that Affair.

In the mean time *Sheich Samaludin* falling ill a little while after his Return, he commanded his Son named *Sheich Rashidudin* to repair after his Death to *Togalak Timur Chan*, and put him in mind of the Discourse which he had at such a time with him concerning the *Mahometan* Worship. Pursuant to these Orders the *Sheich Rashidudin* did not fail to repair to *Cashgar* immedi-



Togalak  
Timur  
Chan and  
all the  
Lords of  
Cashgar  
embrace  
Moham-  
medism.

All the  
Mogulls,  
160000 in  
number,  
follow  
their Ex-  
ample.

ately after his Father's Decease ; but not being able all he could do to get into the Court to speak to the *Chan*, he bethought himself to go one Morning at Day-break and say his Prayers upon a Hill a little way from the Castle, so loud that he awaken'd *Togalak Timur Chan*, who sending immediately to look for him, would know the reason why he bawl'd so loud in saying his Prayers. Then the *Sheich* having compleatly fulfill'd the Orders of his Father, the *Chan* would no longer defer embracing the *Mahometan* Religion ; which he did so opportunely, that all the Lords of the Country follow'd his Example, except one only named *Amir Secuabis*, who appear'd and said, " There is one of our People " who has extraordinary Gifts, with whom, if " the *Sheich Rasbidudin* dare wrestle and throws " him, I will also embrace his Religion, but " not otherwise." The *Chan* at first oppos'd a Controversy of that nature ; but the *Sheich* having press'd for liberty to accept of the Challenge, he at length condescended : and no sooner had the *Sheich* advanced up to the *Mogull*, but he laid him flat upon the Ground with a back Stroke of his Hand on the Stomach, inso-much that it was a good while before he came to himself again : After which he fell at the *Sheich's* Feet, and declar'd he was ready to embaace *Mahometism*. The Lord who had set them together did the same, and all the *Mogulls* who were in subjection to *Togalak Timur Chan* follow'd this Example, to the number of 160000 Souls.

*Amir Jolausi*, who had aided *Togalak Timur Chan* to ascend the Throne, happening to die during his Reign, leaving only one Son seven years old named *Amir Chudaidat* ; the *Chan* notwithstanding his Youth, conferr'd on him all his



his Father's Employments ; whereupon the youngest of *Amir Chudaidat's* Uncles by the Father's side named *Camarudin* (for *Amir Jolauzi* had five Brothers) besought the *Chan* that forasmuch as it would be a long time before *Amir Chudaidat*, on account of his Youth, would be able to do the Duties of the important Trusts with which he was invested, he might officiate for his Nephew till he came of Age, and proposed then without more ado to give them up to him : But the *Chan* not having thought proper to grant his Request, *Camarudin*, who was a very ambitious Man, and at the same time very powerful, took such offence at that Refusal, that he conceived a mortal hatred against the *Chan*. Nevertheless he knew so well how to hide it during the Life of *Togalak Timur Chan*, that he had no room to mistrust him : but after his death he revolted against his Son *Ilyas Chodsa*, who succeeded his Father in the Throne of *Cashgar*, and having caused him to be massacred with all his Family to the number of eighteen Persons, he seized the Government himself, and had it published by a solemn Proclamation, that Liberty was given to every body who knew any of the Posterity of *Togalak Timur Chan*, to slay him with Impunity. *Togalak Timur Chan* was born in the Year 730, came to the Crown at the Age of eighteen, embraced *Mahometism* at twenty four, and died at the Age of thirty four Years.

Among many other Children which *Togalak Timur Chan* left behind him, there was a Son so very young that he was yet in his Mother's Womb, named *Amir Aga Chatun*, at the time of *Camarudin's* Revolt ; and this afflicted Mother not knowing where to hide her Son that he might not fall into the hands of that Tyrant,



Jasper.

Amir Ti-  
mur in-  
vades Ca-  
marudin.Camaru-  
din's Ar-  
my flies.Camaru-  
din not to  
be found  
after.Chiffer  
Choga  
Chan.

trusted him to the care of *Amir Chudaidat*, who discharg'd his Trust so faithfully, that whatever Applications *Camarudin* made to him to deliver that Child into his hands, he could never persuade him to it; and War breaking out afterwards between *Amir Timur* and *Camarudin*, *Amir Chudaidat* laid hold of that occasion to send the young Prince, named *Chiffer Chodsa*, under a Guard of some of his People of approv'd Fidelity, and with some old Women, to keep him about the Mountains of *Badagshan*, where the Jasper is found.

*Amir Timur* and *Camarudin* waged War together for some time with much Fury, and so much Equality, that after five bloody Battles it seemed yet uncertain which of the two in the end would get the better, when *Camarudin* fell dangerously ill, and *Amir Timur* having advanced at the same time at the head of a powerful Army, the Troops of *Camarudin*, who saw themselves without a Chief betook themselves to flight, not daring to stay for the Enemy. As for *Camarudin*, he was in this Confusion carry'd into certain great Desarts, which lie to the East of the Town of *Cashgar*, to the end he might not fall into the hands of the Enemy; but after the Retreat of the Army of *Amir Timur*, *Camarudin* could not by any means be found, whatever care was taken for the purpose: they understood a great while after \* that he resided with one named *Malik Adfah*; but 'tis not known who that Man was.

*Amir Chudaidat* not failing to lay hold of this Opportunity to bring back *Chiffer Chodsa*, cau-

[\* About 777. A. D. 1375. or 785. A. D. 1383. See Timur-bec. p. 176 and 235. Camareddin living in 792. A. D. 1390. See Hist. Timur-bec. p. 346.]



fed him to be proclaimed *Chan* with all the usual Solemnities. *Chiffer Chodsa Chan* was the Son of *Togalak Timur Chan*, the Son of *Ifan Boga Chan*, Son of *Doizi Chan*, Son of *Barak Chan*, Son of *Jasuntu*, Son of *Mutugan*, Son of *Zagatai Chan*, Son of *Zingis Chan*. This Prince reigned thirty Years over the Country of *Cashgar*; and all those who have since possessed the Throne of that Country have been of his Posterity\*.

[\* So that when this Author wrote, viz. in 1665. *Cashgar* was in the hands of the Descendants of *Chiffer Chodsa*; and we find by the present State of *Bucharia*, printed in French, 1723. that it was subdued 18 years after by *Bolto Chan* of the *Callmucks*, in 1683.]







## P A R T VI.

Which contains the History of *Taulai Chan*, youngest Son of *Zingis Chan*, and of his Descendants who have reigned in the Country of *Iran*.



## C H A P. I.

*Of Halaku Chan, and of the Princes of his Posterity down to Abusait Chan.*

Halaku  
conquers  
Iran.

**T***Aulai Chan* happening to die in the Country of *Kitay* during the Expedition of his Brother *Ugadai Chan* into those Parts, *Mangu Chan* his eldest Son obtained the Empire of the *Mogulls* after the death of *Kajuk Chan*, the Son of *Ugadai Chan*. That Prince some time after his advancement to the Throne, sent his Brother *Halaku* with a numerous Army to conquer the Country of *Iran*, and at the same time nominated a Man of the Tribe of the *Virats*, called *Argun Aka*, for Governor of the Town of *Chorassan*; who died after he had enjoyed that Government ten Years\*.

In

\* *Zingis Chan* and his immediate Successors in the Empire of the *Mogulls*, were content with subduing all Persia under



In the mean time *Halaku* having penetrated into the very heart of the Country of *Iran*, put to

*under the Dominion of the Tatars; but Halaku Chan coming with a powerful Army into Persia about the Year 1255, passed the Tigris and Euphrates, conquered all the Provinces about those two Rivers, and advanced even to the Extremities of Syria and Natolia; so that he brought under the Tatar Yoke all which the Romans were heretofore possessed of in Asia.*

*'Twas this Prince who put an end to the Empire of the Califfs of Bagdat in the Year 1258, by the death of the last of the Abbaside Califfs, and of all the Princes of his House.*

*Marco Polo informs us on this Subject, that Halaku Chan having carried the City of Bagdat by assault, tho there was a Garison of above 100000 Men in it, he shut up the Califf in a Tower, where that unfortunate Prince kept the immense Treasures which he had gather'd with so much Covetousness during his Reign, and let him die with hunger in that place, after he had reproached him with suffering himself and his Dominions to be lost for want of using that Money seasonably.*

*Halaku put an end also to the Tyranny of the famous old Men of the Mountains, by causing all the strong places of that petty State to be destroyed, after he had put to death the last of those Tyrants called Moadin.*

*These inhuman Princes possessed a small Territory inclosed within the Mountains of Libanus, to the N. E. of the famous Town of Tyre; their Subjects pretended to be sprung from the great Arsaces, Founder of the Empire of the Parthians, and bore for that reason the name of Arsacians, which was changed by corruption into that of Assassins; they were all Men of Execution, and breathed nothing but Murders and Robberies: Their Chief was commonly called the old Man of the Mountains, because all their Towns and Castles were built upon Rocks, and the most inaccessible Places of the Mountains; and that they always chose one of the most antient and crafty among them to lodge the supreme Authority with.*

*All our Historians accuse these petty Sovereigns with having been very dextrous at ridding themselves of their Enemies by a Stroke with the Hand, and to have had very singular Methods to engage the most resolute of their Subjects therein; for they pretend, that when they had pitch'd upon any one of them for such a Business, they proposed the Affair he was to act in as an infallible means to gain Paradise; and to insure him in some measure of it, they promised to give him a Foretaste of the Joys which the Happy enjoy there. Afterwards they caused him to be carry'd while asleep into certain very magnificent Gardens*



Coplai  
Chan be-  
stows  
Iran on  
Halaku.  
Sham the  
Residence  
of Halaku.

Abka  
Chan.  
Achmed  
Chan  
turn'd  
Mohame-  
dan.  
Argun  
Chan.

to the Sword all the Nation called *Mulabaida*\*, with their Chief named *Calif Imotafim*, and did not lay down his Arms till he had intirely subdued all the Provinces thereabouts. *Mangu Chan* happening afterwards to die, and *Coplai Chan* having succeeded to the Empire of the *Mogulls*, he made over the Property of all the Country of *Iran* to his Brother *Halaku*, who thereupon went and resided in the Town of *Sham*, where he died after he had reigned nine Years over those Provinces.

After his death, *Abka* his eldest Son succeeded him in the Sovereignty of the Country of *Iran*, and died after reigning nineteen Years: After *Abka Chan* his Brother *Achmat* was advanced to the Government of those Provinces. That Prince embraced the *Mahometan* Worship, but he was kill'd by his Nephew *Argun*, the Son of *Abka Chan*, before he could introduce that Religion

Gardens which they had made upon an exceeding high Mountain, where he wanted nothing which might please the Senses while he was there; and after he had been carry'd back in the same manner, they gave him hopes of the full Possession of that delightful Abode, as soon as he had executed the designed Blow; which so far persuaded those miserable Creatures, that there was not any Danger which they would not face with an astonishing Rashness to obtain that imaginary Paradise.

But if what our Historians advance on this occasion be true, I wonder they did not employ all their Skill to make away with *Halaku Chan*, who extirpated them. Be that as it will, 'tis certain we have borrowed from these People the Name of *Assassins*, which is given at present to those who kill any one designedly. See *Mezeray*.

[\*There was a Race of Mohammedan Princes in Persia called *Melahedah*, or *Ismaelians*, who are the same meant by *Mulabaida*: The *Sheich al Gebal*, i. e. the Lord of the Mountain, was chief of those *Assassins*, whom the Author confounds with the *Chalif* of *Bagdad*, *Almotassem*, whom *Halaku* put to death, as well as *Rokn Al-din Chuz Shah*, chief of the *Ismaelians*. *Tacash*, the Father of *Sultan Mohammed Shah* of *Chowarazm*, purged the Province of *Aderbagan* of part of



ligion among his Subjects. He reign'd but two Years.

*Argun Chan* dying after he had reigned seven *Kazeitu* Years, he was succeeded by his Brother *Kazeitu*, Chan. who was slain by *Baydu* after a four Years reign. *Baydu* *Baydu* who was the Son of *Taragai*, Son of *Ha-Chan*. *laku Chan*, seized afterwards the Throne of the Country of *Iran*; but he had scarce reigned eight Months, when *Gasan*, Son of *Argun Chan*, *Gasan* Son of *Abka Chan*, Son of *Halaku Chan*, put him in like manner to death, and seized the Scepter.

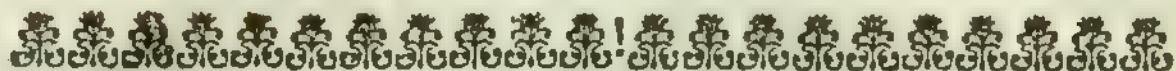
*Gasan Chan* was the first of the Princes of *Tau-lai Chan's* Race, which reigned in *Iran*, who embraced *Mahometism* together with all his Sub-*Embraces* jects, and to prevent their falling any more into *Moham-* *Paganism*, he caused all the Idol Temples in *medism* his Dominions to be burnt: He died in the Year *An. Dom.* 1301, being not above thirty Years of Age.

*Ulseitu* his eldest Brother was his Successor in the Throne of the Country of *Iran*, and died after he had reigned with much Glory thirteen Years. After the death of *Ulseitu Chan*, his Son *Abusait* came to the Crown: but in regard he was but twelve Years of Age at his Father's death, a Lord, one of his Vassals called *Amir Zupani*, chief of the Tribe of *Suldus*, had the Regency during his Minority. *Abusait* *Abusaid* *Chan* \* having afterwards taken the Reins of *Chan*. Government into his own hands, acquir'd much Glory by his great Valour, and extended considerably the Frontiers of his Dominions.

of them, *Hegrah* 593. *A. D.* 1196. He intended also to have destroyed those of *Chorasan*, but that Work was reserved for *Halaku*. There remained some of them in *Masanderan* till the time of *Timur-bec*, who rooted them out. See *Hist. Timur-bec.* pag. 395.]

[\* Called by the Persians, Sultan Mahamet Chodabenda.]





## C H A P. II.

*Of the Civil Wars among the several Successors of Abusait Chan, and of the Reduction of the Country of Iran by Dzanibek Chan.*

*The Moguls Empire in Persia divided by Civil Wars.*

*Arpa Chan succeeds Abusait.*

*Musa-ben-Aly proclaimed at Bagdad.*

*Mohammed Ben Jol Kutluk proclaimed in Asia Minor.*

*Mohammed Chan invades Iran.*

**A** Busait Chan dying after he had reigned in all nineteen Years; those of the Tribe of *Suldus*, the Heads of which from Father to Son bore the Name of *Zupani*, put the Scepter into the hands of *Arpa Chan*, who was descended from *Artok-buga*, third Son of *Taulai Chan*. During his Reign there was a Chief of the Tribe of the *Virats* called *Aly*, who having much Credit in the City of *Bagdat*, caused *Musa* the Son of *Aly*, the Son of *Baydu Chan*, Son of *Taragai*, Son of *Halaku Chan*, to be proclaimed *Chan* there. After which *Musa Chan* marching to attack *Arpa Chan*, depriv'd him both of his Life and Scepter, and made himself Master of all the Cities and Provinces in his Dependence.

At the same time there was in the Country of *Ruhm* a *Sheich* named *Sheich Hadsani Dfalagir*, otherwise *Sheich Hadsani-busruk*; who understanding that the People of *Bagdat* had proclaimed *Musa Chan*, and perceiving himself very powerful in the Provinces belonging to *Ruhm*, he caused in his turn *Mahamet*, Son of *Jol Kutluk*, Son of *Timur*, Son of *Anbarzi*, Son of *Mangu*, Son of *Halaku Chan*, to be proclaimed there in the quality of *Chan*. As soon as that Prince saw himself raised to this Dignity, he got together a great Army and march'd towards the Frontiers of



of Iran. At the News of the March of *Mahamet Chan*, *Musa Chan* advanced to meet him as far as the City of *Tabris*, and the two Armies coming to a Battle in that place, that of *Musa Chan* was entirely defeated, inasmuch that he was constrained to shelter himself among the *Virats*, after having lost on that occasion the said *Aly*, chief of a Branch of the *Virats*, who by his own Interest had raised him to the Throne.

*Sheich Aly*, Son of *Amir Aly Cosbzi*, who at that Juncture commanded in the Town of *Chorassan*, being inform'd of this Defeat of *Musa Chan*, went immediately to *Bastan* and proclaimed there in quality of *Chan Tagai Timur*, one of the Descendants of *Zuzicar*, the Brother of *Zingis Chan*, who formerly resided in the City of *Masanderan*. *Musa Chan* coming afterwards to join them, they went all three in search of *Mahamet Chan*; but the *Sheich Hadsani Dsalagir*, coming to meet them with a powerful Army as far as a place called \* *Jagarmruth*, entirely defeated them. *Musa Chan* lost his Life in this Battle, but *Tagai Timur* and *Sheich Aly* fled into the Country of *Chorassan*.

Another *Sheich Hadsani*, whom we shall at present name *Sheich Hadsani Chodsa*, and who commanded on the Frontiers of *Rubm* in the time of *Abusait Chan*, having had Intelligence of the unfortunate Success of that Battle, gathered in haste a powerful Army, and took the Field against *Mahamet Chan* and the *Sheich Hadsani Dsalagir*. After some Rencontres no moment, they came at length to a decisive Battle near the Town of *Nacsvan*, and Fortune having declar'd in favour of *Sheich Hadsani Chodsa*, *Mahamet Chan* died in the Field of

[\* *Jagarm Ruth* : I suppose a River.]



Battle, and *Sheich Hadsani Dsalagir*, was obliged to save himself in the City of *Sultanya*. Upon this occasion *Sheich Hadsani Chodsa* conferr'd the Government of the City of *Tabris* on a Woman called *Satibica*, while he went in pursuit of his Enemies. *Sheich Hadsani Dsalagir* perceiving the conquering *Sheich* pursued him close, and seeing no Likelihood of escaping him, resolved to implore his Clemency and surrender himself at discretion.

*Sheich Hadsani Chodsa* returning afterwards to *Tabris*, *Satibica* deliver'd him the Keys of the City after she had govern'd there a whole Year: and the *Sheich* to recompense her Fidelity marry'd her to a Lord called *Suleyman*, the Son of *Mahamet*, Son of *Sangu*, Son of *Jashmut*, Son of *Halaku Chan*.

*Gehan Timur* pro-  
claim'd  
Chan at  
Bagdad.

Some time after the *Sheich Hadsani Dsalagir* having found means to escape out of the Hands of *Sheich Hadsani Chodsa*, fled to *Bagdat*, and caused to be proclaimed there in quality of Chan, *Dsaban Timur*, Son of *Alfran*, Son of *Kazeitu Chan*, Son of *Abka Chan*, Son of *Halaku Chan*: After which he went to try his Fortune a-new against the *Sheich Hadsani Chodsa*; but having been again beaten, he took Refuge in *Bagdat*; and believing he had reason to be dissatisfy'd with *Dsaban Timur*, he depos'd him, and seized the supreme Authority himself.

*Sheich*  
*Hagani*  
*Galagir*  
usurps the  
Sovereign-  
ty.

*Sheich*  
*Hagani*  
*Choga*  
killed by  
his Wife.

In the mean time the *Sheich Hadsani Chodsa* became every Day more formidable; but as he had an *Arabian* Wife who was great with one *Jacup Shah*, it happen'd one Day that the *Sheich Hadsani Chodsa*, having upon some Account or other caused the said *Jacup Shah*



*Shah* to be arrested, that Woman imagined it was in consequence of his having come to the Knowledge of the criminal Commerce which she carry'd on with that Man, and under this Apprehension she took the Opportunity, while the *Sheich* slept soundly after hard Drinking, and cut his Throat. The *Sheich Hadsani Chodsa* was Son of *Timur Tash*, Son of *Amir Zupani* of the Tribe of *Suldus*, who had been Regent during the Minority of *Abusait Chan*. As powerful as this *Sheich* was, he never assumed the Title of *Chan*.

After his death his Brother *Malik Ashraf* succeeded him in the Usurpation of the supreme Power, and immediately conferr'd the Dignity of *Chan* upon one of the Descendants of *Halaku Chan*, called *Nau Shirvan*; but repenting soon after, he thrust him out of the Throne to which he had advanced him, and seized it for himself: but in regard he led a very scandalous Life, many among the most considerable of his Subjects, and among others the Chief Justice, went to *Dzanibek Chan*, who reigned in the Country of *Dasht Kipzak*, and complained so movingly to him of the shameful Actions of *Malik Ashraf*, that he thought himself obliged in Conscience to march against him with an Army. *Malik Ashraf* advancing to meet him with another Army almost equal to his, they came to a Battle in the Country of *Adirbeindsan*, near the City of *Chui*, and *Malik Ashraf* having been defeated and killed upon that Occasion, *Dzanibek Chan* seized all the Provinces which had been under his Subjection. This happen'd in the Year 756.

*Nau Shirvan made Chan.*

*Deposed, and Malek Ashraf usurps the Dignity.*

*Ganibek Chan of Kipsak invades Malik Ashraf.*

*Kills him and seizes his Dominions.*

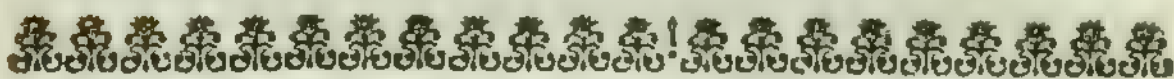
*An. Dom. 1355.*





## P A R T VII.

Which contains the History of *Zuzi Chan*, eldest Son of *Zingis Chan*, and of his Descendants who have reigned over the *Kipzaks*.



## C H A P. I.

*Of Zuzi Chan, and of the Reign of his Son Batu Sagin Chan.*

*Birth of  
Zuzi  
Chan.*

*Wrapt in  
Paste  
when born  
for want  
of Blan-  
kets.*

**Z**ingis Chan being on a time absent, while *Borta-cuzin*, Mother of *Zuzi Chan* was with Child of him, the *Markatts* came and fell upon his Habitations; and after they had ruined every thing that came in their way, they carry'd *Borta-cuzin* with them: But in regard she was Sister-in-law of *Aunak Chan* of the *Caraits*, and that Prince was an intimate Friend of the *Chan* of the *Markatts*, he easily obtained her Liberty and sent her back immediately to her Husband, forasmuch as *Aunak Chan* had always been in strict Alliance with *Jessugi Bayadur Chan*, Father of *Zingis Chan*. *Borta-cuzin* having brought forth a Son on the Road, and having no Blankets to wrap her Child in, she bethought herself of making a Paste of Meal pretty thick, upon which



which she laid her Infant, to save it from being hurt by the Ground. *Zingis Chan* over-joyed at his Wife's return, and being happily deliver'd of a Son, cry'd out, God be thank'd you are come back with a *Zuzi*, which signifies in the *Mogull* Language a Guest. From that time forth that Child took the Name of *Zuzi*.

*Zuzi Chan* happening to die during his Father's Life-time in the Country of *Dasht Kipzak*, where he reigned, as we have related in the Life of *Zingis Chan*, that Prince was exceedingly afflicted at it, and sent immediately his Brother *Belgatai Utezkin* into the Country of *Dasht Kipzak*, to cause *Batu*, Son of *Zuzi Chan* to be received there in quality of *Chan* in the Place of his Father. *Batu* being inform'd of the Arrival of *Belgatai*, went to meet him with his Brothers and his Children; and having employed three days in lamenting together the death of *Zuzi Chan*, he conducted him to the place of his usual Residence, where *Belgatai* put him in possession of the Throne of his Father; which was done with all the customary Rejoicings on the like Occasions: But scarce were these Solemnities ended, when they received the News of the Death of *Zingis Chan*. Whereupon *Belgatai Utezkin* return'd immediately to *Carakum*, where *Zingis Chan* died, and *Batu Sagin Chan*, accompany'd by his Brothers, follow'd him thither immediately, having conferr'd the Regency of his Dominions during his Absence on *Togai Timur* his youngest Brother, who was the only one of all the Sons of *Zuzi Chan*, who upon this Occasion remained in the Country of the *Kipzaks*.

Upon the Arrival of *Batu-sagin Chan* and his Brothers at *Carakum*, they spent several days in lamenting together the Death of *Zingis Chan*;

O

after Kitay.

*Zuzi's Death.*

*Batu succeeds as Chan of Kipzak.*

*Batu accompanies Uga-day into*



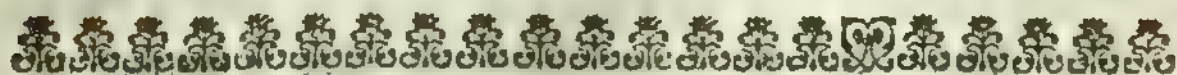
*His Expedition against the Russians, Circassians, Bulgarians, &c.*

after which they assisted at the general Assembly of all the Princes of the House of *Zingis Chan*, and of all the great Officers of the Empire who were met to regulate the Succession; and *Ugadai Chan* having been advanced to the Throne of the *Mogulls*, *Batu-sagin Chan* and his five Brothers accompany'd that Prince in his Expedition into *Kitay*: At the return from which *Ugadai Chan*, pleased with the Conduct and Bravery he had observ'd in *Batu-sagin Chan*, gave him a numerous Army to go and subdue the *Uresses*, the *Zerkass*, the *Bulgars*, and other neighbouring Nations, and caused him to be accompanied in that Expedition by his Son *Kajuk*, by *Mangu*, Son of *Taulai Chan*, and by *Baidar*, Son of *Zagatai Chan*.

*Batu's Death.*

*Batu-sagin Chan* having taken the way to his Dominions with so fine an Army, his Brother *Togai Timur* who had the Regency of them in his Absence, came to receive him with all the Magnificence imaginable, and feasted him for three days very splendidly, with all the Princes in his Company. After which *Batu-sagin Chan* gave in his Turn a great Feast, which lasted forty days; and at the end of all these Rejoicings he set forward on his March to the Enemies Countries. This Expedition had the Success which every one knows, and *Batu-sagin Chan* after he had filled all the West with the Glory of the great Exploits which he atchieved upon that Occasion, at length return'd happily into his own Country of *Dasht Kipzak*, where he died some time after in the Capital of the Country called *Coc-orda*.





C H A P. II.

*Of the Princes of the Posterity of Zuzi Chan, who have reigned over the Kipzaks, after the death of Batu-Sagin Chan.*

AFTER the death of *Batu-Sagin Chan*, *Burga* his Brother mounted the Throne of the Country of *Dasht Kipzak*: This Prince gave on that occasion a very magnificent Feast to all his Vassal Lords, and distributed considerable Presents among the principal of them. Nor did he forget to send some of an extraordinary richness to *Coplai Chan*, in order to get his consent to the Choice which his Subjects had made of him for their *Chan* in the room of his deceased Brother; which he readily obtained.

*Burga Chan* reigned with much Glory and Justice, and was much dreaded by all his Neighbours. In the mean time it happen'd, that going one time to see *Coplai Chan*, he met upon the Road with several Merchants of *Great Bucharia* and falling into discourse with some of them, particularly upon the Articles of the *Mahometan* Faith, he was so pierced with the Explanations which these Men gave him of it, that he resolv'd off-hand to embrace that Religion; and having also in time brought over his youngest Brother *Togai Timur*, who accompany'd him in that Journey, he caused Publication to be made at his Return, that all his Subjects should receive the *Mahometan* Worship; but he died



Mangu  
Timur  
Chan.

Conquers  
the Bul-  
gars.

Sends an  
Army a-  
gainst Ar-  
gun Chan  
of Persia.

before he could put the last hand to so salutary a Work, after having reigned twenty five Years.

He had for his Successor in the Throne of the *Kipzaks*, his Brother *Mengu Timur*, who was a Prince of much Courage and Conduct. This Prince after his Advancement to the Crown, gave the Property of a certain Tribe among the number of his Subjects called *Ak-orda*, to *Bayadur Chan*, Son of *Sheybani Chan*, and to *Oran Timur*, Son of *Togai Timur*, he gave the Towns of *Caffa* and *Crim*; after which he took the Field against the *Bulgars*, and having made considerable Conquests on that side, he return'd into his own Dominions after two Years Absence, but he march'd quickly after towards the Country of *Iran*, where *Abka Chan* reigned at that time, who came to an amicable Agreement with him; and those two Princes lived ever after in so good understanding together, that not a Year past without one sending the other a Present of whatever was rare in his Country. This Friendship continued always the same while *Abka Chan* lived; but after the death of that Prince, *Achmat* Son of *Halaku Chan*, who had embraced *Mahometism*, having been raised to the Throne of the Country of *Iran*, *Argun* Son of *Abka Chan* slew him, and possessed himself of the Crown.

At this News *Mengu Timur Chan* sent two of his Generals named *Tachai* and *Turkuthai* with 80000 Men towards the Frontiers of the Country of *Iran*. *Argun Chan* having got Intelligence of the March of the Troops of *Mengu Timur Chan*, immediately order'd a good Body of the Army to advance and meet the two Generals, under the Command of one of his best Officers called *Amir Tegatur*, and he followed in Person with all his Forces. These two Armies coming to



to an Engagement in a place called *Carabach*, *Which is* the Army of *Mengu Timur Chan* was defeated, *defeated.* which afflicted him so much that he died soon after.

After his death *Tuda Mangu*, Son of *Batu-Tuda Sagin Chan*, ascended the Throne of the *Kip-Mangu zaks*, and as he over-burthen'd his Subjects with Taxes, *Chan.* *Tochtagu* Son of *Mengu Timur Chan* thought himself obliged to represent to him the injustice of that Conduct; but *Tuda Mangu Chan* took it so ill of him, that he was obliged to leave the Country; nevertheless he found the means to return thither not long after at the head of a powerful Army, no body being able to tell exactly from whence he had such considerable Assistance, and having given Battle to *Tochtagu Tuda Mangu Chan*, this last lost the Scepter with *Chan.* his Life in that Action, and *Tochtagu* got himself acknowledg'd *Chan* of the *Kipzaks*. That Prince reigned six Years with the universal Applause of his Subjects, and conquer'd a great number of neighbouring Cities; but Death having snatch'd him away in the midst of his Conquests, he was bury'd in the City of *Sbarisaraizik* pursuant to his last Directions.

After his death *Usbeck Chan* his Son succeed- *Usbeck Chan* ed him in the Throne of *Dasht Kipzak*; and *from* tho he was but thirteen Years old at his Advancement to the Throne, yet he reigned with *whom the Usbecks* much Prudence and Resolution. He introduced *are called.* the *Mahometan* Worship thro' all the Provinces of his Dominions, which procured him so much the Affections of his Subjects, that in order to give him publick Demonstration of it, they all took the name of *Usbecks*, which they have constantly retained ever since; for before *Introduced the Maho-* the Reign of *Usbeck Chan* they were never *medan Religion.* known under that Name. *Usbeck Chan* after that



that try'd his Fortune twice against *Abusait Chan* of the Country of *Iran*, but he could never make any thing of it, and died at his return from the last Campaign which he made against that Prince.

Dzanibek  
Chan.

His Son *Dzanibek*, who succeeded him in the Throne of the *Kipzaks*, was also a zealous Protector of the *Mahometan* Worship, and got the Reputation of a very virtuous and devout Prince. He made the Town of *Sbarisaraizik* the Place of his ordinary Residence, and continually apply'd himself to the Good of his Subjects. During his Reign *Malik Ashraf*, Son of *Timur Tash*, had seized the Throne of the Country of *Adirbeindsan*, and the neighbouring Provinces; but as he was a great Tyrant and led a most scandalous Life, Numbers of his Subjects left him and went over to *Dzanibek Chan*, and among the rest a chief Man of the Law named *Mohosudin*, who making it his business to explain the Law publickly in the *Meishids*, took occasion one day, when *Dzanibek Chan* with a great number of other Persons of Quality assisted at divine Service, to touch upon the scandalous Life of *Malik Ashraf*; and addressing himself to the *Chan*, he threatned him, that in case he did not stir himself effectually to put an end to the infamous licentiousness of that Tyrant, he and all his People who knew he was acquainted with it, would accuse him before the Throne of God of all the Evil that might accrue thereby; which had such an effect on the Mind of *Dzanibek Chan*, that assembling all his Forces without delay, he went in quest of *Malik Ashraf*, who having on that occasion lost the Battle with his Life, *Dzanibek Chan* seized on all the Provinces under his obedience, and divided among his Subjects all the Treasure of that

Wars upon  
Malik  
Ashraf  
Chan of  
Persia.

Usurper,



Usurper, which were found to be four hundred Camel Loads in Gold and in Jewels, without reckoning the other valuable Effects. After which having put the Government of those Provinces into the Hands of his Son *Birdibek*, he return'd into his own Dominions, and was scarce arriv'd before he fell dangerously sick; upon which he immediately dispatch'd Couriers to his Son *Birdibek*, whom he had left in the Country of *Adirbeindsan*, to come and see him before he died: but perceiving afterwards that it would be impossible, considering the great distance of Places, for him to come time enough to find him still alive, he enjoined the Lords of his Court to acknowledge his Son for their Master after his Death, and having expir'd shortly after, he was bury'd in the Town of *Sharisaraizik*, after he had reigned seven Years, which happen'd in the Year 758.

*An. Dom.*  
1356.

His Son, whom Affairs of importance still detained in the Provinces where he was at the time of his Father's Death, at length arriv'd two Years after; and having spent three days in lamenting his Father's death, he caused himself to be publickly acknowledg'd in quality of *Chan*: after which he abandon'd himself intirely to Tyranny and a brutish Life; and forasmuch as he reckon'd he had a long time to live, he put to death all his Relations, for fear any of them should attempt to thrust him out of the Throne which he possessed so unworthily. But his Debauches soon put an end to his Life, which happen'd in the Year 762: and as with *Birdibek Chan* the Posterity of *Mengu Timur Chan* became extinct, the Scepter of the Countries of *Kipzak* was conferr'd on the other Descendants of *Zuzi Chan*.

*Birdibek*  
*Chan.*

*Tyranny*  
*and De-*  
*bauchery.*

*Ann. Dom.*  
1360.



## C H A P. III.

*Of the Descendants of Togai Timur, youngest Son of Zuzi Chan, who have reigned in the Country of Kipzak.*

Urufs  
Chan.

Defeats  
Tokta-  
mish.

AFTER the death of *Berdibek Chan*, *Urufs Chan*, Son of *Badakull Oglan*, Son of *Chodsa*, Son of *Avas Timur*, Son of *Togai Timur*, youngest Son of *Zuzi Chan*, Son of *Zingis Chan*, seized the Scepter of the Country of the *Kipzaks*, and reigned for some Years very peaceably. But at length *Toktamish*, Son of *Tokul Chodsa Oglan*, Son of *Saritza*, Son of *Avas Timur*, Son of *Togai Timur*, Son of *Zuzi Chan*, attempted to thrust him from the Throne; but his Troops having been beaten by *Urufs Chan*, he was obliged to take Refuge with *Amir Timur* in the Country of *Ma-urenner*.

There was at the same time a Man of Distinction of the Tribe of the *Ak-Mungals*, called *Kutluk Kaba*, who had a Son named *Idigi Mangap*, and a Daughter whom *Amir Timur* gave in marriage to one of his Sons, and of this Marriage was afterwards born a Son, who was called *Timur Kutluk*. *Idigi Mangap* had put himself in the Service of *Toktamish*, and when the latter was obliged to save himself by Flight, after having been beaten by *Urufs Chan*, and to seek shelter from *Amir Timur*, who then had his Residence at *Samarkant*, *Idigi Mangap* follow'd him a few days after with Tidings that they might easily surprize *Urufs Chan* with all his Forces, because he march'd at a great rate towards the Frontiers of the Country of *Ma-urenner*. Upon this Advice *Amir Timur* sent *Toktamish* with a numerous Army to meet *Urufs Chan*, and the two Armies coming to an Engagement,

Defeated  
and killed  
by Tokta-  
mish.



gement, that of *Urufs Chan* was intirely defeated; and as this Prince lost his Life in that Conflict, *Toktamish* found no Difficulty after that of seizing the Scepter of the *Kipzaks*, which happen'd in the Year 777. An. Dom. 1375.

When *Timur Kutluk* had arriv'd to Years of Understanding, he went to dwell in the Country of the *Kipzaks*, and *Idigi Mangap* put himself under his Protection, which greatly displeased *Toktamish Chan*; who having besides some Suspicion that *Timur Kutluk* sought to supplant him, endeavour'd without Noise to get rid of so dangerous a Rival: But *Timur Kutluk* having smelt out the Design of *Toktamish Chan*, fled for Refuge to *Amir Timur*, where he was follow'd six Months after by *Idigi Mangap*. In the mean time *Amir Timur* made an Invasion into the Country of *Iran* with all his Forces; whereupon *Toktamish Chan*, who had been informed that all the Country was unprovided with Troops, enter'd with a good Army into the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and having taken the City of *Sa-markant*, he caused a great number of the inhabitants to be put to the Sword, after which he had a mind to return into his Dominions; but *Amir Timur*, who on the News of the March of *Toktamish Chan* had return'd back, follow'd him with so much Diligence that he came up with him at length upon the Banks of the River *Atell*. *Toktamish Chan* finding there was no avoiding a Battle, gave it with all the Resolution imaginable; but the good Fortune of *Amir Timur* having also this time prevailed over all the Conduct of *Toktamish Chan*, this last was obliged to save himself by Flight, after having lost almost all his Army in this Engagement. After which *Amir Timur* return'd to *Sa-markant*,

*Timur*



*Timur Kutluk*, who was at this Battle in *Amir Timur's* Army, propos'd to him after the Action, that having been obliged to abandon all his Subjects, that he might not be surpriz'd by *Toktamish Chan*, he judg'd it would not be amiss to lay hold of that occasion to go and assemble as many of his Subjects as he could find, and afterwards return and join him. *Amir Timur* having approv'd of that Design, *Timur Kutluk* went to look for his Subjects, and meeting with a great number of them upon the Banks of the River *Atell*, he prepared to bring them to *Samarkant*; but *Idigi Mangap* made him sensible that he was going to do a thing which would deprive him entirely of all his Subjects, inasmuch as *Amir Timur* would have no more to do at his Arrival but to disperse those Men among the Cities under his Jurisdiction, whereby he would be reduced wholly at his Discretion; that for this reason he would do much better to keep his People together, and go and settle himself with them in some convenient Place. *Timur Kutluk* approving this Council, quitted the Resolution of bringing his Subjects into *Ma-urenner*, and went and fixt himself elsewhere; but we are ignorant of the Place which he chose for that purpose.

*Toktamish Chan* \* dying after that, left indeed eight Sons; but *Kavertzik*, Son of *Uruss Chan*, seized the Scepter of the Country of the *Kipzaks*

Kavertzik  
Chan.

\* *Toktamish Chan* was a Prince of much Bravery and Conduct; he had frequent Quarrels with the Russians, but he beat them several times, and reduced them to great Straits after he had taken the Towns of *Moscow* and *Wolodimer* from the Czar *Demetrius Ivanowitz*; which happened in the Year 1382.

after



after his death. These are the Names of the eight Sons of Toktamish Chan, 1. Dsalaludin, 2. Dsabarbirdi, 3. Kajuk, 4. Karimbirdi, 5. Iskander, 6. Abusait, 7. Ghodsa, 8. Kadirbirdi.

After the death of Kavertzik Chan, his Son Barak obtained the Throne of that Country; but after Barak Chan, Machmat, Son of Hadsan Oglan, Son of Zabina, Son of Tolak Timur, Son of Saritza, Son of Avas Timur, Son of Togai Timur, seized the Scepter, and had for his Successor Abusait surnamed Dzanibek Chan (the Son of Barak Chan) who left nine Sons, 1. Irazi, 2. Mahamet, 3. Kasim, who is the same that gave Battle to Mahamet Chan Sheibani, in which the latter lost his Life. 4. Aitik, 5. Dsanish, 6. Camber, 7. Tamish, 8. Auffak, 9. Zajik. The Usbeks affirm that the Chans of Turkestan are descended from Dsanish Sultan, fifth Son of Dzanibek Chan.

Barak Chan.

Machmat Chan.

Dzanibek Chan.

Chans of Turkestan,

whence descended.

After the Death of Dzanibek Chan, Giasudin, Son of Timurtash, Son of Machmat Chan, possessed himself of the Throne of this Country, and had his Son Hadsi Garay Chan for his Successor. Hadsi Garay Chan left eight Sons; 1. Daulatjar, 2. Nur Daulat Chan, 3. Haider Chan, 4. Kutluk Saman, 5. Kildish, 6. Mengli Garay Chan, 7. Jamgurzi, 8. Avas Timur.

Giasudin Chan.

Hagi Garay Chan.

After the death of Hadsi Garay Chan, his Sons divided among themselves the Dominions of their Father; but their Descendants did not enjoy it long, for the Urusses seized of all the Country of Kipzak in the Year 961, and since that time we hear no more mention of the Descendants of Hadsi Garay Chan.

Empire of Kipzak divided and subdued by the Russians.

An. Dom.

1553.



Chans of  
Crim de-  
scended  
from Ha-  
gi Geray  
Chan.

Nevertheless it is certain, that the Chans of Crim are sprung from the Posterity of *Hadfi Garay Chan*; but as this Country is at a great distance from us, we know not from which of his eight Sons they deduce their Original.

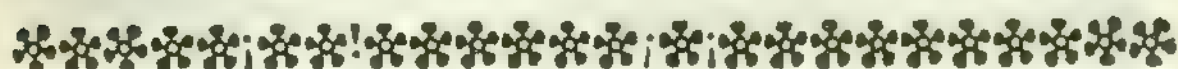






# PART VIII.

Which contains the History of *Sheybani Chan*, the Son of *Zuzi Chan*, and of his Descendants, who have reigned in the Countries of *Ma-urenner* and *Turan*.



## CHAP. I.

### *Of the Life and Reign of Sheybani Chan.*

**Z**uzi Chan had during the Life-time of his Father, form'd the Design of making War upon the *Zerkass*, *Bashkirs*, *Urusses*, and other Nations bordering on those People, and for that end had caused a prodigious quantity of Provisions to be got together from all Parts of his Country: but Death preventing him, *Zingis Chan* resolved that *Batu Sagin Chan*, Son of *Zuzi Chan*, should undertake the Execution of the Design concerted by his Father; and the Death of *Zingis Chan* having this time also obstructed it, *Ugadai Chan* after his Return from his Expedition into *Kitay*, would no longer defer the Execution of so noble an Enterprize. Wherefore he sent *Batu Sagin Chan* into those Parts with a numerous Army, who having taken many Cities belonging to the *Urusses*, arriv'd at last before the City of *Moscow*, near which the *Urusses*, in Conjunction with their

*The Expedition of Batu Sagin Chan.*



Allies the *Nemetzs*, had intrenched themselves\*.

Sheybani  
Chan de-  
feats the  
Russians  
before  
Moscow.

*Batu Sagin Chan* having try'd in vain for three Months to force them from their Intrenchments, resolv'd at length at the Instances of his Brother *Sheybani*, who had accompany'd him in that Expedition, to add 6000 Men more to the Body which this last had under his Command. *Sheybani* having receiv'd this Reinforcement, began by lighting off his Horse, and made all his Soldiers do the same. After which he went at Day-break to attack the Enemy behind, while his Brother *Batu Sagin Chan* charg'd them in front, which was so well executed, that how vigorous soever the Enemies Resistance might be, they were oblig'd to betake

\* *As this is the same Word which the Russians use to signify the Allemands [Germans] it might have happened that the Tatars having taken some of the Allies of the Russians Prisoners in the time of this Expedition of Batu Chan into Russia, asked the Russians what Nation those People were of; and that these answered them they were Nemetzki: It may be these were really Allemands who came to the Assistance of the Russians, or that those People having heard say the Allemands were a very warlike Nation, meant to frighten the Tatars by so formidable a Name. Whereupon these last might have believed in good earnest that this was the Name of that Nation.*

[But if the Tatars were to be frighted by the Name of Nemetz, it shew'd that they were acquainted with it before, and so that could not be the way they came by it. The Arabs call Germany Nemsiyah, which differs very little from Nemets; but whether they had it from the Tatars, or the Tatars it from them, I cannot at present determine. Upon this occasion it would be of use to know if the several Branches of European Tatars give the Germans that Name; for if they do, I should be inclin'd to think it was a Name known long before the Expedition of Batu, to the Tatars, who have always had a Correspondence with Europe, and from time to time swarmed into it, as compelled by the necessity of Want or Force.]

them.



themselves to flight, with the Loss of 70000 of their best Troops.

After this great Victory, *Batu Sagin Chan* presents having advanced a great way farther within the <sup>from</sup> Enemies Country, took divers Cities and Pro- <sup>Orda and</sup> vinces belonging to those Nations, and at length <sup>Batu to</sup> returned into his hereditary Dominions, loaded <sup>Sheybani.</sup> with Riches and Glory. After which *Orda*, surnamed *Itzen*, eldest Son of *Zuzi Chan*, thinking himself in some manner obliged to reward the good Services of his Brother *Sheybani*, made him a Present of 15000 Families; but it is not known from what Nation or Tribe those Families deriv'd their Original. *Batu Sagin Chan* likewise made great Presents to *Sheybani*, and gave him all the Places conquer'd from the Allies of the *Urusses*, with as many of his Subjects of the Tribes of the *Kurifs*, *Naimanns*, <sup>Tribes gi-</sup> *Carliks* and *Vigurs*, as were necessary for the <sup>ven by</sup> Guard of those Towns, and the Support of <sup>Batu</sup> his Court. But on condition that he himself <sup>Chan to</sup> should settle in his Neighbourhood in the Lands <sup>Sheybani</sup> <sup>Chan.</sup> which were situate between the Provinces of his Dominions, and the Lands of *Orda-Itzen*; and that to this end, he should pass the Summer about the Mountains of *Arall*, and the River *Jaigik*, all that Country being very agreeable in that Season; and that in the Winter he should reside about \* *Carakum*, *Arakum*, and towards the Banks of the Rivers *Sirr* and *Saresu*, which are Countries more to the South. Whereupon *Sheybani Chan* sent one of his Sons, whose Name is not known, with several useful Officers and good Troops to possess the *Urussian* and *Nemetzian* Cities, which had been made a Present to him; and the said Son of *Sheybani*

[\* Not the *Carakum*, p. 151. which is in the East, but some desert of black Sand, as *Carakum* signifies, in the West.]



*Chan*, having established himself in those Provinces, dwelt there from that time forward, and his Descendants after him; but because of the great Distance of the Places, I cannot precisely tell whereabouts it was: Nevertheless 'tis reported, that the *Chans* of the *Nemetzs* are sprung from that Branch of the Descendants of *Sheybani Chan*\*.



## CHAP. II.

*Of the Descendants of Sheybani Chan,  
down to Jadigar Chan.*

*Sheybani Chan* dying in the afore-mention'd Countries which his Brother *Batu Sagin Chan* had granted to him about the Rivers of *Faigig* and *Sirr*, left twelve Sons, of which the Names are as follows; 1. *Bainal*, 2. *Bayadur*, 3. *Carak*, 4. *Balka*, 5. *Zirik*, 6. *Mergan*, 7. *Kurtga*, 8. *Ajazi*, 9. *Sagilgan*, 10. *Bajandsar*, 11. *Madfar*, 12. *Conzi*: But *Bayadur* his second Son inherited the Dominions of his Father after his Death.

Bayadur  
Chan.

Zuzi Buga  
Chan.

*Bayadur Chan* had two Sons, the eldest of which was called *Zuzi-buga*, and the youngest *Kutleg-buga*. *Zuzi-buga* reigned after the death of his Father, and had four Sons; 1. *Badakull*,

\* Our Author has been misinformed upon this Head; for we have too certain a Knowledge of the Origin and Succession of the sovereign Houses of *Allemain* [Germany] to be in any doubt thereupon; but I don't say the same of the Succession of the Kings of Hungary, and that of the great Dukes of *Lithuania*, where there may have been a mixture of the Tatar Blood, without our being informed of it.

2. *Bik*



2. *Bik Timur*, 3. *Jancazar*, 4. *Jessu-buga-Ba-*<sup>Badakull</sup>  
*dakull* succeeded his Father, and had only one <sup>Chan.</sup>  
Son named *Mengu Timur*; but because he was <sup>Mengu</sup>  
full of Wit and Courage, he was never called <sup>Timur</sup>  
other than *Kutluk Mengu Timur*. <sup>Chan.</sup> *Mengu Timur*  
*Chan* had six Sons; 1. *Iljak*, 2. *Djanta*, 3.  
*Fulat*, 4. *Siuntz*, 5. *Temur-bunga*, 6. *Bekkondi*.

'Tis from the Posterity of this last that *Kut-* <sup>Kutziium</sup>  
*ziium Chan*, who was the last of the Descendants <sup>Chan of</sup>  
of *Sheybani Chan*, who reigned in the Country of <sup>Tura.</sup> *Turan*, [*Tura*] deriv'd his Origin. He became blind  
in his old Age, after having reigned forty Years  
in that Country, and the *Urusses* having at that  
time invaded his Dominions, constrained him  
in the Year 1003 to save himself by Flight; <sup>An. Dom.</sup>  
and since that time the greatest part of the <sup>1594.</sup>  
Country of *Turan* [*Tura*] has been possessed by the  
*Urusses*. *Kutziium Chan* was the Son of *Murta-* <sup>Kutziium</sup>  
*sa Chan*, Son of *Mamudak Chan*, Son of *Had-* <sup>Chan's</sup>  
*sim Mahomet Chan*, Son of *Aly Oglan*, Son of <sup>Pedigree.</sup>  
the afore said *Bekkondi*, the Son of *Mengu Ti-*  
*mur Chan*. After he had been driven out of  
his Dominions by the *Urusses*, he took Refuge \* <sup>or Cara</sup>  
among the *Mankatts*\*, where at length he died. <sup>Kalpaks.</sup>

*Mengu Timur Chan* dying, *Fulat* his third <sup>Fulat</sup>  
Son obtained the Possession of his Father's <sup>Chan.</sup>  
Dominions, and had two Sons, named *Daulat*  
*Sheich Oglan*, and *Arab Shab*, who divided be-  
tween them their Father's Dominions after his  
decease, and dwelt in Summer towards the Banks <sup>Daulat</sup>  
of the River *Jaigik*, and in Winter about the <sup>Sheich</sup>  
River *Sirr*. <sup>Oglan.</sup>

*Daulat Sheich Oglan*, had a Son called *Abul-* <sup>Shaba-</sup>  
*gair Chan*, who made himself formidable to all <sup>dacht Sul-</sup>  
his Neighbours. He had 11 Sons, of which <sup>tan.</sup>  
the eldest was called *Shabadach Sultan*, who had

\* [In all likelihood it ought to be *Tura*, for Reasons given  
in the Second Part.]



Obeit  
Chan of  
Great Bu-  
charia.

Iskander  
Chan.

Abdulla  
Chan.  
Abdullmu-  
min Chan.

Hagi  
Taulai.  
Timur  
Sheich  
Chan.

Invaded  
and killed  
by the  
Callmaks.

Leaves his  
Widow.  
with  
Child.

two Sons; the eldest called *Mahamet*, surnamed *Shabacht*, of whom we shall speak hereafter; and the youngest, *Mahamet Sultan*, who had a Son called *Obeit Chan*, who reigned in *Great Bucharia*. The second Son of the aforementioned *Abulgair Chan*, was called *Chodsa Mahomet*; but the *Usbeks* named him *Chodsa Amtintak*, because he was exceeding foolish. His Son *Dzanibek* was at least as foolish as his Father, and the Son of *Dzanibek*, called *Iskander Chan*, was no less so than his Father and Grandfather; but he was at the same time very devout, and made Hunting and Hawking his only Employment. His Son was *Abdulla Chan*, whose Son *Abdullmomin Chan*, was the last of that Branch of the Descendants of *Sheybani Chan*. We shall have occasion to speak more particularly in the following Book of these two last Princes, who reigned since in *Great Bucharia*.

*Arab Schah*, youngest Brother of *Daulat Sheich Oglan*, and Son of *Fulat*, dying, his Son *Hadsi Taulai* succeeded him, and had his Son *Timur Sheich* for his Successor. *Timur Sheich Chan* was a Prince of great hopes, but he lived but a short while; for the *Callmaks*, to the number of 2000 Men, having made an Incursion into his Lands, ruined many Habitations, and carry'd great numbers of his Subjects into slavery. Upon advice of this *Timur Sheich Chan* follow'd them with so few of his Men, that having overtaken and attack'd the *Callmaks*, with a Courage worthy a better Destiny, he there lost his Life, with all his Followers.

In regard he died in the Flower of his Age without leaving Heirs behind him, Numbers of his Subjects retired towards the other Princes; insomuch that it happen'd in the end, that the Widow of the *Chan*, who was with Child with-



out any body knowing of it, had none left with her but the *Vigurs* only; who seeing that all the other Subjects of the deceased *Chan* were gone, some one way, some another, came also to take their leave of the Widow of the *Chan*; assuring her however, that if there could be found any Slave of their deceased Master who was with Child by him, they would not depart. Whereupon the Widow of the *Chan* having protested that she herself was three Months gone, the *Vigurs* agreed among themselves not to leave her in that Condition. At this News the *Naimanns*, without returning or putting themselves under the Subjection of any other Prince, resolved to wait in the Place where they then were, for the Delivery of the Widow of their deceased *Chan*, that they might have it in their Power to take their Measures according as she should bring forth a Son or a Daughter.

In the mean time the Widow of *Timur Sheich Chan* having been brought to Bed of a Son, who was called *Jadigar*, the *Vigurs* dispatch'd a Courier immediately to the *Naimanns* with that News; which gave so much Joy to these last, that having made the Courier a Present of a good black Horse, they all return'd to put themselves under the Obedience of their new Master. At their Return, the *Vigurs* having given them the Left hand, in token of the Joy they conceived at seeing them return and join them again, that Complaisance has ever since passed into a Custom between those two Tribes; insomuch that at present, every time the *Naimanns* meet the *Vigurs*, the first always take the Left-hand from the last. Those two Tribes afterwards preserv'd an inviolable Fidelity towards their young Prince.



## C H A P. III.

## Of Burga Sultan, Son of Jadigar Chan.

**J**adigar Chan had four Sons; the first was named *Burga Sultan*, the second *Abulak*, the third *Amunak*, and the fourth *Abak*. *Burga Sultan*, the eldest of these four Brothers, was a Prince of much Courage; his Breast was not like that of other Men, inasmuch as it was form'd of one single broad Bone. He lived in the time of *Abulgair Chan*, Son of *Daulat Sheich Oglan*, eldest Brother of *Arab Shah*; but *Abulgair Chan* was much older than he.

Revolution  
in Ma-war-  
al-nahr.

There was at that time in the Country of *Ma-urenner*, a Prince of the Posterity of *Amir Timur*, called *Abusait Mirsa*; who after he had slain another Prince of the same Family, called *Abdullatif Mirsa*, overrun the whole Country, and had constrained his Son *Mirsa Mahamet Zuki* to fly to *Abulgair Chan* for Refuge, who received him very well, in consideration that his Wife was paternal Aunt of *Mirsa Mahamet Zuki*. Some time after his Arrival at the Court of *Abulgair Chan*, the News was spread abroad that *Abusait Mirsa* had march'd with all his Forces towards the Province of *Chorassan*, and that from thence he had passed forward into the Country of *Masanderan*, after having intrusted the Government of *Ma-urenner* to a certain Lord of the Tribe of the *Arlats*, called *Amir Masiet*.

Upon this News, *Mirsa Mahamet Zuki*, unwilling to let slip so favourable an Opportunity without trying to benefit by it, press'd *Abulgair* so earnestly to assist him with Troops on this occasion,



occasion, that the *Chan* suffering himself at length to be overcome by his Intreaties, sent for *Burga Sultan*, in whom he had great Confidence, and desir'd him to take on him the Command of his Troops in this Expedition. *Burga Sultan* having accepted the Proposal of *Abulgair Chan*, this Prince gave him an Army of 30000 Men; at the Head of which he and *Mirsa Mahamet Zuki* march'd towards the Town of *Tash-kant*, which opened its Gates without making the least Resistance. From thence they proceeded to the Town of *Shahirochoya*, which they also took in a short time; after which they passed the River *Sirr*, and turn'd towards *Samar-kant*. Tashkant under the Chans of Ma-war-al-nahr. Shahro-kya.

At the News of their Approach, the Governor of this City having taken the Field with what Troops he was able to get together, went to meet them, and offer'd them Battle. *Burga Sultan* and *Mirsa Mahamet Zuki*, who burnt with Desire to gain by the Absence of *Abusait Mirsa*, took care not to refuse him. On this Occasion *Burga Sultan* put himself at the head of the left Wing of the Army, one of the Generals of *Abulgair Chan*, named *Kishkan Oglan*, commanded the Right, and *Mirsa Mahamet Zuki* placed himself in the Center; and in this Disposition they charged the Troops of *Abusait Mirsa* so briskly, that they entirely defeated them, and constrained *Amir Masiet* to retreat back into the City of *Samarkant*; from whence he immediately sent a Courier into the Country of *Masanderan* to inform *Abusait Mirsa* of the bad Posture of his Affairs. Ma-war-al-nahr overrun by the Usbeks.

At so unexpected a piece of News, *Abusait Mirsa* immediately drew together all his Forces and marched towards *Great Bucharia*. In the mean while *Burga Sultan*, and *Mirsa Ma-*



*hamet Zuki*, having turned aside from the Road to *Samarkant*, had taken all the Towns of the Countries of *Cuzin*, *Carmina*, and of *Ma-urenner*, except the Cities of *Samarkant* and *Buchara*, which they durst not attempt. Understanding afterwards that *Abusait Mirsa* advanced towards *Balck*, *Burga Sultan* thought it advisable, that since they were Masters of the Country of *Tashkant*, *Turkestan* and *Ma-urenner*, and that they might depend upon the Affections of the Inhabitants of the Country, they ought by all means to avoid coming to a Battle with *Abusait Mirsa*; and that it was necessary for that end to take Possession of the Banks of the River *Amu*, in order to dispute with him the Passage of it, which would terribly embarrass the Enemy, and oblige *Abusait Mirsa* to expose his whole Army to almost a sure Defeat, in case he should attempt to pass the River in their Presence. But the Lords of the Country who sided with *Mirsa Mahamet Zuki*, having been of opinion that it was better for them to repass the River *Sirr*, and get into the Town of *Shabirokoya*, he took this last Advice in spite of all the Opposition of *Burga Sultan*; which having spread a Fear thro' their Troops, a great number of their Soldiers left the Army to go over to *Abusait Mirsa*. *Burga Sultan* seeing the bad Consequences of the Advice which had prevailed over the good Council he had given, was troubled at it, and pursuing after the Deserters, put to the Sword as many of them as fell into his hands; and having distributed their Cattle among the rest of his Troops, return'd into his own Dominions: But *Mirsa Mahamet Zuki* went with his Followers, and shut himself up in the Town of *Shabirokoya*.

*Abusait*



Abufait  
Mirfa  
*recovers*  
Ma-war  
al-nahr.

An. Dom.  
1455.

P. 4



continued his March forwards, notwithstanding the Condition of his Army grew worse and worse every Day the farther they went; *Musabi* himself went to him at last, and conjured him not to destroy himself and so many brave Men for sake of him, because it was not abandoning the Enterprize to put it off till next Spring. But *Burga Sultan* stuck to his Resolution, and maugre all that *Musabi* and his Officers could urge to him, they could get no more from him than a Promise, that he would turn back, in case after two days march they heard no News of the Enemy.

Having afterwards continued their March, they were obliged to pass a high Mountain, from the top of which *Burga Sultan* having discover'd Troops marching in the Valleys which were on the other side of that Mountain, he made his Army halt, and sent two Spies to get Intelligence, who soon return'd to carry him the News that it was the whole Army of *Chodasab Mirsa* which he saw, and that they came to know it by a Prisoner of the Enemy, whom at the same time they presented before him. Upon which *Burga Sultan* immediately advancing with his Troops, attackt the Enemy so briskly, that he intirely defeated them. *Chodasab Mirsa* having been kill'd in this Action, with a great number of his Men, all the rest of his Army were either dispersed or taken Prisoners, and the Daughter of *Chodasab Mirsa*, called *Malai Chansada*, being found among the Captives, *Burga Sultan* marry'd her. After this Victory he took up his Winter Quarters thereabouts, and the Spring following return'd into his own Dominions.



C H A P. IV.

Of the Death of Abulgair Chan, and also  
of Burga Sultan.

**I**N the mean while *Abulgair Chan* was become so formidable to all the Princes his Neighbours, that they concluded they had reason to take Umbrage at his Power, and to join altogether against him. In consequence of which they declar'd War against that Prince, and Fortune having decided in favour of the greater Number, they put to death *Abulgair Chan*, with some of his Children who had fallen into their hands; which obliged the rest of his Children to save themselves by Flight.

On this occasion *Burga Sultan* being willing to fish in troubled Water, appropriated to himself some Lands and Subjects belonging to the Domains of *Abulgair Chan*, notwithstanding the great Friendship which had always subsisted between them, and that Action cost him his Life; for some Years after *Shabacht Sultan*, Grandson of *Abulgair Chan*, returning into the Dominions of his Grandfather, all the antient Subjects of that Prince came and submitted themselves to him. *Shabacht Sultan* having thus re-enter'd into Possession of his Patrimony, did not in any wise seem to call to mind the Reasons which he had to complain of *Burga Sultan*, and always lived in good Understanding with him, dissembling his Resentment, persuaded as he was, that Time would not fail to furnish him with some proper Opportunity to be revenged of him.

At



Shabacht  
surprizes  
Burga  
Sultan in  
his Camp.

Burga Sul-  
tan hides  
himself in  
a Pond.

One pers-  
nates  
Burga  
Sultan.

At length one day that *Burga Sultan* had fixt his Winters Camp pretty near his own, towards the Banks of the River *Sirr*, *Shabacht Sultan* gave Orders to a good Number of his People to attend him, in order to accompany him next day at a great Hunting Match: but marching all of a sudden about Midnight, he turn'd towards the Camp of *Burga Sultan*, and declar'd on the way, to his Soldiers, that he was going to attack that Prince, expressly commanding them not to fall to plundering when they enter'd the Camp of *Burga Sultan*; but to endeavour above all things, to secure the Person of that Prince. Having at length arriv'd at the Camp of *Burga Sultan*, by Day-break, he press'd forwards directly to his Tents, and caused them to be search'd thoroughly for him, but he could not be found; notwithstanding his People all affirm'd, that he was there the very Moment before the Arrival of *Shabacht Sultan*; but the truth was, that *Burga Sultan* hearing the Noise of the Troops which advanced towards his Tents, jumped out of Bed, where he was then actually lying, and wrapping himself naked as he was in a Robe of Zibelines which was at hand, had gone out of the Tent on the side opposite to that by which the Soldiers of *Shabacht Sultan* at the same time had enter'd; having afterwards reach'd a great Pond which was a little way from his Camp, he hid himself among the Weeds, which in great quantities cover'd the sides of the Pond; and on that occasion he had the ill luck to wound himself so deeply in the Foot, that he had much ado to stop the Blood.

In the mean time *Shabacht Sultan* having detach'd some of his Men to pursue those who had escaped, they took among others a Man of Distinction of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, called *Munga*;



*Munga*; and having inquired of him who he was, he answer'd that he was *Burga Sultan* whom they sought after. Upon this Reply, they brought him immediately before their Master, concluding it was actually *Burga Sultan* whom they had taken; but *Shabacht Sultan* having quickly perceived the Deceit, was curious to know the Reason why that Man had taken the Name of his Master; and having examined him thereupon himself, he made answer, "I have so many Obligations to *Burga Sultan*, that I think I ought to risk any thing on this occasion to deliver him out of Danger; not doubting but as soon as your Men should believe they had found that Prince, they would all return to the Camp, which might give him an Opportunity of making himself secure in case he was not so already." This Answer exceedingly pleased *Shabacht Sultan*, and gave him a high Idea of the Virtue of that Man. Nevertheless he did not fail to send Men to search over again for *Burga Sultan*; and as it had snow'd that Night, some of those Men happen'd to observe the Tracks of a Man who had gone bare-foot, and having constantly follow'd those Tracks, they found at length Drops of Blood, which brought them to the Place where he lay hid among the Reeds. Whereupon they immediately gave Advice of their Seizure to *Shabacht Sultan*; who after being convinced by his own Eyes that they were not deceived a second time, commanded that he should be immediately put to death, and seized of all his Subject, which happen'd in the Year 886. *An. Dom.*

*Chodsa Mahamet Sultan*, the Son of *Abulgair* 1481.  
*Chan*, who had accompany'd his Nephew in this Expedition, espoused the Widow of *Burga Sultan*, Daughter of the afore-mentioned *Chodsa Mirsa*,



*sa*, called *Malai Chansada*. This is the same of whom we have observ'd above, that he was so foolish, that they had given him the Name of *Chodsa Amtintak*; and tho all the World knew that the Widow of *Burga Sultan* was with Child at the Death of her Husband, yet he was willing to have it thought that the Boy which she was at length deliver'd of, and who was called *Dzanibek*, was his Son. *Dzanibek* took at least this from *Chodsa Mahamet Sultan*, that he was as foolish as he, and his Son *Iskander* was never a whit the wiser; but *Abdulla Chan*, the Son of *Iskander*, and *Abdalmomin*, the Son of *Abdulla Chan*, were both Men of good Parts.

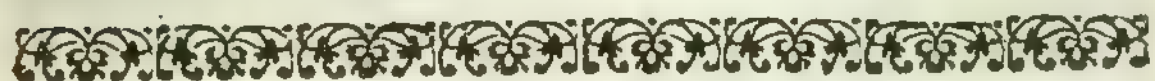






PART IX.

Which contains the History of the Descendants of *Sheybani Chan*, who have reigned in the Country of *Charafs'm*.



CHAP. I.

Of *Ilbars Chan*, and *Bilbars Sultan*, who were the first Princes of the Descendants of *Sheybani Chan*, who reigned in the Country of *Charafs'm*.

**B**urga Sultan was the Son of *Jadigar Chan*,<sup>Burga</sup>  
the Son of *Timur Shrich Chan*, the Son of <sup>Sultan's</sup>  
*Hadfi Taulai*, the Son of *Arabshah*, the Son <sup>Genealogy.</sup>  
of *Fulat*, the Son of *Mengu Timur Chan*,  
the Son of *Badakall*, the Son of *Zuzi Buga*,  
the Son of *Bayadur Chan*, the Son of *Sheybani Chan*. He left at his Death two Sons, the first called *Ilbars*, and the second *Bilbars*; the latter was also called *Bilicatz*, because in his Youth he had so severe a Fit of Sicknefs, that he lost the use of his Feet ever after; which is called *Bilicatz* in the *Mogull Language*. These two Brothers were very brave, and lived in the Lands belonging to their Father's Dominions as private Men.

In



Ma-war-  
al-nahr  
subdu-  
ed by Sha-  
bacht.

Chorasan  
conquered  
by Sha-  
bacht.

Urgens  
First pos-  
sessed by  
the Uz-  
beks.

Revoluti-  
on.  
Shah Isma-  
el.

In the mean time, *Shabacht Sultan* having considerably augmented his Forces by a long Train of Victories over all the neighbouring Princes, enter'd with a numerous Army into the Country of *Ma-urenner*, and made himself Master of it, after having driven from thence the *Descendants* of *Amir Timur*; but the Children of *Burga Sultan* continued where they were\*.

Much about the same time that *Shabacht Sultan* conquer'd *Ma-urenner*, *Sultan Hussain Mirsa*, who was likewise descended from the Posterity of *Amir Timur*, reigned in the Country of *Chorassan*; but happening to die some Years after this Event, *Shabacht Sultan* enter'd his Dominions with a powerful Army, and having conquer'd the best part of them, caused all to be slain of the Family of *Sultan Hussain Mirsa* that fell into his hands; insomuch that as numerous as that Family had been but a little while before, scarce two or three of them escaped the hands of *Shabacht Sultan*; and as the Town of *Urgens* had in like manner been under the Dominion of *Sultan Hussain Mirsa*, *Shabacht Sultan* did not fail to go thither also, and establish there another Governor after he had taken it.

Five or six years after this second Revolution, *Shah Ismael* of *Persia* having enter'd at the Head of a numerous Army into those Provinces, *Shabacht Sultan* went and gave him Battle near the Town of *Meru*; but so unfortunately for himself, that he there lost his Life, together with the greatest part of his Army. The Governor who commanded at *Urgens* for *Shabacht*

[\* *Mirsa Babor*, after driven thence settled in India, and was the first Mogull that reigned there.]

*Sultan,*



Sultan, hearing of this Misfortune, quitted the Town immediately, and fled elsewhere\*.

\* After the Persians, in conjunction with the Oriental Turkmans, had driven the Descendants of Tamerlan out of Persia, immediately after the Death of that Conqueror; under the Conduct of Cara Machmat, Persia fell into horrible Confusion, which continued till Ussum Cassan [Uzun Hassan] at length obtained the Throne, and established the Monarchy of Persia in its former lustre: but after his Death, which happen'd in the Year 1484, [1478] that Kingdom relapsed into the same Disorder, which ceased not till towards the beginning of the 16th Age, when Shah Ismael possessed himself of the Monarchy of Persia.

Shah Ismael was Grandson by his Mother to Ussum Cassan, [Uzun Hassan] King of Persia, and by his Father, Grandson of one of the Grandsons of Sheich Sefi, who lived in Reputation of great Sanctity in the Town of Ardevil, in the Time of Tamerlan, [Amir Timur] and pretended to be descended in a right Line from Ali, Son-in-Law to Mahomet; 'tis for that reason that all his Descendants took the Quality of Sheich, down to Shah Ismael; who was the last of that Family which bore that Title. 'Tis true, his Father Sheich Aidir, who was great great Grandson of Sheich Sefi, had before attempted to seize the Crown of Persia, as being Son-in-Law to Ussum Cassan; but he lost his Life on that Occasion, and left at his Death his Son Sheich Ismael so young, that all that he was able to do for himself in such bad Circumstances, was to escape into the Province of Kilan, to an old Friend of his Father's, who put him in a way afterwards of being followed by great numbers of People, and of making himself at last Master of all Persia, which happened about the Year 1502. After which he exchanged the Title of Sheich, for that of Shah, and his Descendants have ever since preserved that Title with much care.

Shah Ismael died in the City of Caswin in the Year 1525, aged 45 Years, and his Corps was laid in the Tomb of Sheich Sefi, his great great Grandfather at Ardevil, where most of the Kings of Persia of his Race have since chosen to be interred. All the Kings who have reigned in Persia since Shah Ismael, have been of the Family of the Sofi's, and of the Posterity of that Prince.

The present King of Persia is called Shah Tamas II. and by the Course of Affairs in those Parts, he will probably be the last King of Persia, of the House of the Sofi's.

Shah



Chow-  
razm  
subject to  
Persia.

Policy of  
the Cady  
Umar.

*Shah Ismael* having conquer'd all the Towns of the Country of *Chorassan*, establish'd his Residence in those Provinces, and sent three of his Officers into the Country of *Charass'm*, giving to one of them the Government of the Towns of *Chajuk* and *Hassarassap*; to another the Government of the City of *Urgens*, and to the third that of the Town of *Vasir*. The Governors of the Towns of *Urgens* and *Vasir* were two Brothers, *Arabs* by Extraction; one of which, who had the Government of the Town of *Urgens*, was called *Subhanculi*, and the other *Rachmanculi*. *Rachmanculi*, to whom the Government of *Vasir* had fallen, upon his Arrival in that Town gave a magnificent Feast to all the principal Inhabitants thereof, and made them handsome Presents on that Occasion. The Cady of the Town called *Umar*, who was a Man of much Conduct and exemplary Life, was the only one who absented himself from that Entertainment, and dispensed also with going to see the new Governor under pretence of an Indisposition which obliged him to keep his Bed: But the Day after that Feast, he sent for five or six of the principal of those who had been there desiring to speak with them; and having complimented them on the Favours which the new Governor did them, he added, that after accepting his Presents, he did not doubt but they were disposed to accept of his Religion: at which they appearing much surprized, he asked them if they were ignorant what Religion the *Persians* were of? Whereupon they answer'd him, they knew not what he meant by his new Religion, seeing the *Persians* were of the same Religion with themselves, and that all the Governors which came among them till that time from *Chorassan*, had been of their own Profes-



Profession. Then the Cady inform'd them that <sup>His Speech</sup> it was about thirteen Years since *Shah Ismael* <sup>to the principal</sup> had chang'd the Religion, and introduced into <sup>Inhabi-</sup> his Dominions Opinions which ought to create <sup>tants of</sup> Horror in every faithful *Mahometan*; that it <sup>Vasir.</sup> was plainly because he had so few Troops in the City, that the Governor concealed his Religion as yet; but that they might take it for granted he would not dissemble when he should be better supported; that he would begin with them as the most considerable among the Inhabitants of the Town, to introduce the Changes in Religion, which without doubt he intended; to the end that by their Example the common People might the more easily be drawn in to give their Consent: That for his part, he thought it his Duty to warn them of it, to the end they should take heed what they did; considering the imminent Danger to which Religion was expos'd on that Occasion.

Two years after, the principal Inhabitants of <sup>Inhabi-</sup> the Town of *Vasir*, went to the Country of <sup>tants of</sup> *Bakirgan* to find a Man of their Religion of the <sup>Vasir re-</sup> Tribe of *Sagidatta*, who had a very extraordi- <sup>solve to</sup> nary Reputation for Probity and Virtue, and <sup>choose a</sup> propos'd to him their Resolution to proclaim him *Chan*, and cut the Throats of the *Persians* who were in Garison in their City. But that holy Man, called *Haisamudin Catal*, refused to accept of those Offers, saying, that if they would be advised by him, he would propose to them a Prince of the Blood of *Zingis Chan*, who would suit them much better than he, and that in a word it was *Ilbars*, the Son of *Burga Sultan*, who lived among the *Usbeks*\*, that he meant; that he had frequent Opportunities of seeing him in the

[\* The Usbeks inhabited then all Kipzak, from the Sirt to the Irdis.]



Country  
of the  
Usbecks.

Journeys which he made every Year into the Country of the *Usbecks*, to receive the Charities of several good People who were disposed to give it him; and that he could assure them that Prince wanted neither Conduct nor Courage to defend them bravely, if ever there should be occasion. Upon this Advice, those of *Vasir* dispatch'd two of the principal Inhabitants of the Town to *Ilbars* with a Letter of Invitation, desiring him to repair to *Vasir*; and the holy Man order'd one of his People who was known to *Ilbars* to accompany those Deputies.

*Ilbars ac-*  
*cepts their*  
*Invitation.*

As soon as that Prince had received the afore-said Letter, and understood the Commission of the Deputies, he sent them back directly with this Answer, That he would follow them immediately and bring his Brother *Bilbars* along with him. The Deputies having return'd with this News, 'twas thought advisable to send a new two other Deputies to meet *Ilbars*, to tell him that it was not his best way to enter directly into the Town, but that he should stop at a certain Place in the Neighbourhood without being discover'd, and that they would come to him, when it would be proper time. These Deputies having also return'd after settling every thing with *Ilbars*, the Chiefs of the Conspiracy, who were the principal Lords of *Vasir*, made the Inhabitants take up Arms; and having caused the Gates to be shut, they cut the Throats of the *Persian* Governor and all his Men, excepting one, who was so well hid that they could not find him. The Day after this Adventure they all went out to meet *Ilbars*, and the *Usbecks* as well as the *Sarts* having received him with a great deal of Joy, they solemnly proclaimed him their *Chan* with the universal Approbation

Proclaim'd  
Chan at  
Vasir.



probation of all the Assistants, which happen'd Ann. Dom. 1505.  
in the Year 911, called *Koi*, or the *Sheep*.

The Town of *Vasir* heretofore had several other Towns under its Jurisdiction, but the late Wars had separated most of them from it; infomuch that there were only the Towns of *Jangisbar* and *Tarsak* which depended on it. *Ilbars Chan* gave *Jangisbar* to his Brother *Bilbars*, and placed a trusty Officer as Commander in *Tarsak*. He that govern'd there for the *Persians* having found means to escape the Massacre of the Garison of *Vasir*, was still fortunate enough to get out of Town in the Evening without being observ'd by any body. After which he fled directly to *Urgens*, to give an Account to the Governor of the Misfortune which had happen'd to his Brother.

Upon so unexpected News, *Subhanculi* caused all the principal Inhabitants of the City of *Urgens* to meet before him; and having imparted to them the Manner in which those of *Vasir* had treated his Brother, with all his Garison, he added, "That seeing he had already had the Government of *Urgens* for several Years, and that he believed he had not given them the least reason to complain of him; as also they on their side had always behaved themselves very well towards him, he address'd himself without Ceremony to them, to know their Opinion in this Juncture; that if they were weary of submitting to his Orders, and wish'd for a Change, they might freely disclose their Minds to him, because he did not intend at all to be a Charge to them, or to reside in their Town against their Wills; but that if they would continue their Good-will to him, he was content to stay among them."

Whereupon they unanimously answer'd, "That

Governor of Urgens's Speech to the Inhabitants.

Their Answer.



Resolve to  
adhere to  
Shah Is-  
mael.

Governor  
of Urgens  
sends a  
Spy to Va-  
fir.

“ *Shah Ismael*, whom all the other Towns of  
“ *Irak* and *Chorassan* obey’d, being a good  
“ Master, and that having nothing to com-  
“ plain of him who was Governor for that  
“ Prince in their City, they desired he would  
“ continue to reside among them in that Qua-  
“ lity, to prevent both himself and them from  
“ being accountable to the *Shah*, in case he  
“ quitted the Town without being obliged by  
“ a greater Force : That they were very far  
“ from giving him the least occasion of Dis-  
“ satisfaction, being firmly resolv’d to preserve  
“ an inviolable Fidelity towards the *Shah* : that  
“ as to what pass’d at *Vasir*, they were very  
“ sorry for the Loss which he had of his Bro-  
“ ther upon that Occasion ; but for the rest,  
“ that Affair needed not give him any uneasi-  
“ ness : that there was all the Probability in the  
“ World that this new *Chan* would not continue  
“ long, and that the *Usbecks* were naturally so  
“ unconstant that they would soon leave him in  
“ the Lurch, if worse did not happen to him.”

Upon these Assurances, the Governor having  
desired that they might promise by Oath to as-  
sist him in case he came to be attack’d by the  
*Usbecks*, they took that Oath with a great deal  
of readiness. After which having made choice  
of one of the Inhabitants of the Town, whose  
Fidelity he had try’d, he promis’d him as much  
Silver as would load a Horse, in case he would  
go to *Vasir* and inform himself exactly of the  
Condition Affairs were in there, and bring him  
a faithful Account of them. But to be better  
assured of this Man, he obliged him before-  
hand to embrace his Religion ; after which, ha-  
ving given him Money sufficient, he caused him  
to depart for *Vasir*. This Man having at his  
Return made a Report entirely agreeing with  
the



the Relation of the *Persian* who had escaped from the Massacre of *Vasir*, he took diligent care to put himself in a Condition of Defense.

Three Months after, *Ilbars Chan* having drawn near to *Urgens* with an Army, the Governor *Subhanculi* went to meet him with his Men; but having been beaten in that Action, the Troops of *Ilbars Chan* pursued him so hotly, that they enter'd the Town pell-mell with the Fugitives, and made themselves Masters of it after having put to the Sword the Governor, with all the Garison and the principal Inhabitants of the Town. After which *Ilbars Chan* sent for his Wives and Children to *Urgens*, and there established his Residence for the time to come. The *Persian* Governor, who was at *Hassarasap*, having taken the same Measures for the Preservation of his Place, as *Subhanculi* had done at *Urgens*; the Inhabitants of the Town promised him likewise all Fidelity and Assistance.

In the mean time *Ilbars Chan* finding he had not Men enough to defend his Conquests, inasmuch as most of the Subjects of his House were under the Obedience of his Uncles, by the Father's side, he deliberated with the principal of his Party, whether it would not be best to send for the Children of his Uncles with their Subjects, by that means to augment his Forces; and the Majority having been of opinion, that the more there came the better; only one of the common People of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, who by chance was at that Conference, opposed it strenuously; representing to the Assembly, that it was a favourite Maxim of Sovereigns, who would preserve Peace to themselves, to keep their Relations at a distance from the Provinces of their Dominions; to the end that if there should happen to be some restless Spirits among



them, they should not be in a Situation to be able to disturb the Tranquillity of the State. But the *Chan* and the Lords of his Council persuaded that it was nothing but the Hatred which that Man bore to the Children of *Abulak* and *Amunak*, which inspir'd him with that Opinion, they took the Liberty with which he had expressed himself very heinously; and after having reproach'd him that his Discourse tended to create a Misunderstanding among so near Relations; they added, that they ought to rid themselves in good time of such sort of Men, in order to prevent their kindling Discord among them in the time to come.

*Invites the  
Posterity  
of Jadigar  
Chan into  
Chowara-  
razm.*

In regard the four Sons of *Jadigar Chan* were at that time dead, and that only their Children were living; *Ilbars Chan* pursuant to the Advice of the Lords of his Council, gave them to understand, that he had been so happy as to obtain the Possession of the Towns of *Vasir* and *Urgens*; but that those of *Hassarassap* and *Chajuk* were still in the Hands of the *Persians*; that he had already try'd to dislodge them, and had taken all the other Towns of those Provinces if he had not wanted Men; and that it was for this reason that he invited them to come with their Subjects and share in the Conquest of so fine a Country, where they would find Towns remaining for them to settle in.

*Ilbars re-  
turns to  
reside at  
Vasir.*

As soon as the Son of *Abulak* and the six Sons of *Amunak* had receiv'd these Tidings, they repaired off-hand to *Ilbars Chan*, who gave up to them the Town of *Urgens* and its Dependencies, and return'd to reside at *Vasir*: after which those newly arrived Princes sent out every Day great Parties to scour the Country about *Chajuk* and *Hassarassap*; which so incommoded the *Persians* that were in Garison in those two Places,



Places, that not daring either to stir out themselves, nor send their Cattle to the neighbouring Pastures, they were at length constrained to abandon those Towns and retire into their own Country; after which the Princes having seized the Towns which the *Persians* had forsaken, they carry'd the War into the Province of *Chorassan*; where after the Death of *Shah Ismael*, they handled the *Persians* so roughly, who were in possession of the Towns of that Province, that besides the two fore-mention'd Towns of the Country of *Charass'm*, they obliged them to quit all the Towns situate between the Country of *Durubn* and the Mountains which are to the West of the Town of *Chorassan*, without daring to keep any of them, so much had Fear seized them. But the *Turkmanns*, who possessed the Towns which are on the Confines of the Countries of *Istarabath* and *Chorassan* towards the Frontiers of the Towns of *Abulchan* and *Man-kischlak*, vigorously oppos'd the Princes, and were always fighting with them, notwithstanding that some of them had submitted to them.

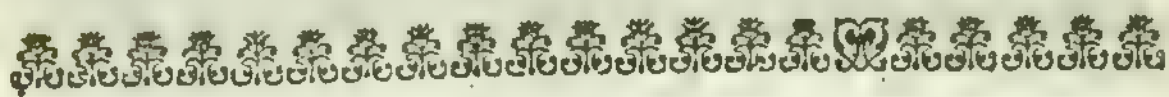
*Bilbars Sultan*, Brother of *Ilbars Chan*, was in most of these Actions; and as he could not sit on Horseback because he had lost the Use of his Feet, as we have already observ'd, he made use of a small light Chariot drawn by one clever Horse; seated in this Chariot, and accompany'd by not above half a Dozen Men fit for Action, he not only led his Troops bravely to the Charge, but also ventur'd his Person among the thickest of the Enemy, and fought so well that every body wonder'd at him.

*Ilbars Chan* and *Bilbars Sultan* happen'd to die within a very little while of one another, after having reign'd some Years, and left several Children. *Ilbars Chan* in particular had



Significati-  
on of the  
word Ga-  
zi.

seven Sons. The first called *Sultan Gasi*, and the second *Mahomet Gasi*; but we know not the Names of the other five. *Bilbars Sultan* left five Sons, but we are acquainted with the Name of only one of them, who was called *Sultan Hadfi*. *Ilbars Chan* gave to all his Sons the Sir-name of *Gasi*, in remembrance of their having vanquish'd the *Persians* who were at *Urgens* and *Vasir*, the word *Gasi* signifying a Man who subdues People of another Religion; but we know not for what reason *Bilbars Sultan* gave the Sir-name of *Hadfi* to his Sons.



## CHAP. II.

*Of the Life and Reign of Hadfi Chan, of Hafanculi Chan, of Saphian Chan, and of Buzzuga Chan.*

Sultan  
Hadfi  
elected  
Chan.

**A**FTER the Death of *Ilbars Chan*, *Sultan Hadfi* who was the eldest\*, not only of his Brothers, but also of the Sons of his Uncle *Ilbars Chan*, and who enjoyed, during the Life of his Uncle, the Revenue of the Town of *Jangisbar*, was proclaimed *Chan* at *Vasir*: but in regard he had but few Subjects, his Power was very small, and the greater part of the Subjects of his Family obeyed only the Orders of *Sultan Gasi*, eldest Son of *Ilbars Chan*; who being a Prince of a great Genius, disposed entirely of the Hearts of those who conversed with him; and as he was at the same time extremely

\* [The eldest of the reigning Family always chosen Chan, except in extraordinary Cases.]



ambitious, he left very little Power to *Hadfi Chan*, in such sort that he was obliged to be content with the Title of *Chan*, which he bore, and the Precedency which *Sultan Gasi* was pleased to give him in all Matters of Ceremony.

After his Death, *Hasanculi*, the Son of *Abulak*, who reigned in the Town of *Urgens*, was declared *Chan*, as being the eldest of all the Princes of the House of *Jadigar Chan*: For inasmuch as they were all descended from those three Brothers, *Burga Sultan*, *Abulak*, and *Amunak*, and that consequently they made but one House together, they all obeyed the same *Chan*, notwithstanding that each had his particular Dominion. These are the Names of the six Sons of *Amunak*; 1. *Saphian*, 2. *Buzzuga*, 3. *Avanash*, 4. *Kabl*, 5. *Akattai*, 6. *Aganai*.

*Hasanculi  
chosen  
Chan.*

*Children of  
Amunak.*

These six Brothers had at this time six other Sons, who were of Age to do for themselves, without reckoning the young Children which they had. *Hasanculi Chan*, who was the only Son of *Abulak*, had likewise several Sons; of which *Bilal* the eldest had a perfect Resemblance of his Father in every thing, and also in his good Disposition.

Nevertheless it happen'd in process of Time, that the Sons of *Ilbars Chan*, of *Bilbars Sultan*, and of *Amunak*, being uneasy that *Hasan Culi Chan*, who resided at *Urgens*, had a Revenue exceedingly more considerable than themselves, joined all their Forces together and went and laid Siege to the Town of *Urgens*. Whereupon *Hasanculi Chan* having sally'd afoot with his Men out of the Town, went and posted himself upon the Counterscarp of the Place before the Gate which leads to the Country of *Chorassan*, and fought bravely against the Confederates from Morning till Evening. On this occasion,

*Civil War  
among the  
Usbeck  
Princes.*

*Aganai*



*nai Sultan*, youngest of the Sons of *Amunak*, who was but twenty years of Age, suffering himself to be carry'd too far by his Vivacity, was killed by *Hasanculi Chan's* Men, who cut off his Head and sent it into the Town; which so enrag'd his Brothers and the other Chiefs of the Confederates, that having made a last Effort against those of the Town, they obliged them to shut themselves up within their Walls.

Urgens  
taken.

After this Siege had lasted four Months, Provisions became so dear in the City, that the Head of a Horse or a Cow was sold for forty *Tanga*, which was the reason that many People quitted the Town, and went to implore Mercy of the Confederate Princes. These Desertions having by little and little considerably diminished the Forces of *Hasanculi Chan*, the Allies caused at length a general Assault to be given to the Town, which succeeded so well, that in spite of the incredible Efforts which *Hasanculi Chan*, assisted by few Men who remained with him, made on that occasion, the Besiegers enter'd at length Sword in hand, and made themselves Masters of it after much Bloodshed. After which they put to death *Hasanculi Chan*, with *Bilal* his eldest Son, and sent the rest of his Children, who were still very young, into *Great Bucharria*; where at the time that I am writing this Book, there are actually living fifteen Males of the Descendants of *Hasanculi Chan*.

Hasanculi  
Chan  
and his  
Son Bilal  
put to  
death.

Saphian  
Chan.

*Saphian Sultan*, eldest Son of *Amunak*, succeeded *Hasanculi Chan* in the Dignity of *Chan* of the Country of *Charass'm*; but the Confederate Princes agreed among themselves about a new Division of the Towns of the Country; and by virtue of that Convention, the Descendants of *Burga Sultan* had for their Share the  
Towns

New Di-  
vision of  
Towns.



of *Vasir*, *Jangishar*, *Tarsak*, and *Durubn*, with the *Turkmanns* of *Mankishlak*; and the Descendants of *Amunak* had all the other Towns of the Country of *Charass'm*, viz. *Urgens*, *Chajuk*, *Hassarassap*, *Kabt*, *Buldumsass*, *Nikitzkata*, *Bojunda*, *Bagabat*, *Nasai*, *Iburdu*, *Zabarda*, and *Mabana*, with the *Turkmanns* which inhabited the Countries of *Abulchan* and *Debistan*.

Thereupon *Saphian Chan* having sent word to the *Turkmanns* of *Abulchan* of the Tribe of *Irsari*, that they should agree to pay him an annual Contribution, or that he would come and destroy all their Habitations, they voluntarily assented themselves and sent him the Sum by way of a free Gift. But the *Chan* not well content with that kind of precarious Contribution, sent the Year following forty Men to levy the Contributions of all the *Turkmanns* of *Abulchan* and *Debistan*: These Men not expecting to meet with Resistance, began with making a Computation among themselves how many Families each would have to receive Contributions from. After which having dispersed themselves thro' the Country pursuant to this Division, the *Turkmanns* gave the Word, and cut the Throats of those forty Receivers at the same instant of time. Upon this News, *Saphian Chan* march'd against them with an Army, accompany'd by his four Brothers.

You must know that the River *Amu*, after it has pass'd by *Urgens*, takes its Course towards the West and the Mountain of *Abulchan*; and from thence wheeling about that Mountain it runs Southward; then returning to the West, it passes thro' the Country of *Ogurza*, and falls to the Sea of *Masanderan*. There were at that time Habitations in abundance upon both sides of that River, from the Town of *Urgens*, as far

as



Turkmanns.

as the Country of *Ogurza*; by reason of the Soil being exceedingly fertil, all sorts of Fruits and Roots grew there in Perfection. The *Turkmanns* who possessed those Quarters went to encamp in Summer in the neighbouring Valleys, where they knew they should have Water for their Cattle, and in Winter they return'd to their Habitations on the Banks of the River. The *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Adaklichiffer-illi* dwelt on both sides of that River, from the Country of *Pishga* as far as that of *Karikizit*; from the Country of *Karikizit* as far as the Mountain of *Abulchan*, the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Aly-ili* inhabit, and the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Ti-u-azi* possess the rest of the two sides of the River *Amu*, from the Mountain of *Abulchan*, as far as the Sea of *Masanderan*: But to return to the History.

Press'd  
hard by  
the Chan.

Mountain  
Dsu.

*Saphian Chan* having arriv'd with his Army at the first Habitations of the *Turkmanns*, which were those of the Tribes of *Irsari* and *Chorassan-Saluri*, which dwelt together, found at first much Resistance; but after killing a good Number of *Turkmanns*, and making many others of them Prisoners, the rest were obliged to betake themselves to flight towards the Mountain called *Dsu*, situate three days Journey to the North of *Abulchan*. *Saphian Chan* after he had order'd all their Cattle to be carry'd away, follow'd them to the Foot of the Mountain, where he went and encamp'd. The *Turkmanns* who had retir'd upon the Mountain, found themselves in want of Water at the end of two days, which obliged them to capitulate: For this purpose they deputed some old Men among them, who having obtained Permission to come to the Camp of *Saphian Chan*, address'd themselves to *Akattai Sultan*, youngest Brother of *Saphian Chan*;



*Chan*; and after putting him in mind that the *Usbecks* were always accustom'd to prefer the youngest Son to his other Brothers \*, they pray'd him that forasmuch as he was also then the youngest of his Brothers, he would do them the Favour to intercede for them with his Brother *Saphian Chan*; to the end he might grant them Pardon, under a Promise that they would serve him faithfully for the time to come.

*Akattai Chan* having received these Deputies very well, sent them back with this Answer, "That he would endeavour to appease the Anger of the *Chan*, provided they would not *submit*. fail to send him immediately some of the most considerable among them." Upon which they sent them to him off-hand; and *Akattai Sultan* having made them take the Oath of Fidelity upon the *Alchoran*, in the Name of all the others, obtained their Pardon of *Saphian Chan*. After which having represented to them, that in return for the Clemency shewed them, they ought to think of the means of testifying their Gratitude to him; they all declar'd they only waited his Order thereupon, and that they were all ready to obey him in every thing he should desire of them.

Upon which *Akattai Sultan* demanded nothing of them for the current Year, in consideration of what they had already suffer'd on that Occasion: but he agreed with them that the following Year they should give 40000 Sheep *Turkmans pay* for the forty Men sent to receive the Customs *Contribution*. whom they had kill'd, and permit *Saphian Chan* to impose on them, besides such other Charges as he should think convenient. To make up this

\* The Reader may compare this Place with what our Author relates on the Subject, p. 60.



Number of 40000 Sheep the Tribes of *Taka*, *Sarik* and *Jamut* obliged themselves to furnish 8000, the Tribe of *Irsari* 16000, and that of *Chorassan-Saluri* the remaining 16000. All these Tribes made but one formerly, but in process of time it became divided into divers small Branches. *Saphian Chan* having summoned those Tribes the Year following to make good the Engagements of this Treaty, they sent off-hand the 40000 Sheep by a Deputation of ten Men from among them: The *Chan* very well pleased with the punctualness of the *Turkmanns*, sent back their Deputies loaded with Favours; and since that time the *Turkmanns* of those Tribes have always been obliged, they and their Descendants, to furnish yearly the aforesaid Sum of 40000 Sheep to the *Chan*.

All the  
Turk-  
manns  
submit.

The other Tribes of the *Turkmanns* made also their Agreement afterwards with the *Chan*, viz. that the Tribe of *Itzki Saluri* should give annually 10000 Sheep by way of Contribution, and 1000 more for the Kitchen of the *Chan*; the Tribe of *Hasan* 16000 Contribution Sheep, and 1600 to the *Chan's* Kitchen; the Tribe of *Ikdur* and that of *Dsaudur* 12000 Contribution Sheep, and 1200 to the *Chan's* Kitchen; the Tribe of *Arabaz* 4000 Contribution Sheep, and 400 to the Kitchen of the *Chan*; the Tribe of *Koklan* 12000 Contribution Sheep, and 1200 to the *Chan's* Kitchen: The Tribe of *Adakli* 12000 Contribution Sheep, and 1200 to the Kitchen of the *Chan*; and that some other inconsiderable Tribes should give also 4000 every Year. With regard to the three Tribes of *Turkmanns* which dwelt along the Banks of the River *Amu*, it was stipulated that they should contribute no Sheep, but that the Tribe of *Adaklichiffer-illi* should furnish yearly



a certain Number of Soldiers for the *Chan's* Service, and that those of *Aly-ili* and *Ti-u-azi* should pay their Contribution in Merchandizes. These three last Tribes of *Turkmanns* who lived upon the Profits of their Lands were surnamed *Ut-zill*, which is to say, a People divided into three Branches.

*Saphian Chan* dying after he had reigned some <sup>Buzzuga</sup> Years, his Brother *Buzzuga Sultan* was pro-<sup>Chan,</sup> claimed *Chan* in his room. *Saphian Chan* left at his Death five Sons, viz. 1. *Jussuph*, 2. *Junus*, 3. *Aly*, 4. *Agish*, 5. *Paluanculi*, to whom *Buzzuga Chan* assigned the Town of *Chajuk* in appenage.

*Obeit Chan*, who then reigned in *Great Bucha-* <sup>Obeit</sup> *ria* \*, took about that time some Towns of the <sup>Chan of</sup> Country of *Chorassan* which the *Persians* before <sup>Great-Bu-</sup> possessed, and the *Usbecks* his Subjects made con-<sup>charia.</sup> tinual War upon the rest of the Towns of that Country, which were still under the Dominion of the *Persians*, carrying away from time to time a great Number of the Inhabitants of the Country into slavery. On the other side the <sup>Chorasan</sup> *Usbecks* of the Country of *Charass'm*, who pos-<sup>harass'd</sup> sessed the Towns of *Iburdu*, *Nasai* and *Duruhn*, <sup>by the</sup> *Usbecks* did no less incommode the *Persians* which dwelt <sup>of Bucha-</sup> in the Towns of *Chodsan* and *Espberagin*, to-<sup>ria and</sup> wards the Frontiers of the Country of *Gilku<sup>1</sup>ruk*; <sup>Chowa-</sup> for as the *Usbecks* of *Nasai* were but one day's <sup>razm.</sup> Journey distant, they continually scour'd the Plain thereabouts with great Parties, and by that means they did not only hinder the Inhabitants of those Towns from cultivating their Lands, but they also cut off all Correspondence

\* This Prince was Son of Mahomet Sultan, Brother of Shabacht Sultan, who drove the Descendants of Tamerlan out of Great Bucharia, as our Author relates, p. 210, 222.  
with



with the other neighbouring Towns belonging to the *Persians*.

Shah Tamas  
makes an  
Alliance  
with the  
Usbecks.

*Shah Tamasp*\* who reigned then in *Persia*, unable effectually to remedy the Disorders which the *Usbecks* raised upon the Frontiers of his Dominions, because of the Quarrels which he had every now and then with the Sultan of *Rubm*, resolved to make an Alliance with the *Usbecks* that he might have Elbow-room on that side. Accordingly he dispatch'd an Envoy to *Urgens*, with Proposals of Marriage between the *Shah* and a Princess, the Daughter or Relation of *Buzzuga Chan*. That Envoy arriving at Court, gave *Buzzuga Chan* to understand, that his Master, as powerful as he was always, thought it a great Honour to be marry'd to a Princess of the Blood of the great *Zingis Chan*, and that therein he had before his Eyes the illustrious Example of *Amir Timur*, to whom so much Honour redounded, on account of marrying a Princess of the House of *Zingis Chan*†; that they

\* This Prince is called Shah Tamas I. by our Historians; he was the Son of Shah Ismael I. but he fell very short of the Capacity of his Father in the Art of Reigning. He lost the greatest part of the Conquests his Father had acquired from the Turks, and it was his good Fortune rather than his Conduct which helped him to get rid of an Enemy so formidable as Sultan Soliman the Great, whom he had upon his Back, without losing more of his own than what his Father had conquered from the Turks.

'Twas this Prince who assisted Babur Chan, whom Shabacht Sultan had driven out of Great Bucharia, to mount the Throne of Indostan; and when after his Death his Son Homayun had lost that Conquest again, he helped him to recover it: and ever since that time the Descendants of those Princes have always kept Possession of that Empire.

Babur Chan was Grandson of Abusaid Mirsa, of whom our Author has spoken Part. 8. Chap. 3.

Shah Tamas I. died 1576. after a Reign of fifty Years.

† We know nothing certain touching this Princess of the Race of Zingis Chan, whom Tamerlan espoused: All that



they gave him upon that Occasion the Name of *Amir Timur Curagan*, which he retained ever *Gurcan*. after: That besides the Honour which would accrue to his Master by so illustrious an Alliance, he might hope to find in it a real Advantage, inasmuch as the News of this Marriage would make the Sultan of *Rubm* go on warily, and furnish his Master with the means of opposing more effectually for the time to come, an Enemy who would not fail to fall upon the *Usbecks*, if ever he should come to force the Barrier which the Kingdom of *Persia* sets in his way.

*Buzzuga Chan* having accepted the Proposals of the Envoy, betrothed his Niece called *Aishabika*, Daughter of *Saphian Chan* to the *Shah*, because he had no Daughter of his own. After which he sent *Agish Sultan*, one of the Brothers of the betroth'd, accompany'd by nine Lords of his Vassals to the Court of *Shah Tabmasip*, to give the finishing Touch to this Treaty of Alliance and Marriage.

*I have been able to find thereupon in Authors is, that Gonzales de Molina, who wrote the Life of Tamerlan in Spanish, tells us, that the most distinguished among the Wives of that Conqueror was called Cannon, and that she was the Daughter of one Ahin Chan, who reigned at Samarkant before Tamerlan: But with regard to the Name of Cannon, which that Author has given the Princess in question, I am fully persuaded he is deceived thereupon, and that in Name of that Princess, he has taken the Name of Chanim, or Chanun, as the Tatars pronounce it, which is peculiar to the Wives and Daughters of the Chans; and as to the Name of Ahin Chan, which he gives her Father, I have no better Opinion of it, because among the different Names of the Chans who reigned before Tamerlan in Great Bucharía, I find none that has the least Conformity with it, unless he speaks of Adill Chan, according to what our Author relates upon this Subject, p. 170, 171.*



Shah Ta-  
mas be-  
flows  
Chogan  
on Aish  
Sultan.

The *Shah* received that Prince with all possible Marks of Distinction, and made him a Present of the Town of *Chodsan*, where *Agish Sultan* at length died after he had resided there during twenty five Years. *Shah Tabmasip* sent likewise to *Buzzuga Chan* ten Wedges of Gold, and as many of Silver, each of which was as big as a Tile, and ten fine Horses, the Saddles and Harness of which were richly trimm'd with Gold; to his Spouse he sent nine Pieces of Cloth of Gold, a Thousand Pieces of Silk Stuffs, and abundance of other valuable Clothes, with magnificent Habits. After which *Buzzuga Chan* caused that Princess to be brought to him with all the Magnificence imaginable, and lived ever after in Peace with the *Persians*. This *Chan* died at length a short while after the afore-mentioned *Agish Sultan*, after having reigned twenty seven Years with much Glory.



### C H A P. III.

*Of the Reign of Avanash Chan, and of the Civil Wars among the Descendants of Amunak, and those of Burga Sultan.*

Avanash  
Chan.

AFTER the Death of *Buzzuga Chan*, *Avanash Chan* his Brother was proclaimed *Chan* in his room in the City of *Urgens*. *Buzzuga Chan* left three Sons at his Death, viz. 1. *Dost Mahamet*, 2. *Ish Mahamet*, 3. *Burum*, otherwise named *Ish Dost*, to whom *Avanash Chan* assigned the Town of *Kabt* for his Portion.

*Avanash*



*Avanash Chan* had likewise three Sons, called *Account of Din Mahamet Sultan*  
 1. *Din Mahamet*, 2. *Machmut*, 3. *Aly*. This *Chan* had bought the Mother of *Din Mahamet Sultan* from a Merchant of the *Mankatts*, who pretended she was a Daughter of a *Mirsa* of the *Mankatts*, but born of a Slave; and that having been made Prisoner on account of some Troubles which had befallen the Country of the *Mankatts*, she had been sold to him. The Mother of the two youngest Sons of *Avanash Chan* was also a Daughter of a *Mirsa* of the *Mankatts*, and 'tis the Custom among them, when the *Chan* has a Spouse who is Daughter of a *Mirsa* of the *Mankatts*, she is called *Biim*, nor has any other Wife of a *Chan*, let her be of what Family she will, a Right to pretend to that Name. After that *Din Mahamet Sultan* had been weaned from the Breast of his Mother, his Father committed him to the Care of the Mother of his younger Brothers, but she did not love him at all, and her Hatred to him increased with his Years.

It happen'd among the rest that *Din Mahamet Sultan* playing when he was six Years old, with other Children of the same Age, built a small Fort of Earth and Stones, in which having posted some of his Comrades, he commanded the rest to go and attack that Fort, promising to reward those well who signalized themselves on that Occasion; and threatening with Death those who failed in their Duty. The *Biim* having observ'd this Action of *Din Mahamet Sultan*, did not fail to make use of an Occasion which appear'd so proper to chide him well, saying, "What are you doing there, you *Tugma*? do you think that is the way they make Forts with Earth and Stones?" you must know that the word *Tugma* signifies a Child



born of a bought Slave. Whereupon *Din Mahamet Sultan*, who (notwithstanding he was but a Child, yet resented smartly the Injury which the *Biim* had uttered) having approached towards her, made her a profound Reverence with an Air of Mockery, replying, " 'Tis  
 " well God has inspired me with this Thought,  
 " for if you know it not, I know very well that  
 " 'tis of Earth and Stone that they build For-  
 " tresses." The disdainful manner with which *Din Mahamet Sultan* treated the *Biim* on this Occasion, increased yet more the Aversion which she had naturally to him.

*Makes an Inroad into Persia.* In the mean while *Din Mahamet Sultan* having attained the Age of nineteen \* Years, and being informed that the *Usbecks* who dwelt in that part of the Country of *Chorassan* which was then in Subjection to the *Chan* of *Urgens*, had been accustomed heretofore to send Parties from time to time towards the Territories of *Istarabat*, and that part of the Country of *Chorassan* which is subject to the *Persians*, from whence they had almost constantly return'd with a considerable Booty, he took up a Resolution to make an Inroad on that side unknown to his Father, and having for that End made choice of Forty Men, who were willing to follow him on this Occasion, he set forward with them out of hand; and after having for some time coasted along the Arm of the River *Amu*, which in those Days passed before *Urgens*, he went over to the other Arm of that River, which he passed at a Place called *Sidalik Taka*; having afterwards enter'd a Defile, which is on that side, called *Dinar*, he met a Man belonging to one of the

*Course of the River Amu.*

[\* Hegra 940, for he was 28, in 949. See the end of the third Chapter.]



Lords of *Mahamet Gasi Sultan*, who was conducting nine Camels and thirty Sheep, and having asked from whence he came with that Cattle, he answer'd, That he had been receiving the Contribution of some *Turkmanns* for his Master, and that he was returning to him at *Durubn*, for *Mahamet Gasi Sultan* was at that time in possession of that Town. Whereupon *Din Mahamet Sultan* having observ'd a yellow Goat among the Sheep which this Man led, he pray'd him to give it him, that his Men might have wherewithal to subsist on the Road, and that at his Return he would not fail to gratify his Master: But this Man refusing to give it him, *Din Mahamet Sultan* made his Men abuse him, and take all he had from him; after which he pursued his Journey.

It will hardly be credited that a yellow Goat should cause the Destruction of a Town\*, and yet this same yellow Goat actually did, as the Sequel of this History will inake appear: From whence it has pass'd into a Proverb among us, *That the Town of Urgens was ruined by a yellow Goat.* *Din Mahamet Sultan* having arriv'd with his Men upon the Lands of *Istarabat*, caused all the Cattle of the *Persians* to be carry'd away three times, and then return'd with them. In the mean time, the Man whom he had order'd to be ill used at the Defile of *Dinar*, having gone to his Master with the News of the Adventure which he had with *Din Mahamet Sultan*, that Lord went immediately to make his Complaints to *Mahamet Gasi Sultan*, who forthwith commanded some Troops towards the Road by which *Din Mahamet Sultan* was to re-

*Destruction of Urgens, occasioned by a Goat.*

[\* Coffee has been the Occasion of as great Disturbances. See *Voyage de l'Arabie Heureuse*, p. 255, &c.]



Din Mahomet  
taken.

turn, with Orders to bring him to him in case he fell into their Hands. This Command was executed in the nick of Time, for *Din Mahamet Sultan* having taken very quietly the same Road in returning which he took in going, without dreaming in the least of the Snare that had been laid for him, went directly into the midst of those Troops, which brought him to *Mahamet Gasi Sultan*, after they had taken from him all the Booty he had seized from the *Persians*. As for the forty Men which followed him in this Enterprize, they let them go their way, and one Party of them return'd to *Urgens*; but the rest not daring to go back after what had happen'd to *Din Mahamet Sultan*, dispersed themselves among the People which lived on that Road, waiting to see what would become of their Leader.

Imprison'd  
and pu-  
nished.

Those who return'd to *Urgens* gave indeed an Account to *Avanash Chan* of what had befallen *Din Mahamet Sultan*; but as he did not at all love that Son, and that besides he had at the Age of fifty Years espoused the Sister of *Mahamet Gasi Sultan*, he gave himself no trouble about it, because he had no desire to quarrel on that Account with his Brother-in-Law. In the mean time, as soon as the Troops of *Mahamet Gasi Sultan* had brought *Din Mahamet Sultan* to him, he caused him to be imprison'd in a House separated from all the other Houses of the Town, where he had him guarded very closely for some time; after which he had him punish'd, and sent him back to his Father *Avanash Chan*, under a Guard of six Men, commanded by one of his Vassals of the Tribe of the *Vigurs* called *Risha Chudai-birdi*, whom he ordered to tell the *Chan* from him, that he had sent him his *Tugma*, after having been obliged to punish him for hav-

ing



ing made an Inroad into the *Persian* Territories without his Permission, and for having besides that stripp'd some of his People upon the high Road.

*Risba Chudaibirdi* having set forward with *Din Mahamet Sultan* and his six Men, the *Sultan* <sup>*Din Mahamet escapes.*</sup> who almost died with Desire to see himself at liberty, bethought himself of making from time to time great Outcries; imagining that if any of his Men who had accompany'd him in his Incursion upon the Lands of *Istarabat*, should by chance have stop'd upon that Road, they might know his Voice and come to his Assistance; and every time that *Din Mahamet Sultan* put up a Cry, the Lord who conducted him cry'd on his part *Risba!* which was his usual word: But *Din Mahamet Sultan*, who believed that he made those Exclamations with a design to insult him, took such Offence at it, that it cost *Risba Chudai-birdi* his Life; for having been obliged to pass thro' the Country of *Gordish*, which is very populous, he found that some of the Men who had been in the Party with *Din Mahamet Sultan* had stop'd there, who having distinguish'd his Voice followed him at a distance. The Lord who commanded the Convoy of that Prince having a mind to pass the Night thereabout, *Din Mahamet Sultan* desired him to go on and not give him the Mortification to be made a Spectacle to so many People; whereupon, *Risba Chudai-birdi*, to please him, continued his March till Day-break, and then he made his Men halt in a Place far from the common Road for the Conveniency of feeding his Horses; but while he and his Men were asleep, the Men who followed *Din Mahamet Sultan* at a distance came up very softly, and set him at liberty.



Slays his  
Convoy  
and their  
Commander.

As soon as *Din Mahamet Sultan* found himself free, he slew the Commander of his Convoy with his own Sword; and having also cut the Throats of the rest of the Men, he had the dead Corps bury'd instantly a little out of the way: After which he had the Marks of the Blood which still appear'd upon the Ground, cover'd nicely with Sand; and to secure this Affair as well as he could from taking Wind before the proper time, he obliged them all to promise him by Oath not to discover it to any one. After which he went very quietly to see his Father at *Urgens*, who having inquir'd of him at his Arrival how he got off the Scrape, he answer'd, that indeed *Mahomet Gasi Sultan* had been very angry with him, but it was soon over, and that he had at last sent him back with a Present of some Horses and Habits, which his Father took to be all Truth.

Din Mahomet's  
Plot against  
Mahomet  
Gasi Sultan.

In the mean time *Din Mahamet Sultan*, who had laid his Scheme, went to a Graver and had two Seals made, one with the Cypher of his Father, and the other with that of his Mother-in-Law, the Sister of *Mahomet Gasi Sultan*: After which he wrote in the Name of his Father to *Mahomet Gasi Sultan*, that his Sister being very sick, and desiring to speak to him, he beg'd he would come and see her off-hand. He wrote him also another Letter to the same purpose in the Name of his Sister, pretending to be sick; and having sealed those two Letters with the two Seals he had got engraved for that End, he gave them to a trusty Person to carry to *Mahomet Gasi Sultan*; and to the end he might make the more haste, he gave him two of his best Horses to serve him in this Journey. While he waited the Return of his Express, he got together the Forty Men who had



had followed him in his *Persian* Incurfion, and entertained them nobly to make them amends for the Booty which *Mahomet Gafi Sultan's* Men had taken from them.

*Mahomet Gafi Sultan*, as foon as he had received the Letters, fet forward immediately for *Urgens*; and having arrived there in an Evening, when *Avanash Chan* was gone to take the Diversion of Hawking, he went directly to the Apartment of his Sister, who received him very well. *Mahomet Gafi Sultan* perceiving no Tokens of Sicknefs, told his Sister he thank'd God to find her fo well recover'd after the preffing Letters which had been written to him upon that Account: But ſhe having reply'd, that ſhe had not been ill at all, and that ſhe knew of no Letters he ſpoke of, he began to ſuſpect ſomething: Whereupon leaving his Sister that Inſtant, and hearing at the ſame time much Noiſe in the great Street which faced the Caſtle, he left his Horſes near the Gate he went in at, and made to the Stables of *Avanash Chan*, thinking to eſcape that way by a ſmall Back-door which opened into a By-ſtreet; but finding that Street full of People, he durſt not execute that Deſign, and was conſtrained to hide himſelf the beſt he could in a Heap of Dung which he found in one Corner of the Stable.

*Din Mahamet Sultan*, who had ſeen *Mahomet* ſlain by *Gafi Sultan* go up to his Sister's Apartment, followed him with ſome of his Men, and not finding him there, he aſked the Women-ſlaves which attended his Mother-in-Law where he was gone; and upon their telling him he had taken the way to the Stables, he followed him thither. In the mean time his Men run thro' all the Apartments of the Caſtle in ſearch of *Mahomet Gafi Sultan*; but not finding him, they return'd to



to join *Din Mahamet Sultan*, who was gone down into the Court of the Castle ; and on this Occasion, it came into one of their Heads to search so well in every Corner of the Stables, that he perceived at last a Bit of the end of *Mahamet Gasi Sultan's* Scarlet Robe, which stuck out of the Heap of Dung where he lay hid, and *Din Mahamet Sultan* having been informed of it, went instantly and slew him on the Spot

*Aly Sultan*  
put to  
death by  
way of  
Reprisal.

Upon the Noise of this News which spread forthwith thro' the whole Town, one of *Mahamet Gasi Sultan's* Men ran without stopping to *Vasir*, to tell *Sultan Gasi* of the Death of his Brother. Among other Wives which that *Sultan* had, he had newly marry'd a Daughter of *Saphian Chan* ; and it happen'd that *Aly Sultan* her Brother was come to see her just at the time that her Husband receiv'd this sad News, which so transported him with Rage, that for want of having it in his power to revenge himself upon the Guilty, he let his Vengeance fall upon his Brother-in-Law *Aly Sultan*, whom he slew out of hand, without considering that he was altogether innocent of the Murder of his Brother. *Avanash Chan* having been inform'd at his Return from Hunting that *Din Mahamet Sultan* had slain his Brother-in-Law *Mahamet Gasi Sultan*, and that he had fled after committing that Action no body knew whither ; he assembled all the Lords of his Council to deliberate what was to be done upon the Occasion of so extraordinary an Accident ; but scarce had they taken the proper Resolutions on that Affair, when there arriv'd a Courier with the News of the Murder of *Aly Sultan*, which threw *Avanash Chan* into Confusion.



In the mean time the Nephews of *Avanash Chan*, as being all of the Posterity of *Amunak*,<sup>Avanash Chan prepares for War.</sup> having been inform'd of what had happen'd at *Urgens* and *Vasir*; and foreseeing that there was likely to ensue a bloody Civil War, repaired all to *Urgens* to *Avanash Chan*; from whence, on the other hand, the People of *Mahamet Gasi Sultan* retir'd to *Vasir*. *Avanash Chan*, for his part, had indeed no Inclination for a War, but his Nephews and their Vassals led him in some measure, whether he would or no, to muster an Army and march towards *Vasir*.

Upon the News of this, *Sultan Gasi* sent to demand Assistance of the Descendants of *Bilbars*<sup>Sultan Gazi defeated and kill'd.</sup> *Sultan*, who were in possession of *Jangishar*; but because they were not over-hasty in coming, *Sultan Gasi* in expectation of their Arrival, took the Field with what Troops he had, and advanced to meet *Avanash Chan* as far as the Country of *Kumkant*, which is to the West of the Town of *Vasir*, and whose Inhabitants are very well to pass. These two Armies which fought for one another, soon met, and *Sultan Gasi* finding in ranging his Troops that there were not Men enough to make a Front equal to that of the Enemy, was not a little chagrin'd at it; and as he was not very well belov'd by the Soldiers, because he paid them very badly, one of them began to cry aloud on that Occasion, that he had an Opportunity of supplying the Defect of Soldiers by his Horses and Cows, of which, till then, he made more Account than of his Warriors; nor could the *Sultan* discover who it was that did him that Affront whatever Inquiry he made about it. In short the two Armies having engaged, *Sultan Gasi* lost the Battle, and was there kill'd with fifteen other Princes of the Posterity of *Ilbars Chan*.

*Sultan*



Sultan  
Gasi's  
Children.

*Sultan Gasi* had several Wives, and among others, one who was Daughter of a Chief of the *Turkmanns* called *Uligtu Basmalbik*, who fell into his Hands at the time that he made War with the *Turkmanns* of the Country of *Burma*; he had two Sons and two Daughters by that Wife, the eldest of the Sons was called *Umar Gasi Sultan*, and the youngest *Shir Gasi Sultan*; and of the Daughters, the eldest was named *Sabbara Chanim*, and the youngest *Nonash Chanim*: These four Children of *Sultan Gasi* falling into the Hands of *Akattai Sultan* after this Battle, that Prince sent them into *Great Bucharie*. *Umar Gasi Sultan* was at that time fifteen Years of Age, and *Shir Gasi* but twelve.

During these Transactions, the Princes of the Posterity of *Bilbars Sultan* arriving at *Vasir*, and being inform'd at that Place that *Sultan Gasi* had already taken the Field in search of *Avanash Chan*, they continued their March forthwith in the Road which his Army had taken, and did all in their Power to join him with their Troops before he should be obliged to come to a Battle with the Princes of the Posterity of *Amunak*; but having arriv'd in the Country of *Kumkant*, they receiv'd the News of the Defeat and Death of *Sultan Gasi*, which obliged them to fly into the *Great Bucharie*, because they durst not venture to return to *Jangishar*. After which the Princes of the Posterity of *Amunak* put to death all the Posterity of *Burga Sultan* which fell into their Hands; and as for the Daughters and Wives of that House, they thought fit to keep them in quality of Captives; and in this manner it was that the Posterity of *Ilbars Chan*, which was formerly very numerous, was almost intirely extinct by means of this War, at least,



no more of them were then to be found in the Country of *Charass'm*.

After so great a Revolution, the whole Coun-<sup>Cha-</sup>try was divided among the Descendants of *Amu-*<sup>rafs'm di-</sup>*nak*: *Avanash Chan* was indeed satisfy'd with his<sup>vided a-</sup> old Domain and the Town of *Urgens*; but he<sup>mong the</sup> distributed the other Towns among his Rela-<sup>Descen-</sup>tions, and *Din Mahamet Sultan* had for his Share<sup>dants of</sup> the Town of *Duruhn*, and all the Princes lived<sup>Amunak.</sup> afterwards in great Amity together.

In the mean time *Umar Gasi Sultan*, Son of *Confede-**Sultan Gasi*, arriving in *Great Buchar*<sup>racy a-</sup>*ia*, put<sup>gainst A-</sup> himself immediately in the Service of *Obeit*<sup>vanash</sup> *Chan*\*; and notwithstanding his Youth, he fig-<sup>Chan.</sup>nalized himself in such wise on several Occasions, that they began already to look upon him as a Prince who would one Day make himself be talk'd of. He, especially, press'd *Obeit Chan* exceedingly to give him an Army to go to *Urgens*; and as the other Princes of the Posterity of *Abulgair Chan*, who were at that time in those Parts, declar'd they would accompany him in that Expedition, *Obeit Chan* of *Grand Buchar**ia*, *Dsuannart Chan* of *Samarkant*, and *Barak Chan* of *Tashkant*, as also *Hainsa Sultan*, and the Descendants of *Mabadi Sultan* of *Hisar*, agreed together to enter with all their Forces into the Country of *Charass'm*.

At this News the Princes of the Posterity of *Avanash*<sup>Chan and</sup> *Amunak*, who possess'd *Chajuk*, *Hassarassap*, and<sup>other</sup> the other neighbouring Towns, came with all<sup>Princes</sup> the Troops they had to join *Avanash Chan*; but<sup>taken</sup> that *Chan* not daring to wait the Enemies com-<sup>Prisoners.</sup>ing at *Urgens*, retir'd into the Desarts. *Obeit*

\* *Obeit Chan*, the Nephew of *Shabacht Sultan*, was the Son of a Grandson of *Abulgair Chan*, who was, as it were, the common Stock of all the Princes of the Posterity of *Sheybani Chan*, who were then settled in *Great Buchar**ia*.



*Chan* and his Allies arriving at *Urgens*, detach some Troops to seek out *Avanash Chan*; which having taken him in the Country of *Baijalkiri*, brought him to *Obeit Chan*, and with him several Princes of his House, and a great Number of other Persons of Distinction.

Prisoners  
divided.

As soon as they were arriv'd in the Camp, *Obeit Chan* caused a Division to be made of the Prisoners. *Umar Gasi Sultan* had for his Share *Avanash Chan*, whom he instantly put to death, as a Sacrifice which he owed to the Manes of his Father; *Obeit Chan* kept for himself *Akattai Sultan*, Brother of *Avanash Chan*, and gave *Khal Sultan*, who was another Brother of *Avanash Chan*, to *Hainsa* and the Descendants of *Mahadi Sultan*: he gave the Town of *Urgens* to his Son *Abdulasis Sultan*, and did not meddle either with the *Turkmanns*, or the *Sartes*, which he left in the quiet Possession of their Settlements; but they made a Partition of the four Tribes of the *Usbecks*, who dwelt in the several Provinces dependant on the Country of *Charass'm*, in such sort that *Obeit Chan* had one Tribe, the *Chan* of *Samarkant* one, the *Chan* of *Tashkant* one, and the Princes of *Hisar* one: After which each of these Princes having establish'd an Intendant over the Tribe which fell to his Share, they return'd into their own Dominions.

Urgens  
given to  
Abdulasis  
Sultan.

Tribes of  
Usbecks  
in Cho-  
warazm.

When *Avanash Chan* was made Prisoner, his two Sons *Machmut* and *Aly* took Refuge at *Durubn*, with *Din Mahamet Sultan* their eldest Brother; and *Aly Sultan*, who was the youngest, was not then above seven Years old. *Jussuph* and *Jumus*, two of the Sons of *Saphian Chan*, as well as several other Princes and young Men of Quality, fled also to *Durubn*; but the Children of *Akattai Sultan* were all carry'd Prisoners into *Great Bucharria* with their Father, except only



only one of them called *Hadfim Sultan*; who <sup>Escape of</sup> when *Avanash Chan* was taken, was glad in so <sup>Hadfim</sup> bad Circumstances to retire to an old Domestick <sup>Sultan.</sup> of his Father's of the Tribe of the *Durmanns*, called *Dsansait*, being then eighteen Years of Age; and as that Man had no hand in the Affairs of the Times, *Hadfim Sultan* put on some old tatter'd Clothes, and kept his Horses as if he had been one of his Slaves.

In the mean time the *Durmanns*, who had <sup>Hadfim</sup> been made Prisoners by *Obeit Chan* and his Con- <sup>Sultan dis-</sup> federates, having been sent to dwell in the <sup>covered</sup> Country of *Kesilrabat*, discover'd by chance, <sup>and flies</sup> after they had dwelt there for three Months, <sup>to Duruhn.</sup> that *Hadfim Sultan* kept the Horses of that antient Domestick of his Father. *Dsansait* having been inform'd that his Secret had taken Wind, went and conjur'd *Hadfim Sultan* to retire from him, seeing that his longer Stay in his House would infallibly ruin them both, every body already speaking publickly of it. Whereupon *Hadfim Sultan* pray'd him to give him wherewithal to go join *Din Mahamet Sultan* at *Duruhn*: *Dsansait* finding this to be a reasonable Proposal, took four of his best Horses, one of which he gave *Hadfim Sultan*; and having loaded the two others with Provisions, he mounted himself upon the fourth. In this manner they went and pass'd the River *Amu*, near *Urgens*, and arriv'd safely at *Duruhn*.

Shortly after the Arrival of *Hadfim Chan* <sup>Din Ma-</sup> in that Town, *Din Mahamet Sultan*, accompa- <sup>hamet</sup> ny'd by all the Princes of the Posterity of *Amu-* <sup>takes the</sup> *nak Chan*, who had taken Refuge with him, <sup>Field with</sup> took the Field with an Army, and march'd to- <sup>three thou-</sup> wards *Urgens*. At his Arrival in the Country of *Gordish*, he demanded of the Chief of the Tribe of *Adaklichiffer-illi*, a Reinforcement of 1000 <sup>sand Men.</sup> Men



Gihon for-  
dable  
towards  
Chajuk.

Takes  
Chajuk.

Abdulasis  
flies from  
Urgens  
into Bu-  
charia.

Obeit  
Chan  
marches  
towards  
Urgens.

Men out of the bravest *Turkmanns* of his Tribe; and having obtained that Aid, he continued his March with his small Army of 3000, as far as the Country of *Pishga*. In this Place he held a Council upon the Enterprize which he had to form; and because it appear'd that their Forces were too few to go and attack *Abdulasis Sultan*, Son of *Obeit Chan*, in the City of *Urgens*, and that besides they had no Boats to pass the River *Amu*, supposing they were willing to undertake so rash an Attempt, 'twas resolv'd to take the Rout of *Chajuk*, because there was no need of Boats on that side; and that they might hope to arrive there without the Enemy having any Tidings of their March, seeing few People dwelt upon that Road.

At their Arrival at *Chajuk*, they took it without much Difficulty, and put to Death the Commander of the Town with 15 or 16 Men of his Garison. Upon this News, the Governor of *Hassarassap* went to *Abdulasis Sultan* at *Urgens*, and appris'd him of what had happen'd at *Chajuk*; adding, that he did not doubt but *Din Mahamet Sultan* was already at *Hassarassap*. Upon this Report, *Abdulasis Sultan* fearing to fall into the hands of that Prince, in case he should stay longer at *Urgens*, quitted that Town off-hand, and went to his Father in *Great Buchar*. *Obeit Chan* having immediately assembled a numerous Army, march'd towards *Urgens*, but arriving at the Habitations of a Tribe of the *Turkmanns*, called the Tribe of *Caramit*, he stopt there with part of his Army, and sent two of his Generals with the rest of his Forces to *Urgens*: Of these two Generals of *Obeit Chan*, one was sprung from the Tribe of the *Oklians*, and called *Bisam*; and the other from the Tribe of the *Kunkurats*, and named *Haphis*.

At



At the first Advice of the March of the E-<sup>Debate</sup> nemy, *Din Mahamet Sultan* march'd out of <sup>whether</sup> *Ghajuk* and took the Field to go meet them; <sup>they should</sup> but the Princes, his Relations, and the other <sup>advance</sup> Lords which accompany'd him in that Expedition, were unanimously of Opinion, that seeing they had not in all above 10000 Men, and that they knew the Enemy's Army was more than 40000 strong, it would quite dishearten them to fight against such unequal Forces; that consequently the best Course they could take on this Occasion was to return to *Duruhn*; whereas *Obeit Chan*, who had not return'd into the Country of *Gharass'm*, if he had not been inform'd that they design'd to make themselves Masters of the Town of *Urgens*, would no sooner perceive their Retreat, than he would return himself also; and that then they might come back without Noise and take that Town.

But *Din Mahamet Sultan* firmly adhering to <sup>Din Ma-</sup> his Resolution of giving the Enemy Battle, 220 <sup>hamet</sup> of the principal of his Men flung themselves off <sup>persists in</sup> their Horses, and falling at his Feet, intreated <sup>going to</sup> him to return; nevertheless they could not make him change his Opinion. Some time after they renewed their Supplications, but with as little Success as the first time. At last, when they had the third time light off their Horses, and prostrate on the Ground made the same Request to him, *Din Mahamet Sultan* falling into a Passion, flung himself off his Horse also, and taking up a Handful of Dust, scatter'd it upon his Head, crying out, "I devote my Soul to  
" God, and my Body to the Earth;" and turning afterwards to the Lords that surrounded him, he said to them, "I consider my self as  
" a dead Man; and if you esteem your Lives  
" more precious than mine, I shall not hinder  
S " you



“ you to return : But if you will share with me  
 “ the Glory which attends us, let us march.”  
 Having thereupon remounted his Horse, he  
 continued his March, and all his Army followed  
 him, shedding Tears ; so much were they pre-  
 possessed with the ill Success of so desperate an  
 Undertaking.

Din Ma-  
 hamet ad-  
 vances a-  
 gainst the  
 Enemy.

Order of  
 his Army.

Lies in  
 Ambus-  
 cade.

In the mean time, *Din Mahamet Sultan* hav-  
 ing learned in his March that the Enemy had in  
 the Night-time pass'd by *Hassarassap*, and that  
 they would be upon his Back the next Day, he  
 advanced in the Evening as far as a Pond, which  
 was dry'd up, in the Country of *Gardanchast*,  
 where he made his Army halt, resolving to wait  
 for the Enemy ; and since that Battle they have  
 given the Name of *Sbikast Koli* to this Pond.  
 At his Arrival in that Place, he rang'd his  
 Troops along the West-side of the Pond, and  
 having had Notice before Day by his Advance-  
 Guards, that the Enemies Army approach'd, he  
 divided them into two Bodies ; one of which  
 he gave to *Jussuph Sultan*, eldest Son of *Saphian*  
*Chan*, and put himself, accompany'd by *Hadsim*  
*Sultan*, Son of *Akattai Sultan*, at the Head of  
 the others ; nevertheless, he had the Precauti-  
 on to send before, his Brother *Aly Sultan*, who  
 was then but eight Years old, with an Escorte  
 of six trusty Men, into a Place a little aside  
 from the Field of Battle, with Orders, that if  
 they found they lost the Day, they should try  
 some-how to save him, to the end there might  
 remain at least one Sprig of their Family.

After which he posted the two Bodies of his  
 Army on both sides of the Road, and waited  
 for the Enemy with a profound Silence : They  
 soon appear'd, having at their Head most of  
 their Commanders, surrounded with 40 Flam-  
 beaux, which *Din Mahamet Sultan* let pass  
 without



without stirring: But as soon as those were gone by, he fell all at once upon the Troops which followed them, and charg'd them so briskly, that they were broken after some Resistance, and obliged at length to fly notwithstanding their great Superiority. This Victory was complete, for besides a great Number who were killed, most of the Commanders and principal Officers of the Enemies Army fell into the Hands of *Din Mahamet Sultan*; not to mention a great Number of private Soldiers who were made Prisoners on that Occasion, one of the Vassals of *Din Mahamet Sultan*, called *Togar Bayadur*, who was one of the Chiefs of the Tribe of *Kunkurats*, killed sixty Men with his own Hand in this Battle. *Din Mahamet Sultan* himself, and *Hadsim Sultan* had advanced so far among the thickest of their Enemies, that the Bow of the first having been snatch'd from his side without perceiving it, he went on Sword in Hand; when *Hadsim Sultan*, who saw his Bow fall, recover'd it, and restored it to him; upon which *Din Mahamet Sultan* said to him, "My Brother, that which you have done to Day for me, shall be the Knot of an everlasting Friendship between us." *Din Mahamet Sultan* was then 28 years of Age, and *Hadsim Sultan* 18.

*Din Mahamet Sultan* having after the Battle caused all the Prisoners to be brought into his Presence, demanded among other things, of *Haphis*, of the Tribe of the *Kunkurats*, who was one of the principal Lords of *Obeit Chan's* Court, upon what account he had told his Master that those of *Urgens* were not *Mahometans*, and that they had a different Faith from the true Believers: Whereupon that Lord falling at his Feet, answer'd, " 'Tis at this Juncture I



“ shall find whether you are true *Mahometans*,  
 “ or whether you be of a different Religion.”  
 Meaning, that if they pretended to be of the  
 same Religion with them, they would pardon  
 them. *Din Mahamet Sultan* made no Answer  
 to this Discourse, seeing that Report about the  
 Religion of the People of *Urgens* was not ill-  
 grounded at that time, because of the Inclina-  
 tion they discover'd for the Religion of the *Per-*  
*sians* \*.

*Prisoners*

After an exact Muster had been made of the  
*exchanged.* Prisoners, *Din Mahamet Sultan* resolv'd, by the  
 Advice of the other Princes, to make an Ex-  
 change of the Prisoners of Distinction which  
 they had taken in the Action, against *Kabl Sul-*  
*tan*, *Akattai Sultan*, and the other Princes and  
 Persons of Note who had been taken and sent  
 into *Great Bucharla* at the time *Avanash Chan*  
 was made Prisoner. This Proposal having been  
 communicated to the Prisoners, they engaged  
 themselves by Oath to do their best to procure  
 the Liberty of the fore-mentioned Princes, and  
 that in case *Obeit Chan* would not consent to it,  
 they would all return with their Families and  
 Effects to put themselves under the Protection  
 of their Conquerors. Thereupon *Din Mahamet*  
*Sultan* order'd Horses to be given them, and  
 named *Hadsim Sultan* to accompany them; be-  
 ing of Opinion, that as he chiefly sollicitd the  
 Liberty of his Father, and other his near Re-  
 lations, he would do all in his Power to succeed  
 in his Commission.

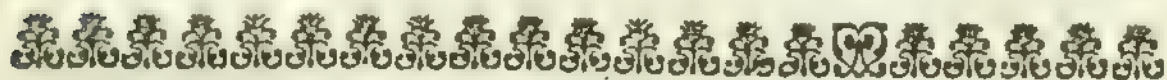
*Akattai*  
*Sultan*  
*and Kahl*  
*Sultan de-*  
*liver'd up.*

*Hadsim Sultan* understanding that *Obeit Chan*  
 had return'd into his Dominions after the News  
 of the Loss of the Battle, follow'd him into

[ \* Usbecks of *Chowarazm* and *Bucharla* averse to the *Per-*  
*sian Sect*, those of *Urgens* inclined to it.]



*Great Bucharia*, where he was very well receiv'd by *Obeit Chan*; who having been inform'd of the Convention that had been made upon the Business of the Exchange, gave immediate Orders that his Father *Akattai Sultan*, and the other Prisoners which had fallen to his Share should be deliver'd up to him. Departing from thence, *Hadsim Sultan* went to *Dsuanmart Chan* at *Samarkant*, who likewise caused all the Prisoners to be restored to him that were comprehended in the Articles of Agreement; the Princes of *Hisar*, where he went afterwards, did the same, and deliver'd to him out of hand *Kabl Sultan*, and the other Princes which they had. *Hadsim Sultan* after he had so happily executed his Commission, return'd into the Country of *Charass'm*, and hearing on the Road that *Din Mahamet Sultan* had already possess'd the Town of *Urgens*, he went thither directly with all his exchang'd Prisoners, and fill'd every Body at his Arrival with great Joy. All this happened in the Year 949. An. Dom. 1542.



C H A P. IV.

*Of Kahl Chan, Akattai Chan, Junus Chan, and Dost Chan; and of the Civil Wars among the divers Branches of the Posterity of Amunak.*

THE Descendants of *Amunak* having re-  
cover'd by the Valour of *Din Mahamet*  
*Sultan* all the Towns of the Country of *Cha-*  
*rafs'm*, they conferr'd the Dignity of *Chan* upon  
New Di-  
vision of  
Chowa-  
razm.  
S 3 Kabl



Kabl Sul-  
tan elected  
Chan.

*Kabl Sultan*, who fixt his Residence in the Town of *Urgens*, *Akattai Sultan* had the Town of *Vasir*, *Hadsim Sultan* his Son had the Town of *Bagabat*, the Descendants of *Saphian Chan* had the Town of *Chajuk*, the Sons of *Buzuga Chan* had *Hassarassap*, and *Din Mahamet Sultan* and his Brothers had the Towns of *Durubn*, *Jaurfurdi* and *Nasai*.

Akattai  
Sultan e-  
lected  
Chan.

*Kabl Chan* dying after he had reigned some Years, his Brother *Akattai Sultan* succeeded him to the Dignity of *Chan*. This Prince gave the Town of *Kabt* to two Sons of *Kabl Chan*, called *Sheich Mahamet* and *Shanaser*, and the Town of *Urgens* with the Subjects dependant on it to *Aly Sultan*, youngest Son of *Avanash Chan*, continuing himself always to reside at *Vasir*; but he did not long enjoy the sovereign Authority, which happen'd in this manner.

We have related above, that *Saphian Chan* left five Sons at his Death; one of these five Brothers called *Aly Sultan*, was killed by the Orders of *Sultan Gasi* in the manner we have seen. Another of them called *Agish Sultan* resided during his Life in the Town of *Chodsan*, belonging to the Country of *Chorassan*, which *Shab Tabmasip* had made him a Present of, where he also died at length without leaving any Children. *Jussuph Sultan* who was the eldest of those five Brothers, having been let Blood one Day, the Vein happen'd to open in the Night while he slept, and gave him his Death by a total Evacuation of his Blood; infomuch that there then remained of the five Sons of *Saphian Chan*, only *Junus* and *Paluanculi*, who were still living.

*Junus Sultan*, who was a Prince of much Ambition and Courage, having espoused the Daughter



ter of a certain *Bijaul* \* of the *Mankatts*, called *Plot of Ismael*, who was come to settle in the Country *Junus* of *Gharass'm*, departed one Day from *Chajuk*, accompany'd by Forty chosen Men, under Pretence of going to pay a Visit to his Father-in-Law, whose usual Abode was in the Neighbourhood of *Urgens*: In the Road, having passed to the North of *Kabt*, he went forward to the Town of *Tuk*, which he knew to be then empty, all the Inhabitants, as well of the Town and the Country about it being gone towards *Urgens* and *Vasir*. Having arrived at *Tuk*, he got upon a Tower of the Town in the Morning, from whence he could discover *Urgens*; and upon this Occasion, telling the Men which accompany'd him that he had a great Desire to be once at *Urgens*, because it was his Native Place; his Men reply'd, "That they were ready to follow him wherever he would go." Whereupon leaving *Tuk* in the Evening, he turn'd towards *Urgens* and arrived at Midnight at the Gate of the Town which looks towards the South.

You must know that *Aly Sultan* was not then at *Urgens*, but was gone to live in the Town of *Nasai*, after committing the Government of *Urgens* to his Brother *Machmut Sultan*, who was a very wicked Man. *Junus Sultan* having arriv'd at that Town, enter'd a-foot with his Men into the Ditch which furrounds it, after causing his Horses to be put a little out of the way; and tho the Guard which used every Night to go the Rounds by Light of Flambeaux, came while these things were doing to patrol about the Ditch; he nevertheless found means to hide himself so well with his Men, that they perceived nothing of it: But as soon as the

*Junus*  
*seizes Ur-*  
*gens by*  
*Stratagem.*

\* This Term denotes a Military Charge among the *Cara Kallpakks* and the *Tatars* of the *Casathia Orda*, which comes pretty near that of *Colonel* among us.



Guards were pass'd by, he caused a long Pole to be reared against the Wall; by help of which, having all mounted one after the other, they went directly to the House of *Machmut Sultan*, and after seizing his Person, *Junus Sultan* sent him to *Vasir*, to the Custody of *Akattai Chan*, a Daughter of whom he had also married.

*Akattai  
Chan  
marches  
against  
Junus.*

*Machmut Sultan* being arrived at *Vasir*, endeavour'd all he could to insinuate to *Akattai Chan*, that seeing *Junus Sultan* his Son-in-Law had but Forty Men, and there being no likelihood that the *Usbecks* of *Urgens* would assist *Junus Sultan* against him, who was their *Chan* and lawful Master, he ought not to neglect that Opportunity of seizing the Town of *Urgens* for himself, and turn out *Junus Sultan*. At first *Akattai Chan* would not hearken to these Proposals; nevertheless, as all the Lords of the Court never ceased importuning him to come into them, he suffer'd himself at length to be tempted by the Appearance of the infallible Success of that Enterprize; and having taken the Field with what Troops he had in readiness, he march'd towards *Urgens*: but when he was got to a Place, at a small distance from the Town, where is to be seen the Tomb of a certain Saint called *Sheich Nadsmudin Cubru*, he there found *Junus Sultan*, who accompany'd by his Brother and his Cousins, the Sons of *Kabl Chan*, already expected him with a good Body of Troops; insomuch, that they came to a Battle, wherein Fortune having decided in favour of *Junus Sultan*, *Akattai Chan* was obliged to think of saving himself by Flight.

*Is defeated.*

*Akattai  
Chan  
taken.*

On this Occasion *Kasim*, Son of *Junus Sultan*, by the Daughter of *Akattai Chan*, having taken upon him to pursue his Grandfather, cry'd out to him thrice, "Grandfather, where would  
" you



“ you go in this hot Weather, you had better  
 “ rest your self to day under some Tree, where  
 “ you may shade your self, and early To-  
 “ Morrow-morning continue your Journey :”  
 But *Akattai Chan* answer’d him each time,  
 “ Your Father has a Heart as black as a Pot,  
 “ wherefore if your Intentions towards me be  
 “ good, leave me to continue my Road, and  
 “ do me no harm.” Whereupon *Kasim* find-  
 ing he could not stop him by fair Means, forced  
 him at length, whether he would or no, to go  
 with him to *Urgens*, where he lodged him in  
 the House of an Inhabitant of the Town, called  
*Suleyman*, forbidding that he should see any  
 body.

Upon the Rumour of this Accident, all the *Junus Sul-*  
*Usbecks* who dwelt about *Urgens* having tumult-<sup>tan pro-</sup>  
 tuously assembled, acknowledged *Junus Sultan* <sup>claimed</sup>  
 for their *Chan*, without consulting the other <sup>Chan by a</sup>  
 Princes of the Posterity of *Amunak* thereupon. <sup>Faction of</sup>  
 Some days after, *Junus Chan* sent to tell the <sup>the Us-</sup>  
 Sons of *Akattai Chan*, who made their Abode <sup>becks.</sup>  
 at *Vasir*; “ The good Man, your Father,  
 “ having fled before us during the Noon-day  
 “ Heats, found himself attack’d with so vio-  
 “ lent a Cholick, that tho we had no Desire  
 “ to take him, we were obliged, finding him  
 “ quite spent, to have him conveyed home with  
 “ us; and this Cholick has been already tor-  
 “ menting him fifteen days.” But after the *Akattai*  
 Departure of that Messenger, he sent Four Men *Chan*  
 to the House which serv’d for a Prison to *Akat-* <sup>murder’d.</sup>  
*tai Chan*, with Directions to bind his Hands  
 and Feet, and impale him alive, taking all the  
 Care imaginable that there should be found no  
 Marks of a violent Death upon his Body; to  
 the end that his Sons might think the Cholick  
 had carry’d him off: Which having been exe-  
 cuted



cuted agreeable to his Intentions, he sent the dead Body of *Akattai Chan* to *Vasir*, with many Compliments to his Sons, expressing the Concern he was in at the Loss which they had upon this Occasion. These are the Names of the six Sons of *Akattai Chan*, 1. *Hadsim*, 2. *Mabamut*, 3. *Pulat*, 4. *Timur*, 5. *Allaculi*, 6. *Suleyman*: The two eldest of these six Brothers, took up their Abode at that time at *Bagabat*, which depends upon *Chorassan*; and the Four others at *Vasir*.

Sons of  
Akattai  
Chan  
march to  
Urgens.

Junus  
Chan flies  
into Great  
Bucharina.

As soon as the News of the Death of *Akattai Chan* reach'd *Vasir*, his Four Sons who were there at that time gave notice immediately to their two eldest Brothers, who resided at *Bagabat*; and they agreed together to join all their Forces to go and revenge the Death of their Father. Pursuant to this Resolution, the two eldest Brothers did not fail to set forward in time with their Troops to be at the Rendezvous by the Day appointed: But as soon as they had pass'd the River *Amu*, *Junus Chan* not daring to wait for them at *Urgens*, fled into *Great Bucharina*, with his Brother and the Sons of *Kabl Chan*, his Cousins. On the Road most of his Men abandon'd him, and his Son *Kasim* lost his way in such wise, that being accompany'd but by one Man, and not knowing either where he was, or which way to turn himself, he resolv'd to lie hid all next day among the Reeds of a Pond, where he arrived that Night, that he might have time to consider what to do. What embarrass'd him most on this Occasion was, that having so long a Journey to make, as was that into *Great Bucharina*, where his Father was gone to seek for Refuge, he was almost quite destitute of Provisions: but the Man who was with him propos'd, that if he thought fit, he would



would go and try to get some, whilst he might <sup>Kasim be-</sup> repose himself, expecting his Return; adding, <sup>trayed.</sup> that he did not believe he ran the least Hazard, inasmuch as he was not known by any body in those Parts: *Kasim* having consented to this Proposal, his Man, instead of going for Provision, went directly to *Urgens* to find *Hadsim Sultan*, and having discover'd to him the Place where the Son of *Junus Chan* lay hid, *Hadsim Sultan* sent thither immediately some of his Men with Orders to bring him before him; which having been done accordingly, he caused <sup>Put to</sup> him to be put to death off-hand; and since <sup>death.</sup> that time, they have given the Name of *Chan-zungali* to that Pond. This Revolution hap- <sup>An. Dom.</sup> pen'd in the Year 956. 1549.

The Descendants of *Saphian Chan*, and of <sup>A new</sup> *Kabl Chan*, having been in this manner intire- <sup>Partition</sup> ly stript of what they had in the Country of <sup>of the</sup> *Charass'm*, the Children of *Avanash Chan* con- <sup>Towns of</sup> tinued in Possession of the Towns which de- <sup>Chowa-</sup> rased on *Chorassan*. The Sons of *Akattai Chan* held *Urgens* and *Vasir*; and the three Sons of *Buzzuga Chan*, called *Ish*, *Dost* and *Burum*, possessed themselves of the Towns of *Chajuk*, *Hassarassap* and *Kabt*: after which, they <sup>Din Ma-</sup> conferr'd the Dignity of *Chan* on *Din Mabamet* <sup>hamet</sup> *Sultan*, who died after he had reigned some <sup>Sultan</sup> Years. We shall speak more fully hereafter <sup>chosen</sup> concerning this Prince. *Chan.*

After the Death of *Din Mabamet Chan*, they <sup>Dost Sul-</sup> chose *Dost Sultan* for his Successor in that Dig- <sup>tan cho-</sup> nity: 'Tis true that *Ish Sultan*, who was eldest <sup>sen</sup> of the Sons of *Buzzuga Chan*, was much more generous and courageous than his Brother *Dost Chan*; but as he wanted Wit, and was suspected as to his Religion, besides that he loved Whoring to Excess; they rather chose to have his



his younger Brother for *Chan*, who was Gentle and Wise, than him who was too Ambitious and Passionate.

*Ish Sultan  
marches  
to take  
Urgens.*

*Ish Sultan*, little satisfy'd with his younger Brother's possessing the Town of *Chajuk*, and the Dignity of *Chan* in his Prejudice, desired Assistance of his Brothers to put him in a Capacity to take the Town of *Urgens*; and having obtained some Succours from them, he set forward on his March towards it: but arriving in the Territory of *Zilpuk*, which belongs to the Country of *Kumkant*, he found *Hadsim Sultan* there; who having Notice of his Design, came to meet him with Forces much superior to his own: whereupon *Ish Sultan* went and took possession of the Banks of a small neighbouring River to secure his Men behind, and having caused his Front to be cover'd with a kind of Intrenchment made with his Chariots, he in that Condition expected his Enemy without stirring. *Hadsim Sultan* attack'd him at the beginning very vigorously; but *Ish Sultan* defended himself so well, that he obliged *Hadsim Sultan*, after an Attack of eight Days, to come to an Accommodation with him. On this Occasion *Ish Sultan* put to a cruel Death all those of the Tribes of the *Vigurs*, and the *Naimanns* which fell into his Hands, treating, on the contrary, very well all the Prisoners of other Tribes, even to the giving them Horses to enable them to return home. He caused at his Return, all the *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* who dwelt about *Chajuk*, to be driven from thence, and settled the *Durmanns* in their room.

*Attackt in  
the way  
and re-  
turns.*

*Marches  
towards  
Urgens. a  
second  
time.*

Some Years after, *Ish Sultan* form'd a new Enterprize against *Urgens*; but *Hadsim Sultan*, accompany'd by his Brothers, having taken the Field at the Head of a good Army, advanced again



again to meet him, and encounter'd him between the Town of *Tuk* and that of *Urgens*. *Ish Sultan*, who before found the Advantage of securing himself behind his Chariots, did not fail this time of covering himself also with them, as with an Intrenchment; and having in this manner fought for seven days against the superior Forces of his Enemies, with almost an equal Loss, he found Means in the Night, without Noise, to pass out of his Intrenchment with all his Men, and go seize *Urgens*. *Hadjim Sul-* <sup>Surprizes</sup> *tan* knowing nothing of his Departure till after *Urgens*. he had enter'd that City, where such a Surprise was so little expected, that it was not without a kind of Miracle that the younger Brothers of *Hadjim Sultan*, who remained in that Town, could make their escape to *Vasir*. The Moment *Ish Sultan* saw himself Master of the Town, he ordered that all the *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* who dwelt there should retire forthwith to *Vasir*, without suffering them to carry with them the least that might be of their Goods, which he distributed among his Troops; but he did not meddle with the Inhabitants of the other Tribes of the *Usbecks*, who were settled at *Urgens*.

In the mean time, *Hadjim Sultan* and *Ish Sul-* <sup>Urgens re-</sup> *tan* did each his Endeavours to secure *Aly* <sup>taken.</sup> *Sultan* in his Interest, who then resided at *Nasai*; because it appeared he would incline the Ballance to the side he was of: *Aly Sultan* having at last declared in favour of *Hadjim Sultan*, and having drawn with him into that Party, as the most just, *Abul Sultan*, Son of *Din Mahamet Chan*, those two Princes came with considerable Forces to join *Hadjim Sultan*, and went and besieged *Urgens*. *Ish Sultan* defended himself in the beginning very well, but the Besiegers at length giving a general Assault,



Affault, *Ish Sultan*, after having posted his Men round the Walls, mounted on Horseback the readier to transport himself wherever his Presence was necessary. On this Occasion, a *Durmann* called *Tin-Aly*, who had a private Grudge to him, on Account of having ravish'd his Sister, having wounded the *Sultan's* Horse in the Flank with an Arrow, the Horse caper'd and threw *Ish Sultan* so violently upon the Ground, that he broke one of his Legs. Whereupon a *Sart*, who came with him from *Chajuk*, and was called *Hapculi-Paluan*, ran immediately to help him up, and did his best to set him on Horseback again: but the Enemy who had in the Interim scaled the Walls, coming upon them, slew them both, *Ish Sultan* as well as *Hapculi-Paluan*.

*Ish Sultan*  
slain.

*Chajuk*  
taken, and  
*Dost Chan*  
put to  
death.

An. Dom.  
1557.

After having in this manner taken the City of *Urgens*, the Confederate Princes sent immediately an Army to *Chajuk*, which they likewise took, and put to death *Dost Chan*, the Brother of *Ish Sultan*, who was Master of that Town. *Ish Sultan* left two Sons at his Death, called *Shah Culi* and *Tabir*, whom *Hadsim Chan*, and his Confederates, sent into *Great Bucharica*, where they died afterwards without leaving any Children; insomuch that the Posterity of *Buzzuga Chan* became quite extinct with them. This Revolution happen'd in the Year 965, called *Gilki*, or *the Horse*.

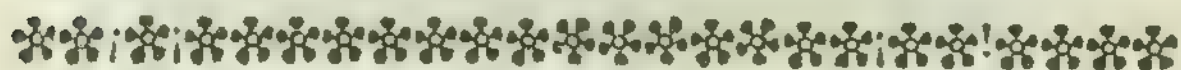
The same Year *Hadsim Sultan* \* was declared *Chan* at the Age of thirty five, and went to

[\* Ant. Jenkinson, who in this Year was at *Urgens*, tells us *Azim Chan* was then at *Selizure*, a Castle two day's Journey to the West. This Observation hath led de Lisle into a Mistake; who in his late Map of Persia, for the Use of the present French King, remarks at *Selizure*, that it is the Residence of a *Chan*.]

reside



reside at *Vasir*; and seeing, of all the Descendants of *Amunak*, there were only the Children of *Avanash Chan*, and *Akattai Chan*, at that time in the Country of *Charass'm*, they gave the Towns of *Urgens*, *Hassarassap* and *Kabt* to *Aly Sultan*, youngest Son of *Avanash Chan*, two of the Sons of *Akattai Chan*, viz. *Allaculi* and *Suleyman*, died about that time. Of the four others that still remained, *Mahamut Sultan* lived continually with his Brother *Hadsim Chan*, because they were both by the same Mother. But *Pulat Sultan*, and *Timur Sultan*, who were also by one Mother, had each of them a Moiety of the City of *Chajuk*, and they assigned over and above to *Pulat Sultan*, the *Turkman* Tribe of *Uluktu-baconash* for his Support, and to *Timur*, that of *Cara-bugaul*.



## C H A P. V.

*Of Din Mahamet Chan, and of the other  
Descendants of Avanash Chan.*

I HAVE said above, that *Din Mahamet Jaurfurdi Chan* with his Brothers, was in Possession of <sup>taken by</sup> the Towns of *Duruhn* and *Jaurfurdi*; but be- <sup>the Per-</sup> cause he was a Prince that could not sit idle; he <sup>sians,</sup> no sooner saw himself in Possession of those Towns, but he began to make War upon the *Persians*, who were in Possession of the Towns of the Country of *Chorassan*, which obliged *Shah Tabmasip* to send thither an Army, which took from him the Town of *Jaurfurdi*: After which the *Persian* Troops having retir'd, *Din Mahamet Chan* took Horse, and coming to

I Gafwin



Caswin.

*Caswin* where *Shah Tahmasip* then kept his Residence, he pray'd him to restore to him the Town of *Jaurfurdi*; but the *Shah* turn'd the Discourse to other Matters, and would not hear speak of that Affair.

Din Mahamet Chan  
counterfeits the  
Shah's Seal.

*Din Mahamet Chan* having thereupon got a Seal to be engraved at *Caswin*, with the Name of the *Shah*, in every Respect like that which *Shah Tahmasip* made use of, he wrote a Letter in the Name of the *Shah* to the Commander of *Jaurfurdi*, importing, that he should deliver up the Town to *Din Mahamet Chan*, and come himself to Court. He afterwards sealed that Letter with the Seal which he had graved for that Purpose, and kept it for the Use he intended to make of it. A few days after *Shah Tahmasip* having gone a Hunting, *Din Mahamet Chan* made a Shew as if he would follow him; but upon the first Opportunity which he found of getting out of sight of the Company, he struck into the Road of *Jaurfurdi* with his Men, and having arrived there, went straitway to deliver the pretended Letter of the *Shah* to the *Persian* Commander; who to shew his Readiness to obey it, did not fail to deliver up the Town the same Day, and return towards his Master: But as soon as he was out of the Town, *Din Mahamet Chan* ordered the Gates to be shut, and all the *Persians* that were therein to be put to the Sword.

Recovers  
Jaurfurdi  
by a forged  
Letter.

Shah Tahmas  
marches  
against  
Din Mahamet  
Chan.

Upon this News *Shah Tahmasip* took the Field with a considerable Army to revenge himself for the Cheat *Din Mahamet Chan* had put upon him; but when he had arriv'd in the Territory of *Mesbed*, near a small River called *Cara-su*, his Advance-Guard gave him twice Intelligence that *Din Mahamet Chan* was arrived in the Camp with a Retinue of fifty Horse.

*Shah*



*Shah Tabmasip* looked upon this Information to be so ridiculous that he would not give Credit to it, till they brought him word that Prince *Din Mahamet Chan* was at his Tent Door. *Din Mahamet Chan* entering at the same time, fell on his Knees before the *Shah*; who was so surprized at this extraordinary Boldness, that not satisfy'd with putting his Right Hand upon the Left Shoulder of *Din Mahamet Chan*, he thrust his Left into the *Chan's* Bosom, to try if his Heart did not beat a little; but perceiving no Motion there, more than what's usual, he could not avoid admiring the Intrepidity of that Prince, and on that account he pardon'd him all that was past, and left him in the Possession of the Town of *Jaur-surdi*: After which the *Shah* having given him a magnificent Feast, sent him home next Day loaded with rich Presents, and conducted him in Person some distance from the Camp: After which he returned with his Army to the Country of *Irak*.

Some time after, *Obeit Chan* of Great *Bucharia*, having taken the Town of *Meru*, gave the Command of it to a Chief of the Tribe of the *Naimanns*, called *Julumbi*, and carried the *Persian* Commander of that Town with him into Great *Bucharia* as Prisoner of War. In the mean time, some envious of the Fortune of *Julumbi* having found Means to render him suspected to *Obeit Chan*, he sent immediate Orders for him to come before him: but the Commander of *Meru*, informed of the ill Offices which had been done him with the *Chan*, was not over hasty to obey those Orders; thinking, that by gaining Time, he might find some favourable Opportunity of making known his Innocence to the *Chan*: Whereupon *Obeit Chan* believing that he really designed to revolt, sent an Army of 30000

T

Men

Bold Acti-  
on of Din  
Mahamet  
Chan.

Meru ta-  
ken by  
Obeit  
Chan.



*Stratagem  
of Din Ma-  
hamet  
Chan.*

*Din Ma-  
hamet  
Chan  
takes Pos-  
session of  
Meru.*

*And  
makes it  
his Resi-  
dence.*

*Character  
of Din  
Mahamet  
Chan.*

*An. Dom.  
1552.*

Men against him to bring him to his Duty. This so unexpected News having put *Julumbi* to his last Shifts, he called in *Din Mahamet Chan* to his Succour, who set forwards forthwith for *Meru*: but in regard he had but very few Troops with him, he ordered his Men that each of them should cut three small Trees, and fix one on each side of his Body, and the third at the Tail of his Horse; having afterwards caused them to march at a great distance from one another; any one would have believed, to see the Marks which they made upon the soft and marshy Ground of that Country, that a great Army had passed that way.

In the mean time the Generals of *Obeit Chan* being informed that *Julumbi* expected Succours from *Din Mahamet Chan*, sent Spies to get Intelligence of his March, and inform themselves of the Number of his Troops. The Spies, at their Return, unanimously reported that *Din Mahamet Chan* was on the March with a numerous Army, which plainly appeared by the Road thro' which they came. Whereupon the Generals of *Obeit Chan* resolved to return with their Army as fast as they could before they had seen any Enemy, fearing that this numerous Army of *Din Mahamet Chan*, coming to join the Troops of *Julumbi*, they could not avoid being overcome by the great Numbers of the Enemy. After which, *Din Mahamet Chan* having taken Possession of the Town of *Meru*, fixt his Residence for the remainder of his Life.

*Din Mahamet Chan* was a Prince, who besides the other Heroick Virtues which he possessed in a high degree, was extremely generous, gracious and eloquent; and withal, had a very peculiar Brightness of Wit. He died in the Town of *Meru* in the Year 960, called *Sigir*,



gir, or the Cow, at the Age of Forty Years. He <sup>His Chil-</sup>  
left behind him two Sons, the eldest of which <sup>dren.</sup>  
called *Saganda Mahamet*, was not in his right  
Senses, and the youngest called *Abul Sultan*: As <sup>Story of</sup>  
much disordered as the eldest of these two Bro- <sup>Saganda</sup>  
thers was in his Intellects, he went to his Father <sup>Mahamet.</sup>  
on a time when he had a great many People  
with him, and asked him whether it was by his  
Orders that they gave the Name of *Sultan* to  
his younger Brother, and called him only by his  
proper Name: His Father having no Answer to  
make him thereupon, one of his Lords called  
*Turumzi*, who was a Chief of the *Turkmanns*,  
told him he ought not to wonder at that, see-  
ing that he who was the eldest having been  
born in the Life-time of his Grandfather *Ava-*  
*nash Chan*, they could not give him any other  
Name than what he had; whereas his Brother  
having been born since his Father was in posses-  
sion of divers Towns and Provinces, they were  
accustomed from his Birth to give him the  
Name of *Sultan*. This Explanation, tho bad  
enough, satisfy'd *Saganda Mahamet*, who dying  
some time after, left one Son, of whom we  
know not the Name, who had the Town of  
*Meru* for his Share; but his own Domesticks  
cut his Throat in his Sleep, when he was but  
twenty three Years old. He left no Heirs at  
his Death.

After the Death of *Din Mahamet Chan*, his <sup>Abul Sul-</sup>  
youngest Son *Abul Sultan* succeeded him in all <sup>tan suc-</sup>  
his Domains, and reigned several Years with <sup>ceeds in</sup>  
much Wisdom and Conduct: At length he <sup>all his Fa-</sup>  
raised a great Army, and made an Irruption in- <sup>ther's Do-</sup>  
to the Country of *Chorassan*, accompany'd by <sup>mains, but</sup>  
his only Son, whose Name we know not; but <sup>not as</sup>  
arriving at the Town of *Mesbed*, he detach'd <sup>Chan.</sup>  
his Son with the best part of his Army to pe-



netrate deeper into the Country, and returned himself towards *Meru* with the few Troops which he kept to guard his Person, after having spent twenty days about *Mesbed*. in the mean time the Son of *Abul Sultan* having advanced as far as a River called *Cara-su*, which is to the West of *Mesbed*, he there found a General of the *Persians*, who came with a great Army to meet him in Battle; and the two Armies coming to Blows, that of *Abul Sultan* was defeated, and his Son lost his Life, with 10000 of his Men. His Father, upon hearing this sad News, grieved so much, that he fell dangerously ill beyond the Help of a Physician, the Affliction which he felt for the Loss of his Son causing all his Disorder.

*History of  
his She  
Slave.*

On this Occasion, there happen'd to be a Woman at *Meru*, who gave out that some Years before, the *Sultan* having sent for her one Night to play on the Harp before him, took a Fancy to lye with her, and that she had a Son by that Adventure: She added thereto, that that was the Reason why she never would marry after, tho she had several advantageous Offers that way: That till then she never durst publish that Matter for fear of drawing on her the Anger of the *Sultan's* Spouse, but that now the Prince was at the Point of Death, and that his Son was already four Years old, she could no longer be silent in the Affair. Whereupon one of the Physicians, who passed for the most skilful in the Country, order'd the *Sultan* and the Child also to be undrest, and having laid the Child upon the Belly of the dying *Sultan*, he had them both covered in that Condition with a Coverlet; after which he began to cry out with all his Force in the Ears of the *Sultan*, who had already almost lost his Hearing: *Sultan, behold*



a Son of yours ! And having continued afterwards to do the same thing three times a day, the *Sultan* recruited by little and little, and at length quite recover'd his former Health: After which he owned this Child for his Son, and gave him the Name of *Nur Mahamet*.

*Abul Sultan* dying, *Nur Mahamet* succeeded him in all his Dominions; but after he had possessed them some Years, all the Princes of the House of *Hadjim Chan*, who were in the Possession of the Towns of the Country of *Charassam*, united together against him, under Pretence that they would not have it said they had the Son of a Strumpet for their Brother and Relation. *Nur Mahamet* finding himself in no Condition to resist so much Forces joined together, was obliged to sue for Protection to *Obeit Chan* of *Great Buchar*<sup>ia</sup>, and to deliver up to him the Towns of *Meru*, *Nasai*, *Jaurfurdi* and *Durubn*, which were the four Towns that belonged to him; imagining that *Obeit Chan* would leave him in the Possession of them, and be content with his paying him a certain Tribute yearly: But *Obeit Chan* after having placed good Garisons in them, and by that Precaution baffled the Designs of the Princes of the House of *Hadjim Chan*, did not speak of giving up any of 'em to *Nur Mahamet*; which having sensibly touch'd him, he quitted the Court of *Obeit Chan*, and went to *Urgens* to the Princes of the House of *Hadjim Chan*, who received him very well, and kept him with them for five Years.

At length *Obeit Chan* dying, and *Abdula Chan* \* <sup>Abdalla Chan succeeds Obeit Chan.</sup> having succeeded to the Scepter of *Great Buchar*<sup>ia</sup>, it Chan.

T 3

\* *Abdula Chan* descended from the second Son of *Abulgar Chan*, called *Chodsa Mahamet Sultan*, who was the Uncle of



*charia*, Nur Mahamet went to recover the Possession of the four Towns which Obeit Chan had usurp'd from him, in hopes that time would not fail to furnish him with some favourable Opportunity of making Peace with Abdula Chan, who was marry'd to his Aunt, by the Father's side, the Daughter of Din Mahamet Chan, by whom he had already a Son called Abdulmomin. This Enterprize having succeeded to his Wish, he put to the Sword all the *Usbecks* which he found in these Towns, and establish'd the *Sarts* and *Turkmanns* in their stead.

Meru subdued by Shah Abas.

But Shah Abas \* *Masi* of Persia, willing on his side also to profit by the Death of Obeit Chan, came in Person to besiege Meru with a powerful Army, and having at length made himself Master of that Town after a Siege of forty days, Nur Mahamet, who had been so imprudent as to suffer himself to be shut up there, fell into his hands; after which having found no Difficulty in taking *Nasai*, *Durubn* and *Jaurfurdi*, which were the three other Towns of the Dominion of Nur Mahamet, he placed therein strong Garrisons, and sent Nur Mahamet to Shiras, where

of Shabacht Sultan, and he was a great Grandson of this last, agreeable to what our Author relates thereupon, p. 210. so also, he was not of the Race of Burga Sultan, as he gives us to understand, p. 220.

\* 'Tis of Shah Abas I. surnamed The Great, that our Author speaks in this Place: That Prince was Grandson of Shah Tamas I. and Son of Shah Mahamet Chodabende, who wore the Crown of Persia but seven Years.

Shah Abas I. ascended the Throne in the Year 1587, and died 1629, after he had reigned forty two Years with much Glory. 'Twas this Prince who put the Kingdom of Persia in that flourishing Condition, in which it appeared for above an Age, and in which it would have still continued if his Successors had not since then degenerated exceedingly from the Virtue of that Great Prince. See Olearius, and Pietro della Valle, Delle Conditioni di Shah Abas.

he



he afterwards finish'd his days; and with him ended the Posterity of *Din Mahamet Chan*.

Of three Sons which *Avanash Chan* left at his Death, *Din Mahamet Chan* of whom we have spoken was the eldest; the second was called *Machmut*, and surnamed *Sari Machmut*, that is to say, *Machmut the yellow*. 'Tis to be observed, that among all the Descendants of *Amunak* there was only *Machmut Sultan* who was of a yellowish Complexion; all the rest of the Princes of that House being of a fine brown. *Machmut Sultan* was a Prince addicted to all sorts of Vices; he loved Drink so much, that being one Day at a Man's House where he was drinking *Braga*, and some body coming to inform him that the Enemies Troops appeared near at hand, he, while all the rest ran to their Horses with a great deal of unconcern, took a Knife and mark'd all the Pots which had *Braga* in them, recommending to the Host to take great Care of those Pots, to the end he might give him a good Account of them at his Return; which shewed that his excessive Debauches had already disturbed his Reason, and in truth he died soon after without leaving any Children.

*Aly Sultan* was the youngest of the three Sons of *Avanash Chan*, and possessed at divers times the Towns of *Nasai*, *Jaurfurdi*, *Urgens*, *Hassarassap* and *Kabt*, with all the Subjects which depended on them. He was accustomed every Year, about the beginning of Spring, to cross the River *Amu* and to incamp about the Frontiers of the Country of *Chorassan*, where he usually passed the Summer, sending Parties from time to time into the Lands of *Istarabat* and *Chorassan*, to prey upon the *Persians*; and at the beginning of Autumn he return'd to *Urgens*. He muster'd all the *Usbecks* which were in his

*Machmut Sultan, second Son of Avanash Chan.*

*A great Debauchee.*

*Aly Sultan third Son of Avanash Chan.*



How they  
pay their  
Soldiers.

Service every Year, of whom he kept very exact Lists; each of them had sixteen Sheep a Year for his Pay, to which he allotted the Contribution-Sheep which he received from the *Turkmanns*; and when there were not enough of them, he supply'd the Want by the Booty-Sheep which his Parties carry'd off in the Summer from the *Persians*.

Shah  
Tahmas  
sends an  
Army a-  
gainst  
him.

*Shah Tahmasip* having been inform'd on all hands of the extraordinary Ravages which the Parties of *Aly Sultan* made yearly on the Lands under his Jurisdiction, sent at length one of his Generals called *Bader Chan*, with 12000 Men towards the Frontiers of *Chorassan*, with Orders to fight *Aly Sultan* wherever he should meet with him: And to prevent that Prince being informed by his Spies of his Design, he engaged *Bader Chan* to keep his Instructions secret till he should find he had it in his Power to execute them. In the mean time *Aly Sultan*, who suspected nothing of the Matter, had enter'd according to his usual Custom with some Troops into the Country of *Istarabat*, in order to oblige the *Turkman* Tribe of *Okli Koklan* to pay him Contribution. *Bader Chan* who got News of it at his Arrival at *Bastam*, not failing thereupon to take without delay the Rout of the Country of *Istarabat*: *Aly Sultan* having been informed of the Approach of the *Persian* Army, was indeed a little surprized at it at first, but did not lose his Courage for all that; and in regard he had run too great a Risk to have retired in the Face of the Enemy, he went to possess himself of the Banks of the River of *Kurgan*, resolving to expect the Enemy there without stirring.

Descripti-  
on of the  
River  
*Kurgan*.

The *Kurgan* is a River very difficult to pass, being every where equally rapid and deep, and having



having the Banks extremely high, except in some few Places where one may find the Bottom, and ford it on Horseback. I can speak by experience, for I have passed this River often, and found that the Banks are in many Places above 100 Cubits high. Upon the Banks of this River *Aly Sultan* posted the most advantageously he could the 3000 Men of which his small Army consisted; and as he had with him a great Number of Chariots, with many Horses and other Beasts, he caused these last to be well ty'd behind the Line upon the Banks of the River, and employed the Chariots to cover the Front of his Troops instead of an Intrenchment.

In this Posture he expected the *Persians*, who came to attack him several times with much Violence; but as they had only Cavalry, and the Soldiers of *Aly Sultan* defended themselves bravely, they could get no Advantage of them: *Attack'd in vain by the Persians.* Whereupon one of the Chiefs of the *Turkmanns* called *Aba-beg*, who had followed *Aly Sultan* in that Expedition, impatient to see no end of this Fight, sallied out of the Inclosure of the Chariots with the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Okli* *Aba-beg the Turk-mann makes a Sally.* who were under his Command, and might make about 300 Men, saying he would go and charge the Enemy behind while *Aly Sultan* attack'd them in Front: but after his Departure the principal Officers of *Aly Sultan* were of Opinion he should not have rely'd on *Aba-beg*, and his *Turkmanns*, and that it was ill done to let them go out of the Intrenchments, because there was a great Probability they went to join the Enemy. *Aly Sultan* who was present at all these Reasonings little minded them, and made answer, *Patience!* if they are gone to join the Enemy I put my Confidence in God, who will find a way to deliver us out of this imminent Danger,



Danger, and it may be the Enemy have yet need of those 300 Men, besides the 12000 which they have already.

*Aly Sultan  
sallies to  
support  
Aba-beg.*

*Persians  
put to  
Flight.*

But *Aba-beg*, incapable of such a Treachery, had already began the Fight with the *Persians* at the very Juncture that they were speaking so much to his Disadvantage before *Aly Sultan*; for the *Persians* doubting his Design, came and attack'd him thrice with so much Vigur, that he had been at length oppress'd by the Numbers of the Enemy, if *Aly Sultan* perceiving it in time had not sallied out of his Intrenchment immediately and charged them in front; which having put them into Disorder they were obliged to betake themselves to Flight, after having left the best part of their Men upon the Field of Battle, and *Aly Sultan* having pursued them till far in the Night, *Bader Sultan* had much ado to save himself from this Defeat, with a very few of his Men. On this Occasion they took so great a Number of Horses from the Enemy, that *Aly Sultan* having made a Present to his 'Squire, called *Mirachar*, of every ninth Horse of those which fell to his share, *Mirachar* had 700 for himself; not to mention the Horses which fell in Division to the Chiefs and Soldiers as their due.

*Aly Sultan  
invades  
Persia.*

Fifteen Years after this *Aly Sultan* assembled a fine Army to make an Invasion into *Persia*, and having advanced as far as *Zengell* or the *Desart*, which lies beyond *Chodsan*, he resolved to pass the Winter thereabouts and go in quest of the *Persians* at the beginning of Spring; but about the middle of Winter he fell ill of a contagious Ulcer which broke out between the Shoulders; and as he was so bashful that he would not suffer any body to see it, the Lords who accompany'd him in that Expedition were obliged



obliged to use Force and have the Clothes cut over the Part affected in order to come at it. Nevertheless whatever Care could be taken to cure him, there was no doing it, and he died at length of that Ulcer at the Age of forty Years, *His Death* which happened in the Year 979, called *Sigir* or *An. Dom.* the Cow. *1571.*

*Aly Sultan* was a Prince of so much Merit, *His Character.* that *Hadsim Chan*, his Cousin, often said of him, that among all the Descendants of *Jadigar Chan*, he had not his Equal either in Bravery and Liberality, or in Sincerity, Modesty, and especially in the Art of Reigning. He gave at his Death a last Proof of his Bashfulness in this, that one of his Domesticks called *Atabai*, having a mind to try whether his Legs began to grow cold, *Aly Sultan* would not let him, by reason that having in all his Life never suffered any one either to see or touch his naked Body, he would not begin to suffer him when he was dying. He did speedy Justice to those who *His Justice.* demanded it of him, of which there are two Instances remarkable enough. One day when he had enter'd with his Troops into the Country of *Chorassan*, it happened that one of his Men called *Togaizi*, having lost his Horse, sent his Brother in search of him: That Man returning to the Camp after having found his Brother's Horse, had a Sheep's-Head hung at his Saddle-bow, which having been observed by another Man, he came and laid Claim to it, pretending he had lost it, but he who had the Head would not give it up, alledging that he had found it. This Affair having been brought before *Aly Sultan*, he order'd him who said he had found the Sheep's-head to be hang'd off-hand, taking it for granted that he had stolen it from his Comrade. Another time his Troops passing by



by the side of a Field sowed with *Arbouses* \*, one of his Men called *Zahara* went and took two of them ; but the Man to whom that Field belong'd having made his Complaint to *Aly Sultan*, he immediately order'd a Post to be set up near the Field of *Arbouses*, and him who had taken two of them to be hang'd upon it, without stirring from the Place till he had seen the Thief die.

*His Children.*

*Sanger.*

*Aly Sultan* left two Sons, the eldest of which called *Iskander*, died six Months after his Father, and the youngest called *Sandfer*, was disturbed in his Brain. Nevertheless a Lord of the Tribe of the *Naimanns*, called *Kul-Mahamet*, got him the Possession of the Town of *Nasai* ; and that People might not perceive he was disorder'd in his Senses, he contrived that the *Sultan* should not shew himself above once a Week in publick, while the aforesaid Lord took care of the publick Affairs in the Name of *Sandfer Sultan*, and did him the Honour of all the Orders which he gave for that purpose. *Sandfer Sultan* having reigned ten Years in that manner, died without leaving Heirs.

[\* *Jenkinson* calls them *Carbuses*.]



CHAP.



## C H A P. VI.

*Of Hadfim Chan, and the other Descendants of Akattai Chan.*

WE have said above that *Akattai Chan* left <sup>Akattai Chan's Posterity.</sup> six Sons, viz. 1. *Hadfim Sultan*, 2. *Mahamut*, 3. *Pulat*, 4. *Timur*, 5. *Allaculi*, 6. *Suleymann*; this last died at the Age of eighteen Years, and his Brother *Allaculi* at twenty three. *Mahamut Sultan*, the Second of these two Brothers, died at the Age of forty Years and left six Sons, 1. *Mahamut Sultan*, 2. *Amin*, 3. *Aly*, 4. *Mahamet Amin*, 5. *Arab*, 6. *Akbaba*. Of these six Sons of *Mahamut Sultan* there were two, viz. *Amin* and *Mahamet Amin*, who died soon after their Father. *Amin* left no Children, but *Mahamet Amin* left two Sons, the eldest of which was called *Shab Aly*, and the youngest *Shabacht*: and the other four Sons of *Mahamut Sultan* had each a Son; but having fallen all four with their Children, who were yet very young, and the two Sons of their Brother *Mahamet Amin*, into the hands of *Abdula Chan* of <sup>Abdalla Chan of Great Bucharria.</sup> *Great Bucharria*, upon an Occasion which we shall relate hereafter, he put them all to death; and the Wives of *Arab* and *Aly* being with Child when this Misfortune happen'd to them, *Abdula Chan* caused them to be closely guarded; and one of them having been deliver'd of a Son, he caused him also to be put to death the Minute he was born; but the other being a Daughter, he spared her. *Timur Sultan*, the fourth Son of *Akattai Chan*, died also at the Age of Forty, and left three Sons, called, 1. *Mahamet Sultan*, 2. *Cadir Birdi*, 3. *Abulgair*, whom *Abdulla* also caused



caused to be put to death: *Pulat Sultan*, the third Son of *Akattai Chan*, had four Sons, 1. *Baba Sultan*, 2. *Hamsa*, 3. *Koisi*, 4. *Paluanculi*; the three first of whom, with their Father, *Abdula Chan* ordered to be put to death; and the fourth, viz. *Paluanculi* died five Years after.

*Pulat Sultan.*

*Pulat Sultan* was not at all in his right Senses, wherefore *Hadsim Chan* his Brother had committed the publick Affairs at *Chajuk*, where *Pulat Sultan* resided, to a Lord of the Tribe of the *Vigurs* called *Indebai*: *Timur Sultan* had no more Wit than he, but he knew better how to behave himself, and joined to a solid Conduct in the Affairs of Government much Bravery on

*Custom of Timur Sultan.*

warlike Occasions. This Prince never went to eat at the House of any one whatsoever; and one day that he was come from *Hassarassap*, where he usually resided, to *Chajuk* to see his Brother *Pulat Sultan*, the aforesaid Lord of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, who on account of *Pulat Sultan's* Indisposition had the Administration of his Affairs, came as he was taking Horse to beg the Favour of him to return and eat a Morfel with him; adding, he had some reason to flatter himself that he would not refuse him that Honour, seeing he was one of his eldest Domesicks, and that it would be a Glory which himself only could boast of, that he who went to eat at no Man's House, had not disdained to go and eat a Bit with him; but *Timur Sultan* taking off a Robe of Cloth of Gold fur'd with *Zibelines*, which he wore at that time because it was Winter, he made a Present of it to *Indebai*, instead of answering him, and departed immediately.

*Story of Timur Sultan.*

This is the Reason why *Timur Sultan* never went to eat with any one: That Prince having one Day when he was about fifteen Years of Age,



Age, taken Horse to ride about the Town of *Vasir*, it happen'd that entring into a neighbouring Village, a Countryman came to intreat the Honour of him to go take a Repast at his House; *Timur Sultan* accepting of the Invitation, the Peasant in order to treat him the better killed a fat Sheep, and at his Departure made him a Present of a good Gigot which was left. *Timur Sultan* at his Return to *Vasir* went to offer that Gigot to his Father *Akattai Chan*, who asked him how he came by it, and understanding it was a Countryman that made him a Present of it; and that the Countryman, to treat him the handsomer, had caused a fat Sheep to be killed of which that Gigot was the Remains; his Father reply'd, 'I am now fifty Years  
' old, and never put any one to the least In-  
' conveniency to make me eat, and you who  
' are but fifteen go already to eat with the Pea-  
' sants, who are obliged to kill Sheep to treat  
' you; what will not you do when you are  
' older? then they must kill Horses and Cows  
' to regale you, and your Vassals on their side  
' wont fail to imitate you, and consequently  
' your poor Subjects will soon be reduced to  
' beggary: I must in time put a stop to your  
' Inclination of going to eat out of the House.'  
And upon that having order'd him to be strip'd, he gave him thirty Strokes with a Rod himself, which so mauled the poor *Timur Sultan*, that his Shirt was all bloody. As he came out from his Father, his Brother *Hadsim Sultan* met him, and seeing him all bloody asked him what was the matter, and understanding what had happen'd to him, he approv'd at first what his Father had done on that Occasion; but he advis'd him afterwards not to wash himself, to the end he might present himself next day before his



his Father in that bloody Condition. *Timur Sultan* having follow'd that Council, *Akattai Chan* repented having so severely handled him; and after exhorting him again not to fall into the same Fault, he made him a Present of the *Turkman* Tribe of *Ti-u-azi*, which might consist of about five or six thousand Families. It was upon this Occasion that *Timur Sultan* made an Oath, that thenceforth he would go no more to eat with any body, and that he would not suffer any of his People to do the same. He was by the same Mother with his Brother *Pulat Sultan*, and as he was very piously inclined, he exceedingly loved virtuous and devout People: He had withal so excellent a Memory, that tho he cou'd neither write nor read, yet he kept an exact Account of his Revenue, and was thoroughly acquainted with the different Branches of it.

An. Dom.  
1523.

We have said in the second Chapter that *Saphian Chan* and the Princes his Relations had been obliged by Arms to force the *Turkmans* to pay their Contribution; on that Occasion *Akattai Chan* making War on the Tribe of *Okli Koklan*, it happen'd that he took the Daughter of one of their Chiefs, and finding her very much to his liking he marry'd her immediately. By that Marriage he had afterwards *Hadsim Sultan*, and *Mahamut Sultan*, with three Daughters. *Hadsim Sultan* was born in the Year 930, called *Lu*, or the Crocodile, and obtained the Dignity of *Chan* at the Age of thirty five Years. *Aly Sultan*, youngest Son of *Avanash Chan*, who resided at *Urgens*, happening at length to die, *Hadsim Chan* went to reside at *Urgens*; *Mahamut Sultan* held *Vasir*, *Pulat Sultan* had the Town of *Chajuk*, and *Timur Sultan* *Hassarassap* and *Kabt*.

Some



Some Years after, *Abdula Chan* of *Great Buchar*  
*charia* enter'd with an Army into the Country  
of *Charass'm*, and came to besiege the Town  
of *Urgens*, while *Hadsim Chan* was gone to make  
an Invasion into the Country of *Chorassan*; but  
finding more Resistance than he expected from  
the Besiegers, he was obliged to raise the Siege,  
and retire into the Country of *Jangiarik*: As  
he had lost many Men at that Siege, he only  
sought to maintain the Places he possessed on  
that side, waiting to be joined by the Succours  
which he expected from *Great Buchar*: but  
having learned that *Hadsim Chan* was in the  
March with a considerable Army to give him  
Battle, he detach'd a trusty Officer with fifty  
chosen Men, with Orders to pass thro' the Ter-  
ritory of *Uchast*, and the Country of *Kumkant*,  
and lie in Ambuscade some where upon the  
great Road between *Urgens* and *Chajuk* to get  
Intelligence of the Enemy, and not to return  
without bringing him at least some Advice.  
That Detachment having advanced without  
Noise as far as a Tomb of a certain Saint which  
is on the great Road from *Chajuk* to *Urgens*,  
seized six Men who were going to *Kabt*, and  
brought them to *Abdula Chan*; who having  
examin'd them upon the Spot, learned by their  
Means that *Hadsim Chan* upon the News of his  
Invasion into his Dominions, had immediately  
return'd to *Durubn*, and that having been rein-  
forced in that Place by a great Number of  
*Turkmanns* thereabout, he was on the March  
in quest of him, and that they believ'd, as  
it was four days since they were separated  
from him at *Pishga*, that he was already arriv'd  
at *Urgens*: Upon this Advice *Abdula Chan* not  
finding himself in a Condition, with his shat-  
ter'd Army, to oppose the united Forces of all  
the Princes of the Posterity of *Amunak*, who

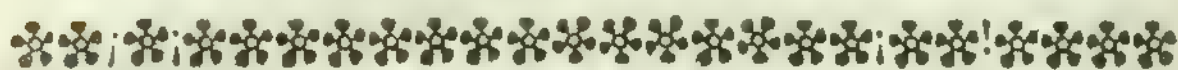
U

were

Abdalla  
Chan in-  
vades  
Chowaa-  
razm.



were going to fall upon his Back, he resolv'd to send to make Proposals of Peace to *Pulat Sultan* and *Timur Sultan*, who were both at *Chajuk*; and as both Parties equally desir'd it, 'twas soon concluded, and *Abdula Chan* led back the Remains of his Army into *Great Bucharía*.



## C H A P. VII.

*Abdula Chan makes himself Master of the Country of Charafs'm, and obliges Hadsim Chan to seek Refuge in Persia.*

Hadsim  
Chan's  
Sons.

AFTER the Retreat of *Abdula Chan* into his Dominions, *Hadsim Chan* and the Princes his Brothers possessed the Towns of the Country of *Charafs'm* peaceably for some time, and the two Brothers of *Hadsim Chan*, *Mahamut* and *Timur Sultan* dying in the mean time, that Prince preserv'd their Children in the Possession of the Domains of their Fathers. *Hadsim Chan* for his Part had five Sons, of which these are the Names; 1. *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan*, 2. *Arap Mahamet*, 3. *Mahamet Culi*, 4. *Mahamet*, 5. *Ebrahim*; who had all a great deal of Merit, and made their Abode near their Father at *Urgens*, except only *Arap Mahamet*, who had the Government of *Duruhn*.

In the mean time *Abdula Chan* of *Great Bucharía* did not drop his Design of re-uniting the Country of *Charafs'm* with *Great Bucharía*, notwithstanding he succeeded so badly in his first Expedition against *Hadsim Chan*; and he waited



waited only for some plausible Pretence for making a new Invasion into the Country of *Charass'm*, when the Princes of the House of *Hadsim Chan* furnish'd him themselves with two very specious ones upon the Occasions which I am going to relate.

The *Sultan, Chalik of Rubm*, sent about that time an Ambassador called *Pialasha*, to *Abdula Chan*, to make an Alliance with him, and to engage that Prince to attack the Empire of *Sheich Ogli* on his side with all his Forces, while he pushed him vigorously on the other side. That Ambassador, who had spent three Years in *Voyage* that *Voyage* going, because he was obliged to *cross the* take his Road by the *Indies*, had a mind at his *Caspian* Return to strike strait thro' the Country of *Mankish-* *Charass'm*, and go embark among the *Turk-lak to* *manns* upon the Sea of *Masanderan*, in order *Shirwan* to pass from thence into the Province of *Shirwan*, which was at that time under the Power of the *Sultan of Rubm*, from whence he intended to make the rest of his Journey by Land as far as the City of *Istambul*\*, which is the Residence of the *Sultan Chalik of Rubm*, which might be a Voyage of about four Months; but when he was come to *Urgens, Mahamet* and *Ebrahim Sultan*, Sons of *Hadsim Chan*, caused him to be strip'd of all, and left him no more than what was absolutely necessary to enable him to continue his Voyage; after which they sent him to *Mankishlak*, where, by chance, there were some Merchants of *Shirwan*, who received him into their Boats and carry'd him over into the Province of that Name.

\* 'Tis the Name which the Turks, and in Imitation of them most of the Orientals give the City of Constantinople by maiming its true Name.



Du'lhag-  
gah.

The Cara-  
van to  
Meccah  
strip'd in  
Chowa-  
razm.

To this first Cause of Complaint there was joined another, which was this; every *Mahometan*, who goes to pay his Devotions at the House of *Mechka*, is obliged to regulate his Voyage in such a manner, that he may be there by the 10th of the Month of *Dsilbotza*, which is the Day in which *Ebrabim* would have sacrific'd his Son *Ismael*\* by the Command of God. Those of the *Great Bucharía*, who were willing to perform that Voyage, passed in Times of Peace thro' the Country of *Charass'm*, and the Provinces of the *Shab* of the *Persians*, but in time of War they were obliged to go a great way about by the *Indies*: It happen'd then that some Inhabitants and Merchants of the Country of *Ma-urenner*, who had a mind to perform the Voyage to *Mechka*, took their Rout thro' the Country of *Charass'm*, under the Conduct of one *Hadfi Cutas*, relying upon the Peace which there was at that time between *Abdula Chan*, and the Princes of the House of *Hadfim Chan*; but when they were arriv'd at *Chajuk*, *Baba Sultan*, eldest Son of *Pulat Sultan*, caused them to be strip'd to their very Shirts, and sent them packing home again on Foot. These People at their Return into the *Great Bucharía*, going to complain of that Violence to *Abdula Chan*, he told them he could do nothing in it, seeing *Baba Sultan* was not under his Power, and that he was as much Sovereign at *Chajuk*, as himself could be in the *Great Bucharía*; whereupon *Hadfi Cutas* made Answer, That he would be his Accuser before the Throne of God, if with the great Power God had put into his Hands,

\* The Mahometans pretend that it was not Isaac, but Ismael whom the Patriarch Abraham was about to sacrifice at the Command of God.



he let go unpunish'd an Outrage which was done to God himself in the Persons of those who went to offer up their Prayers to him at his holy House.

This bold Remonstrance seemed to deter-<sup>Abdalla</sup> mine at last *Abdula Chan* to a War against *Had-*<sup>Chan</sup> *sim Chan* and his Brothers; whom besides he <sup>prepares to</sup> could not forgive, inasmuch as by their Means <sup>invade</sup> the aforefaid *Nur Mahamet*, natural Son of *A-*<sup>razm.</sup> *bul Sultan*, was restor'd to the Possession of the four Towns of his Patrimony, which *Obeit Chan*, Predecessor of *Abdula Chan*, had usurp'd from him: and tho the *Shah* of the *Persians* had since then taken the said Towns, and had shut up the same *Nur Mahamet* in a close Prison at *Sbiras*, yet *Abdula Chan* did not think that ought to hinder him from taking his Satisfaction on those who had been the principal Cause of the Loss which he had sustained on that Occasion, and that the rather because *Hadsim Chan* still actually possessed the Town of *Durubn*, which was one of those four Towns, the Government of which he had confer'd on his Son *Arap Mahamet Sultan*.

The News of these Preparations for War<sup>Usbecks</sup> which *Abdula Chan* caused to be made in his <sup>divided in</sup> Dominions having been spread abroad, the *Us-*<sup>their Reso-</sup> *becks* of the Country of *Charass'm* divided them-<sup>lutions.</sup> selves into two Parties; one of which was for a vigorous Resistance, and the other was ready to submit themselves to *Abdula Chan* as soon as he should approach the Town of *Urgens*; these last persuading themselves that that Prince would not fail to take into his Service all the Men of Merit among them; and that the worst that could happen to the rest was, that he would send them into *Great Bucharía*, and assign them there wherewithal to subsist on.



Hadfim  
Chan re-  
tires to  
Duruhn.

*Hadfim Chan* having been inform'd of all we have related, judged that he ought not on this Occasion to depend much upon the *Usbecks*, his Subjects; wherefore he conferr'd the Government of the Town of *Urgens* on his Sons *Mahamet* and *Ebrahim*, and went himself to *Duruhn*, accompany'd by his eldest Son *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan*, with his two Sons, a Son of *Mahamet Sultan*, a Son of *Ebrahim Sultan*, and some other Lords and Persons of Condition; giving out, that he was going to pass the Winter there, in order to be in a Capacity at the beginning of Spring to besiege the Town of *Najai*. The three Sons of *Timur Sultan* were then in Possession of the Town of *Hassarassap*, *Pulat Sultan*, and his four Sons, possessed the Town of *Chajuk*; and the four Sons of *Mahamet Sultan*, with their two Nephews, the Sons of *Mahamet Amin*, possessed the Town of *Vasir*: These Princes having Intelligence that *Abdula Chan* was preparing to pay them a Visit towards Spring, sent ten Men from *Hassarassap*, and as many from *Chajuk* towards the Frontiers of the Country of *Duruganata* to get Intelligence of the Enemy; but that Detachment having fallen among the Troops of the Enemies Van-Guard, it was so roughly handled, that only three of them return'd to *Hassarassap* with the News of the Approach of *Abdula Chan*.

Princes of  
the House  
of Akattai  
Chan  
leave  
Chajuk.

Upon this Advice, *Mahamet Sultan* consider'd that at the time of the first Invasion of *Abdula Chan* into the Country of *Charafs'm*, his Father *Timur Sultan* having repair'd to *Chajuk*, and perswaded his Brothers to fix upon that Town for the general Rendezvous of all their Troops, that Precaution had then contributed much to defeat the Designs of *Abdula Chan*, wherefore he was of Opinion the same thing should be done



done now, and that perhaps the Success would not be less advantageous than it was the first time. In this Resolution having assembled the *Usbecks* under his Subjection, he march'd towards *Chajuk*; but when he had got as far as the Tomb of a Saint called *Hadsrati-Paluan*, he began to have a Mistrust of them; wherefore having taken the *Alcoran* in his hands, he obliged them to promise him by Oath to serve him faithfully upon that Occasion; after which, he continued his March with more Satisfaction. At his Arrival at *Chajuk*, he found that they had resolved to quit that Town to go to *Vasir*; upon which he did all in his Power to divert the other Princes from that Resolution: but finding it was in vain to oppose the Torrent which was against him, he submitted at last to the Opinion of the Majority. Pursuant to that Resolution, *Mahamet Sultan* and his Brothers, as well as *Pulat Sultan* with his four Sons, and the Sons of his Brother *Mahamet Sultan*, march'd out of *Chajuk* with all the Troops, Goods and Provisions they had, which made so great a Train of Men and Chariots, that tho the first had begun to pass out of *Chajuk* at Day-break, the last did not leave it till Noon; and they arriv'd not till late in the Evening at the Camp, where the first had arrived when the Sun was come to the Meridian.

In the mean time, *Abdula Chan* having de-  
tach'd one of his Generals called *Chodsam Culi*,  
with an Army towards *Chajuk* to observe the  
Princes of the House of *Akattai Chan*, who  
were assembled in that Town, that General ar-  
riv'd with his Troops at one of the Gates of  
*Chajuk*, just when the last Troops of the Princes  
passed out thro' the opposite Gate. As soon as  
*Chodsam Culi* had enter'd the Town of *Chajuk*,

The Gene-  
ral of  
Abdalla  
Chan en-  
ters Cha-  
juk.

he



he caused it to be published that all the *Usbecks* who staid behind should repair into the City, because he had Orders from *Abdula Chan* to employ all those who were capable, and give them good Pay ; whereupon the *Usbecks* having assembled in great Numbers, he proposed to them, that all who were desirous to signalize their Zeal for the Service of *Abdula Chan* should hold themselves in readiness to follow him next Day, when he would go in pursuit of *Pulat Sultan* and his Allies.

*Pursues the Princes.* The Confederate Princes, on their side, tho they had been inform'd immediately of the Entrance of the Enemies Troops into the Town of *Chajuk*, yet only kept a Guard about their Camp all Night, and did not continue their March till early next Morning : But hardly were they arrived at the Burrow of *Almatish Chan*, when *Chodsam Culi*, who pursued them in a great Trot, came up with them at the Head of 30000 Men. At his Approach the Princes did not fail to cover themselves hastily with their Chariots as a kind of Intrenchment ; but *Chodsam Culi* having forced that Barricade, after a vigorous Resistance, put them at length to the Rout, and took *Coizi*, one of the Sons of *Pulat Sultan* ; and as he had lost many Men in that Attack, he rested satisfy'd with this Advantage, and did not pursue the Princes, who retired in great Confusion to *Vasir*. At their Arrival in that Town, they resolved to drive from among them *Baba Sultan*, who had brought upon them that unfortunate War, and send to make Proposals of Peace to *Abdula Chan* : *Pulat Sultan* finding he could not hinder the Execution of that Resolution, resolved to retire of his own accord, with his two other Sons, *Hamsa* and *Paluanculi*, to *Durubn* to *Had-sim Chan* ; insomuch that there remained at *Va-sir*

*Defeats them.*



*sir* only the four Sons of *Mahamut Sultan*, with their two Nephews, and the three Sons of *Timur Sultan*, who were all at the Defeat of *Almatish Chan*; and tho *Mahamet* and *Ebrahim Sultan*, the two Sons of *Hadfim Chan*, who commanded at *Urgens*, came to join them afterwards with their Wives and Children; *Aly Sultan*, Son of *Mahamut Sultan*, who, tho he was little and crooked, yet had a vast deal of Wit, continued always to have the chief Command in the Town, by reason the Town of *Vasir* belong'd to the Children of *Mahamut Sultan*.

*Abdula Chan* having in the Interim drawn near to *Vasir* with his Army, did not defer to besiege it in Form; but finding after the Siege had lasted two Months, that it would be very difficult to come off in this Enterprize with Honour, he resolved to join Craft to Force: To this end, he sent to tell the Confederate Princes, that since they had removed from among them *Baba Sultan*, whom he had chief cause to complain of, they might with full Confidence come before him, and be assured, that having nothing against them, he would receive them with the Regard which he owed them as his Allies and Relations: Flatter'd with these Promises, the Princes enter'd into a Capitulation with *Abdula Chan*, and demanded of him to send some of the principal Lords of his Retinue into the Town to promise them by Oath on his part, that he should not in any wise meddle either with their Persons, or their Effects. Whereupon *Abdula Chan*, who would not frighten them, named immediately *Hasan Chodsa*, *Sarchinbi*, *Mahamet Bakibi*, *Hadsimbi*, Governor of *Samarkant*, and *Dost Margan*, who were five of the principal Lords of his Court, for his Plenipotentiaries on this Occasion. Pursuant to this Nomination, those

*Abdalla Chan*  
*besieges*  
*Vasir.*

*Proposes a*  
*fallacious*  
*Peace.*



those five Lords repaired with a Retinue of Forty Horse to *Vasir*; and when they were come to an open place of the Town called *Tachtatul*, they made them solemnly take Oath in the Name of *Abdula Chan*, that he had no evil Intention against the Confederate Princes who were in the Town of *Vasir*.

*The People are for detaining the Bucharian Lords.* Nevertheless, the common People, who were against the Princes leaving themselves at the Mercy of their Enemies upon a bare Oath, desired that the aforesaid Lords of the Enemies Army might be arrested, seeing they knew *Abdula Chan* had so great Regard for their Persons, that he would rather a thousand times relinquish the Conquest of *Urgens* and *Vasir*, than let them be exposed to the least Danger; that to this end they should send back the Forty Men of their Retinue with a Letter for *Abdula Chan*, in which it might be observ'd that it was not out of any ill Design that they had arrested the said Lords, but only to be the more assured of the raising of the Siege; that the Princes should oblige themselves to that purpose, that as soon as *Abdula Chan* should begin his March with his Army to return with it into the *Great Buchar*, they would on their side put themselves immediately upon the Road with the Lords whom they detained in quality of Hostages to go to him; and that in the mean time the said Lords should be used like the Princes themselves.

*The Princes repair to the Camp of Abdalla Chan.* But *Aly Sultan* strenuously opposed this Proposal, by reason that never having had any Difference with *Abdula Chan*, and being his near Relations, they could have nothing to fear from him, especially during the Life of *Hadfim Chan* and his three other Children; that supposing even he had a Desire to seize their Domains, he would not fail to carry them with him into

*Great*



*Great Bucharia*, and settle them there more advantageously than they were in those Parts; that nevertheless he was fully persuaded, that as soon as he should speak to him of it, he would leave them the peaceable Possession of *Urgens* and *Vasir*. These Reasons having been liked by all the Men of Distinction about the Princes, the common People were obliged to hold their Peace in spite of their Teeth; and the Princes, accompany'd by the Lords who had taken the Oath, left the Town to go to *Abdula Chan*.

That Prince immediately committed the Guard of their Persons to one of his Lords called *Ischimbi*, and the Inspection of the rest of the Officers and Soldiers to General *Chodsam Culi*: After which having caused exact Lists to be made of all the Prisoners, he order'd that the common People should be divided into Troops of ten or twelve Men, each of which should furnish one who should be responsible for the whole Troop; which having been executed, he sent them all Prisoners into the *Great Bucharia* at the Risk of the Respondents.

*Are put under an Arrest.*

*The same Custom among the Saxons, and at present in China.*

*Abdula Chan* being in this manner put in Possession of the Towns of *Urgens* and *Vasir*, gave the Government of them to one of his Lords called *Sari Oglan*; another of the Lords of the Tribe of the *Durmanns*, called *Menglishbi*, had the Government of the Town of *Chajuk*; *Chodsa*, one of his most trusty Officers, had the Government of the Town of *Hassarassap*, and the little Town of *Kruk*; and a certain *Mullha*, who was a Man of exemplary Piety, had the Government of *Kabt*, and the Intendency of a Tribe of *Turkmanns*, called the Tribe of *Bajat*: After which that Prince return'd into his hereditary Dominions.

*Abdalla Chan distributes the Towns of Chajuk among his Lords.*

*perhaps Kruk.*



Hadfim  
Chan re-  
tires to the  
Court of  
Shah  
Abbas.

A Month after, *Hadfim Chan* and all the Princes of his House who were at *Durubn*, having understood what had happen'd at *Urgens*, and that *Abdula Chan* was become Master of all the Towns of the Country of *Charass'm*, they resolv'd all to retire into the Country of *Irak*, towards *Shah Hiabas Masi*. *Pulat Sultan* only was of a different Opinion, and he took it in his Head, that drawing near seventy Years, as he was, it would be very unbecoming of him to go look for a Sanctuary among People of a different Religion from his own; wherefore he chose rather to go to *Abdula Chan*, presuming that Prince would pity his Condition, and give him wherewithal to pass the remainder of his days in Content. But *Hadfim Chan* set forward to go to *Shah Hiabas Masi*, accompany'd by his three Sons, *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan*, *Arap Mahamet Sultan*, and *Mahamet Culi Sultan*; by his Grandson *Burundu*, Son of *Ebrahim Sultan*; by *Abdula*, Son of *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan*; by *Isphandiar*, Son of *Arap Mahamet Sultan*; by *Mahamet*, Son of *Mahamet Sultan*, and by the three Sons of *Pulat Sultan* his Nephews. At his Departure out of *Durubn*, he found himself 3000 Horse strong; but his Men disbanded so fast upon the Road, that there remained with him in the end but 150.

Abdula  
Chan  
puts to  
death all  
the Family  
of Amu-  
nak that  
fell into  
his hands.

In the mean time *Pulat Sultan* ran to his Destruction in repairing to *Abdula Chan*; for as soon as that Prince was return'd into the Great *Bucharia*, he caus'd to be put to death the same Day in the Town of *Sagratz*, all the Princes of the Posterity of *Amunak* which had fallen into his Hands, viz. The four Sons of *Mahamut Sultan*, called *Mahamut Sultan Aly*, *Arab* and *Akbaba*, with their two Nephews, *Shah Aly* and *Shabacht*; the three Sons of *Timur Sultan*, called

*Mahamet*



*Mahamet Sultan, Cadir-birdi and Abulgair*; the two youngest Sons of *Hadfim Chan*, *Mahamet* and *Ebrahim Sultan*, and *Pulat Sultan*, who went voluntarily to him, with his Son *Coizi*, who had been made Prisoner at the Battle of *Almatish Chan*, amounting in all to the Number of thirteen Persons, without reckoning some other Princes of the same House, whose Names we know not, because they were very young when *Abdula Chan* had them put to death: After which he taxed all the *Usbecks* who had been made Prisoners on that Occasion at an annual Tribute of thirty *Tanga* a Head; which impoverish'd them to that degree, that many of them were obliged to sell their very Children to make up the Capitation, in regard every one above the Age of ten Years was subject to it: And as the common People among the Prisoners had been obliged to furnish for every ten or twelve Men one responsible Person, that Respondent was obliged to pay annually the thirty *Tanga* of the Capitation, in case any of those for whom he became responsible should desert.

While these things were a doing, *Hadfim Chan* and the ten Princes who accompany'd him, having arrived in the Year *Gilan*, or of the Serpent, with a Train of 150 Horse at the Court of the *Shah* of the *Persians*, that Prince came in Person to receive them, and gave them the best Treatment imaginable: but *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan* and his Son, who had no Inclination to stay at the Court of the *Shah*, passed forward and went to the *Sultan Calif* of *Rubm*. After that *Hadfim Chan* and the other Princes of this Company, had spent two Years at the Court of *Shah Hiabas Masi*, it happen'd in the Year *Koi*, or the Sheep, which is the same Year that there appeared a great Comet in the Sky, that *Abdul-*  
Hadfim Chan arrives at Caswin.
Comet.
momin



*momin Sultan*, Son of *Abdula Chan*, enter'd with a numerous Army into the part of the Country of *Chorassan*, which was in Subjection to the *Shah* of *Persia*; and having a mind to take the Town of *Espheragin*, the Inhabitants shut the Gates, and gave notice to the *Shah* that the Son of *Abdula Chan* threaten'd them with a formal Siege. Upon this News, *Shah Hiabas Masi* having got together a good Army, left the Town of *Gaswin* and went to *Bastam*.

Attempt to  
retake  
Chajuk  
and Urgens.

*Hadsim Chan*, and the Princes his Relations who followed him on this Occasion, having learned on their Arrival at that Town, that there were but sixty of the Enemies Men at *Chajuk*, and forty at *Urgens*, they judged it not altogether impossible to profit by that Negligence of the Enemy, provided it was kept a Secret and with all imaginable Care: Nevertheless as what was to be done on this Occasion should be done without the Knowledge of the *Shah*, and that it was to be feared he should take Offence at so precipitate a Departure, *Hadsim Chan* and some of the other Princes would not meddle with that Enterprize; and there were none but *Arap Mahamet Sultan* and his Brother *Mahamet Culi Sultan*, with *Baba Sultan*, *Hamsa* and *Paluanculi*, the three Sons of *Pulat Sultan*, who persisted in an Inclination to run the Risk of it: And as it is not far from *Bastam* to *Istarabat*, and that the *Turkman* Tribe of *Amir* dwelt then about that Town, the chief of whom called *Alytar-beg*, had always testify'd so great an Affection for their House, that they had hopes he would not fail them on that Occasion; they resolved to take Horse one Evening when every body were gone to bed, and after having rid all Night, they arriv'd next Morning at the Vanguard



Guard of the *Turkmanns*, and from thence by Noon at *Istarabat*.

After their Departure, *Hadfim Chan* went be-<sup>Character</sup> times in the Morning to inform the *Shah* of the<sup>of Abdalla</sup> Occasion of the Journey of his Sons and Ne-<sup>Chan.</sup> phews: But the *Shah* who knew too well the Activity of *Abdula Chan* to be deceived by the like Appearances, how flattering soever they might be, advised *Hadfim Chan* to ride immediately after his Children, and try to bring them back; because he was well assured while *Abdula Chan* lived it would be in vain for them to attempt to recover the Possession of their Domains, that it would not be long before they would be sensible of it; but that the Shame of having gone upon that Enterprize without his Knowledge hindering them to return to his Court, they would go perhaps to seek for Refuge some where else, where they might find Death instead of Assistance; lastly, if he loved his Children, he ought to endeavour at any rate to get them, while it was yet time, out of the Troubles they were going to engage in on this Occasion.

*Hadfim Chan* willing to follow the sage Ad-<sup>Hadfim</sup> vice of the *Shah*, took Horse immediately to <sup>Chan</sup> ride after his Sons; and having over-taken<sup>follows</sup> them at *Istarabat*, he did his best at first to<sup>them.</sup> bring them back; but the Assurances which several *Turkman* Tribes had given them since their Arrival at *Istarabat*, of assisting them powerfully, having encouraged them to go thorow with their Project, they not only positively refused to return, but also found the way to engage *Hadfim Chan* to continue with them till such time as he should see what Success the Enterprize would have. After which departing all together from *Istarabat*, they went towards the



the Mountain of *Kuran*, about which the *Turk-mann* Tribes of *Taka* and *Jamut* then dwelt; who having been heretofore of the Number of the Subjects of the Children of *Mahamut Sultan*, Brother of *Hadfim Chan*, gave them a Reinforcement of 500 Men: From thence they travers'd the Territory of *Mankishlak*, which was at that time quite desert; since the *Turkmanns* of *Mankishlak* had been obliged all to retire into the Country of *Ordacutuk*, which borders upon the Country of *Gordish*, because of the great Quarrels which they had on one side with the *Mankatts*, and on the other side with the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Irsari*. From *Mankishlak*, the Princes pass'd on to the Habitations of the Tribe of *Irsari*, which, having been formerly under the Jurisdiction of *Timur Sultan*, and of his Brother *Pulat Sultan*, Father of *Baba Sultan*, granted them five or six hundred Men; and from thence they went on towards *Pishga*.

Hadfim  
Chan  
takes Ur-  
gens.

At their Arrival at *Pishga*, *Hadfim Chan* and his two Sons took the Road to *Urgens*, and *Baba Sultan* with his two Brothers went to *Chajuk*. Upon the News of the Approach of *Hadfim Chan*, *Sari Oglan*, Governor of the Town of *Urgens*, retir'd into the Castle; but *Hadfim Chan* having caused, during the Night, a subterraneous Passage to be carry'd under the Wall of the Castle, enter'd by that way, and caused the Governor to be put to death, with the forty Men which were with him. After the Conquest of this Town all the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Taka*, and *Jamut*, return'd home loaded with Booty, and left *Hadfim Chan* and his Sons almost alone at *Urgens*. *Baba Sultan* on his side, having arriv'd before *Chajuk*, the *Sarts* who dwelt in that Town opened the Gates to him; after



after which he caused in like manner the Governor *Menglishbi* to be put to death, with his sixty Men; which coming to the Ears of the Commanders of *Hassarassap* and *Kabt*, they fled towards *Great Bucharía*.

*Baba Sultan* having a little after dismiss'd all *Hassarassap* the *Turkmanins* of the Tribe of *Irsari*, without <sup>sap near</sup> keeping above fifteen Men, went to *Hassarassap* <sup>being surprized.</sup> with his Brother *Paluanculi*, ten days after the taking of *Chajuk*; but *Hamsa* his younger Brother stay'd at *Chajuk* to drink his Belly-full of new Wine, because it was then in the Season of Vintage. Entering the Town of *Hassarassap*, *Baba Sultan* observ'd two Officers, one of which rid an *Isabella*, and the other a Horse spotted like a Tiger, who advanced on a smart Gallop towards the Town at the Head of 150 Horse, which appearing to him very suspicious, he endeavoured to shut the Gate of the Town; but he had hardly shut one side of it, when he who rid the spotted Horse was already at hand, endeavouring with great Strokes of a Launce to hinder the shutting of it quite: Nevertheless some of the Inhabitants of the Town running thither in the nick of Time, he was obliged at length to retire with his Men, and the Gate being shut, they began to shoot so thick on all sides upon the Cavalry, that they thought fit to get out of Reach of the Shots. The Enemy having been repulsed in this manner before *Hassarassap*, took in their Retreat a *Sart*, who informed them that *Baba Sultan* was arrived alone at *Hassarassap*, with *Paluanculi* and fifteen Men, and that his Brother *Hamsa* had staid at *Chajuk* to drink new Wine; upon which they turn'd immediately towards that side, and arrived next Day about Noon before the Town, <sup>*Chajuk taken.*</sup> just at the time that *Hamsa* was taking the Air;



but not daring to make use of Force against the Town with so few Men, they lay close till the Evening, when Assistance coming to them, they carry'd on a subterraneous Passage into the Town under one of the Gates; at which having enter'd, they put all to the Sword, which very much disconcerted the Affairs of *Baba Sultan*.

Abdol-  
mumin  
invades  
Chorassan.

To understand who those Troops were, you must know, that *Abdula Chan* having assembled a great Army the same Year that the aforesaid Comet appear'd, he detach'd a considerable Body of it under the Command of his Son *Abdulmomin*, to go and besiege the Town of *Esphe-ragin*, with a Design to take Winter Quarters afterwards with all his Army in the Towns of the Province of *Chorassan*, to be ready at hand in the beginning of the next Spring to make an Irruption into the Province of *Irak*. To this effect he order'd *Chodsam Culi*, one of his best Generals, to advance with a Body of Troops by the great Road to *Chorassan*, in order to support his Son in case of Necessity, while he followed leisurely in Person with the rest of his Army, with an intention as he passed along, to take the Diversion of Hawking beyond *Zardsui* in the Country of *Gordish*, where there are abundance of Ducks and other Water Fowl. Conformable to this Regulation, *Chodsam Culi* march'd directly towards the Country of *Chorassan*; but having pass'd a certain River which was upon the Road, he met the Commander of *Hassarrassap*, who inform'd him that *Baba Sultan* being arriv'd some days before at *Chajuk*, he had caused the Governor and all his Men to be slain; upon that News *Chodsam Culi* sent the said Commander with all possible haste to apprize *Abdula Chan* of what had happen'd; and in the mean  
time



time he resolved to halt with his Troops in the Place where he was till he should receive new Orders from his Master, which were not long a coming; importing that he should march off-hand towards *Chajuk*, and that *Abdula Chan* would follow close at his Heels with his whole Army. Upon these Orders *Chodsam Culi* changed the Road and turned towards the Town of *Chajuk*; but he found at his Arrival, that all the Work was already done by his Van-Guard, which determined them to push forward directly for *Urgens*.

In the mean time *Mahamet Culi Sultan*, third <sup>Bold Action of</sup> Son of *Hadsim Chan*, who was a Prince of much <sup>Mahamet</sup> Courage, having heard of the Death of his Cou-<sup>Culi Sul-</sup> sin *Hamsa*, kept it very secret, resolving to leave <sup>tan.</sup> his Father, with his Brother *Arap Mahamet Sultan* at *Urgens*, and go join *Baba Sultan* at *Hassarrassap*: To this effect he got together some well-disposed *Turkmanns* and *Zagatais*, to whom he joined yet two hundred *Usbecks* of *Urgens*, which were of the Number of those whom *Abdula Chan* had carry'd away Prisoners into *Great Bucharia*, and had return'd a little while before, with a Design to try to drive some small Trade at *Urgens*, not foreseeing the Troubles which were to ensue. With this small Body of Troops *Mahamet Culi Sultan* began his March for *Hassarrassap*, by the side of the River of *Urgens*; but coming near the little Town of *Zilpuk*, he found himself of a sudden surrounded by the Troops of *Chodsam Culi*, before he had the least Notice of their Approach. *Chodsam Culi* who imagin'd *Mahamet Culi Sultan* could no longer escape him, enjoined his Officers to do all they could to take him alive. But *Mahamet Culi Sultan*, who was sensible of the bad Condition he was reduced to, having form'd one large Squadron



Kuzuk  
Chan of  
the Mankatts,  
or  
Karakall-  
pakks.

with all the Men he had, resolved to rush headlong upon one of the Enemies Wings, in order to make way for himself on that side; which he executed with so much bravery, that after having broke thro' the Enemies Troops which opposed him, he retired into the Country of the *Mankatts*, who had then a *Chan* called *Kuzuk*. At his Arrival among the *Mankatts*, *Mahamet Culi Sultan* try'd at first to draw *Kuzuk Chan* into his Interests, by Proposals of Marriage which he made to his Sister; but *Kuzuk Chan*, who was afraid to have to do with *Abdula Chan*, in case he gave Protection to *Mahamet Culi Sultan*, had him arrested, and sent him to the *Urusses*, where he died some time after.

Hagim  
Chan  
leaves *Urgens*.

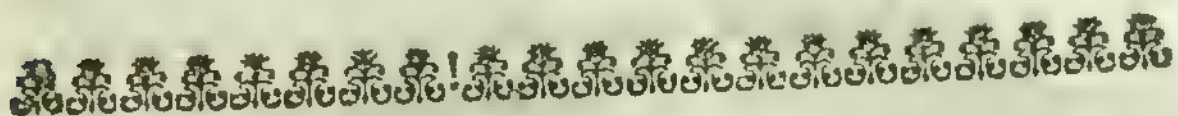
While these things were doing, one of the Men who had been with *Mahamet Culi Sultan*, when he broke thro' the Troops of *Chodsam Culi*, went directly to *Urgens* to carry the News of that unfortunate Fight to *Hadsim Chan*, who thereupon abandon'd that Town, accompany'd by his Son *Arap Mahamet Sultan*, and some Soldiers, with an Intention to go over to *Mankishlak*; but the Enemy having over-taken them the third Night after their Departure from *Urgens*, he was obliged to come to Blows with them, and *Hadsim Chan*, with his Men, having been worsted, he endeavour'd to retire the best he could; but the Enemy who continually follow'd him, having forced him again next Morning to engage in Battle with them, he lost above half the few Men he had with him, insomuch that he was constrained once more to go take Refuge at *Istarabat*, and from thence to *Gaswin*, to the Court of the *Shah* of *Persia*.

Retires again  
to  
Gaswin.

*Abdula Chan* went in Person to besiege the Town of *Hassarrassap*, and having taken it, he caused *Baba Sultan*



Sultan and the fifteen Men who came thither with him, to be slain; after which he return'd into Great Bucharía, where he died the last Day of the Year 1006, called *Tauk*, or the Hen \*. *Abdalla Chan dies An. Dom. 1597.*



C H A P. VIII.

*Of the Re-establishment of Hadsim Chan in his Dominions, and of his Death.*

UPON the News of the Death of *Abdula* Shah *Ab-Chan*, *Shah Hiabas Masi* having gather'd a numerous Army at the beginning of the following Year, called *It*, or the Dog, came and encamped near *Bastam*. In that Place *Hadsim Chan* pray'd the *Shah* that he would let him go and take a Turn towards the Frontiers of *Maurenner*, to try if *Abdulmomin Chan* who had succeeded his Father, knowing him to be so near him, would be inclined to restore him one of his Towns, that he might there end his days in quiet. The *Shah* having consented very willingly to that Proposal, *Hadsim Chan* set forward, accompany'd by *Arap Mabamet Sultan*, and his Grandson *Isphandiar Sultan*, with a Retinue of fifteen Persons; insomuch that there remained only *Burundu*, Son of *Ebrahim Sultan*, and Grandson of *Hadsim Chan*, at the Court of the *Shah*.

\* What our Author reports here in all its Circumstances of the Death of *Abdula Chan*, shews that the *Sieur Olearius* is mistaken, when he reports in his Relation of the Kingdom of Persia, that *Abdula Chan*, with his Brother and three of his Sons, having been taken Prisoners by *Shah Abas I.* that Prince caused all their Heads to be cut off.



Hagim  
Chan re-  
pairs to-  
wards  
Chowa-  
razm.

In the mean time *Hadsim Chan*, with his Followers, having lost his way the second Day of his Journey, and taken too much to the Left, arrived at length at the Habitations of the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Taka*, near the Mountain of *Kuran*, when he judged himself to be about *Meru*: That Mistake embarrass'd him extremely, and determin'd him to rest the Night in that place, to consider seriously what he had to do on that Occasion; but going in the Morning at Sun-rise to sit in the Shade of the Mountain to say his Prayers, because it was in the middle of Summer, he saw coming from towards *Jaurfurdi*, two Men a Horseback, whom he knew to be *Usbecks* of the Tribe of the *Naimanns*, and of the Number of those among his old Subjects who had been carry'd Prisoners into *Great Bucharia*.

Abdolmu-  
min assas-  
sinated.

At their Approach they wish'd long Life to *Hadsim Chan*, and inform'd him that *Abdulmomin Chan* died going to take Possession of the Succession of his Father. Upon which *Hadsim Chan* inquiring how that happen'd, they told him that they had had some Business at *Meru*, and that during their Stay, there arriv'd a Domestick of the Governor of the Town, who had been Prisoner in the Army of *Abdulmomin Chan*, with the News that that Prince having been informed of the Death of his Father, quitted the Towns of the Province of *Chorassan* to return into his hereditary Provinces; but that being come to the Town of *Samin*, he had been killed by his own People: That upon this Advice, they had a Design to have gone to him into *Irak*; but understanding at *Meru* that the *Shah* of the *Persians* had taken the Field to go to *Bastam*, they had taken the Road to *Jaurfurdi*, from whence they were come to look for him



him on that side, upon the Assurances which had been given them at *Jaurfurdi* that he was gone towards the *Turkinanns*.

*Hadfim Chan* mightily rejoiced at that News, *Hagim* took in haste the Road to *Urgens*, and safely ar-<sup>Chan</sup> riv'd there after he had been eight days on the <sup>recovers</sup> Road. At his Arrival at *Urgens*, he found no <sup>Chowarazm.</sup> Difficulty to put himself in Possession either of that Town or of *Vasir*, because in the Confusion which the Affairs of *Great Bucharica* fell into after the precipitate Death of *Abdalmomin Chan*, all the Towns of the Country of *Charafs'm* were without Governors, and without Garisons. *Hadfim Chan* kept those two Towns for himself, and assigned *Chajuk* and *Kabt* to his Son *Arap Mahamet Sultan*, who took them with the same Facility: *Isphandiar Sultan*, Grandson of *Hadfim Chan*, and eldest Son of *Arap Mahamet Sultan*, had the Town of *Hassarassap* for his Portion; and all the *Usbecks* which *Abdula Chan* had carry'd Prisoners into *Great Bucharica*, took Advantage of so favourable an Opportunity to return one after another to *Urgens*.

Some time after *Siuntz Mahamet Sultan*, eldest <sup>Hagim</sup> Son of *Hadfim Chan*, who, as we related before, <sup>Chan re-</sup> had retired to the Lands of *Rubm*, having heard <sup>signs to</sup> of the Death of *Abdula Chan*, came into the <sup>Siuntz</sup> Province of *Sbirvan*, and having there received <sup>Mahamet</sup> the Confirmation of the News, passed over by Sea from thence to *Mankisblak*, and arrived in that manner at *Urgens* in the third Year after the Establishment of *Hadfim Chan* in the Possession of his Dominions. At his Arrival his Father having given up to him the Towns of *Urgens* and *Vasir*, resigned the Dignity of *Chan* in his Favour, and retired to *Chajuk* to his Son *Arap Mahamet Sultan*.



Siuntz  
Chan dies. *Siuntz Mahamet Chan* did not long enjoy the  
Sweets of reigning, for he died a Year after his  
Return to *Urgens*; and his Son *Abdula Chan* who  
succeeded him, did not survive him long neither,  
dying a Year after his Father. *Hadjim Chan*  
died at length in the Year 1011, called *Bars*,  
or the Tiger, at the Age of eighty one Years.

Hadjim  
Chan dies.  
An. Dom.  
1602.



## C H A P. IX.

*Of the Reign of Arap Mahamet Chan, and  
of his Death.*

AFTER the Death of *Hadjim Chan*, *Arap Mahamet Chan* succeeded him in all his Dominions. On his Advancement to the Scepter of the Country of *Charass'm*, he added *Kabt* to the Portion of his Son *Isphandiar Sultan*, and apply'd himself entirely to the Affairs of Government.

*Invasion of the Russians of Jaigik, or the Cossacks.* Six Months after the Death of *Hadjim Chan*, *Arap Mahamet Chan* having taken the Field to go pass the Summer with the Lords, his Vassals, upon the Banks of the River *Amu*, the *Urusses* of *Jaigik*, who were informed that there were no Soldiers in Summer in the Town of *Urgens*, came there with a thousand Men, and after they had cut the Throats of above a thousand of the Inhabitants, they loaded about a thousand Chariots with all sorts of valuable Effects, and having set Fire to what they could not carry away, they return'd with near a thousand Females whom they made Slaves of; but *Arap Mahamet Chan* being informed of it in time, went to cut off their Passage



Passage and lay in wait for them at a certain Defile, which he so well intrench'd and pali-fado'd in haste, that the Enemy could not force him till after an Attack of two days; yet they were obliged to leave all their Booty behind on that Occasion. In the mean time *Arap Mahamet Chan*, who did not design to let them escape him so cheaply, having got the Start of them by ways unknown to them, went to wait for them again at another Defile; the *Urusses* not having been able to force this Passage, notwithstanding all the Efforts they made to effect it; the Water which is very scarce in those Parts began at length to fail them, which reduced them to so great Extremity, that after having been obliged to drink the very Blood of their slain Companions, to quench in some measure the Thirst which afflicted them, they were constrained to make a last Effort to force the Baricades of *Arap Mahamet Chan*; which succeeded so ill with them, that there escaped scarce a hundred Men of them who made over to the Banks of the River *Khesill*, and there built a Cabin a good way on the other side of the Town of *Tuk*, where they lived by Fishing, waiting some favourable Opportunity to reach their own Country; but *Arap Mahamet Chan* having been informed five days after of the Place of their Abode, sent Men there who slew them all.

Six Months after, a thousand *Callmaks* having found means to pass between a Lake called *Cbod-sa Culi*, and a Mountain named *Sheich Afis*, came to surprize certain Subjects of *Arap Mahamet Chan*, who had their Habitations along the Banks of the River of *Khesill*, towards the Town of *Kabt*; and after they had killed a great Number of them, they were upon their Return, loaded with Booty and Prisoners. *Arap Mahamet*



*Mahamet Chan* having been informed of this Invasion of the *Callmaks*, followed them close at their Heels, and pursued them so briskly, that they had much ado to escape him, after having been obliged to abandon all the Booty and the Prisoners they had taken on that Occasion.

Conspiracy  
against  
Arap Ma-  
hamet  
Chan.

Some time after the *Naimanns*, who never relished well the Government of *Arap Mahamet Chan*, brought into *Chajuk*, in the Night-time, one *Chisseran Sultan* of the Posterity of *Ilbars Chan*, with a Design to put *Arap Mahamet Chan* to death, and set *Chisseran Sultan* in his room; but a Man of the Tribe of the *Kergis*, called *Bikbagli Bayadur*, and one *Bakli Mirsa* of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, having informed *Arap Mahamet Chan* of it, he had *Chisseran Sultan* taken and killed. *Saphi Mirsa* of the Tribe of the *Naimanns*, who had been the chief of that Conspiracy, was likewise put to death.

Another  
Conspiracy.

Two years after, one named *Sash Mirsa*, follow'd by twenty *Vigurs*, departed from the Town of *Urgens* for *Samarkant*, where he went in quest of one *Soleb Sultan* of the Posterity of *Hassanculi Chan*, Son of *Abulak*, whom he brought to the *Usbecks* within the Jurisdiction of *Urgens*, to the end they should acknowledge him for their *Chan*. *Arap Mahamet Chan* having been informed of this new Attempt against his Government, departed instantly from *Chajuk*, and being arrived at *Urgens*, he satisfy'd himself by putting to death *Soleb Sultan*, without suffering any Search to be made after those who might have had a hand in that Plot; saying, he was content with finding out him who was the Promoter of that Affair, and left the Vengeance to God, being unwilling that upon one wicked Man's Account, Evil should happen to many of his Subjects who might have been inno-



innocently led into that Plot: That it was for the same Reason that he had no mind to put to death *Saphi Mirsa*, who had been the Author of *Chifferan Sultan's* Affair, and that he had been still alive, if his own Brother *Baba Mirsa*, thinking him unworthy to live after attempting the Life of his Prince, had not killed him. In short, that unless those of the Tribe of the *Vigurs* would revenge him themselves on *Sash Mirsa*, he would never punish him for that Business.

Ten years after, the *Callmaks*, to the Number of <sup>Another</sup> a thousand Men, came again to invade the Lands <sup>Invasion</sup> under the Government of *Arap Mahamet Chan* <sup>of the</sup> *Callmaks* on the other side of *Bakirgan*; and after having plunder'd many Habitations, they return'd with a great Number of Prisoners, not being to be overtaken, whatever haste was made for that Purpose.

*Arap Mahamet Chan* had seven Sons, viz. <sup>Children</sup> 1. *Isphandiar Sultan*, 2. *Habash*, 3. *Ilbars*, <sup>of Arap</sup> 4. *Abulgasi Bayadur*, 5. *Shariph Mahamet*, 6. *Mahamet* <sup>Chan.</sup> *Charass'm Chan Sultan*, 7. *Augan*. The Mother of *Isphandiar Sultan* was a near Relation of *Arap Mahamet Chan*; *Habash Sultan* and *Ilbars Sultan* were born of the same Mother of the Tribe of the *Naimanns*: The Mother of *Abulgasi Sultan*, was called *Mirbanu Chanum*, and was the Daughter of *Dsangasi Sultan*, the Son of *Sbirgasi Sultan*, the Son of *Sultan Gasi*, the Son of *Ilbars Chan*; *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, and *Charass'm Chan Sultan* were likewise by one Venter of *Persian* Extraction, and of the Family of one *Chodsama Ududi* of *Zasht*, in *Herat*; the Mother of *Augan Sultan* was also of the Posterity of *Jadigar Chan*.

After *Arap Mahamet Chan* had reigned peace- <sup>Rebellion</sup> ably for fourteen Years, it happen'd one Day <sup>of two of</sup> when he was gone to *Urgens*, that several young <sup>his Sons.</sup> Men



Men of the *Usbecks* gather'd at *Chajuk* about *Habash Sultan*, and *Ilbars Sultan*, whom their Father had caused to be brought up in that Town, and perswaded them to come with them to *Urgens*, in order to get them received in quality of Successors to their Father: The eldest of those two Brothers might have been then sixteen, and the youngest fourteen: With that Intention they actually advanced as far as a certain Fountain in the Country of *Pishga*, which is but one day's Journey from *Urgens*, where they staid ten days. *Arap Mahamet Chan* having been informed of the evil Designs of his two Sons, sent to tell them to come to him, and that he would give them the Town of *Vasir* for a Portion: But they answer'd, They would come as soon as their Men were got together.

*The Rebel- lion by be- ing neg- lected grows for- midable.* It was in the Power of *Arap Mahamet Chan* to have stifled these Seeds of Trouble in their Birth, because he had no more to do than publish a Prohibition, that none should go join the Princes; and it is certain, that no body would have been rash enough to form a Thought of disobeying such a Command, seeing that *Arap Mahamet Chan* was at that time so much feared by all his Subjects, that if he had forbidden them to have any Commerce with their Wives for a Year together, they would not only have obeyed him without the least Opposition, but they would even have avoided coming too near their Houses, for fear they should be accused of disobeying the Orders of the *Chan*: but as he knew many People went to see the two Princes, and that he took no vigorous Measures to hinder them, they imagined what they did was by his own Consent.

*The Rebels invade Chorassan.* The two Princes judging themselves strong enough to form some Enterprize, made an Ir-ruption into the Country of *Chorassan*; and be-  
ing



ing returned from thence loaded with Booty, they sent two *Persians* as a Present to their Father; after which having again possessed their first Camp about the Fountain of *Pishga*, they dismissed all their Troops, and kept in all but eighty Men about them. In this Place *Arap Mahamet Chan* sent again to them one of his Lords of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, called *Kurbauc Hadfi*, to exhort them to come before him: but that Envoy returning the next Day in the Evening, gave the *Chan* an Account that all the *Usbecks* who dwelt between the Countries of *Darugan* and *Bakirgan* had joined with the Princes, and that they had no sooner understood his Commission, than all those Men had unanimously answer'd, That the Princes had no need to go see their Father, and that they had nothing to do with him: that such an Answer had indeed appeared very brutish to him, but that he was willing to relate exactly what had been said to him upon that Occasion, to the end the *Chan* might take his Measures accordingly; that for his Part he did not doubt but they would break out forthwith in open Rebellion, and that the best Counsel he had to give the *Chan* in that Juncture, was to retire immediately to *Chajuk*.

Upon that Report, *Arap Mahamet Chan* being seized with Fear, departed instantly for *Chajuk*. The two Princes being informed of the Retreat of their Father, went a-new to ravage the Lands belonging to the *Persians*; and at their Return, they seized all the Granaries of their Father, and distributed all the Corn which they found there among their Troops, which increased them considerably: Wheat was at that time so cheap in the Country of *Charass'm*, that one might have had two hundred pounds of it for one *Tanga*; and that proceeded from hence, that all the People

*Arap Mahamet Chan retires to Chajuk.*

who



who dwelt from the small Town of *Modekan* to this side of *Bakirgan*, and as far as the Country of *Kuigan*, sowed nothing but Wheat; and as *Arap Mahamet Chan* possessed a great Extent of Country on that side, he had caused the River *Khesill* to be cut behind the Town of *Tuk*, and by means of that Opening, and divers small Canals which proceeded from it, he could supply his Lands with as much Water as was necessary to make them fruitful, and when 'twas thought they had enough of it, they shut that Opening and the River resumed its usual Course into the Sea of *Masanderan*.

*Arap Mahamet Chan agrees with the Princes.*

*Arap Mahamet Chan* finding the Number of the Partisans of the two Princes multiply'd from Day to Day, resolved at last to come to an Agreement with them, giving up to them the Town of *Vasir*, with all the *Turkmanns* depending on it: After which the two Princes, followed by 4000 Men, came to *Chajuk* to salute their Father.

*New Rebellion of Ilbars Sultan.*

Four Years after, *Ilbars Sultan* having resolved to assemble his Troops, under Pretence that he would go and besiege *Jaurfurdi*, marked out a Place called *Sayzakuduk*, which lies to the North of *Vasir*, for their Rendezvous: but understanding in that Place, that *Arap Mahamet Chan* was on the Road for *Urgens*, he turned immediately towards *Chajuk*, and took that Town: *Arap Mahamet Chan* having been informed before he got to *Urgens* of what had happen'd to *Chajuk*, found himself at a loss what Course to take on that Occasion; but some of his Lords having counsell'd him to return to *Chajuk*, being of Opinion that *Ilbars Chan* would be no sooner inform'd that his Father was returning, than he would quit the Town, he followed their Advice, and retook the Road to *Chajuk*. In the way



way he came to lie at a little Burrough nigh the  
 Town of *Chajuk*, called *Chasgan*; *Ilbars Sultan*  
 having been informed thereof, sent thither five  
 hundred Men of his Troops, who entring the  
 Burrough in the Night, seized the Person of *Arap*  
*Mahamet Chan*, and all the Lords of his Reti-  
 nue, and carry'd them to *Chajuk*, where *Ilbars*  
*Sultan* detained them all as his Prisoners. He  
 distributed after that among his Troops, all the  
 Money in his Father's Chest, which he had been  
 so many Years gathering, as well as all the  
 Goods of all the Lords who had been taken in  
 his Father's Retinue.

*Isphandiar Sultan* made his Abode then at  
*Hassarassap*; but *Abulgasi Sultan*, and *Sbariph*  
*Mahamet Sultan*, who were both at *Urgens*, be-  
 ing informed of that detestable Action of *Ilbars*  
*Sultan*, resolved immediately to make War a-  
 gainst him; and *Habash Sultan* himself, who was  
 likewise at that time at *Urgens*, offer'd to accom-  
 pany them in that Expedition: Nevertheless  
 some Lords, who were of their Attendance, di-  
 verted them from that Resolution, by reason  
 that such an Expedition might put the Life of  
 their Father in danger; and that *Ilbars Sultan*,  
 in despair to see himself press'd too far, might  
 perhaps be capable of carrying it to an Extre-  
 mity against him; whereas, if they let him alone,  
 all that he would do to his aged Father might  
 be to take from him all he had, and afterwards  
 let him go, which actually happen'd a short  
 while after; for *Ilbars Sultan* having accom-  
 plished his wicked Will, set his Father at Li-  
 berty, and return'd to the Place of his usual  
 Residence, which was in the Neighbourhood of  
*Urgens*; after which *Habash Sultan* went like-  
 wise to *Vasir*.

*Arap*



*Ilbars Sultan flies to the Defart.* *Arap Mahamet Chan* returning afterwards to *Urgens*, accompany'd by his Son *Isphandar Sultan*, they took measures to make sure of the Person of *Ilbars Sultan*, who smelling it out, fled to the Defart, accompany'd with only five or six Persons; yet for all that, they ruined his Habitations, and removed elsewhere the greater part of his Subjects. At their Return from this Expedition, *Abulgasi Sultan* went towards *Evening* to see his Father, who dwelt at *Urgens*, and told him, that notwithstanding *Ilbars Sultan* was fled to the Defart, that Affair might yet be forthwith put an end to, if he would leave it to him: That for that purpose, he would begin by going to *Vasir* and killing *Habash Sultan*, who always carry'd on a close Correspondence with *Ilbars Sultan*, and from thence he would go and do as much to the latter, and that he would take his measures so right, that he must be very cunning if he escaped him; that it would be better for him to have but five Sons who were obedient to him, than to have two more and be continually exposed to their criminal Attempts; but his Father would determine nothing, and told him, that he must return to him at Night-fall, because he had a mind to take the Advice of one of his Lords called *Zin Hadsi*, upon that Proposal.

*Zin Hagi against that Proposal.* *Abulgasi Sultan* returning to his Father at the Hour appointed, *Arap Mahamet Chan* told him, that he had consulted *Zin Hadsi* about the Business, and that he did not approve of it at all: whereupon *Abulgasi Sultan* desired him to consider, that at the time when he sent the Brother of *Zin Hadsi* to *Ilbars* and *Habash Sultan*, on their Return from the Country of *Chorassan*, to press them to come to see him, he had so magnify'd the Forces of those Princes at his Return, tho



tho they had not actually then above eighty Men <sup>Abulgazi</sup>  
about them, that he was determined thereupon <sup>Sultan ac-</sup>  
to retire to *Chajuk*, instead of having them seiz- <sup>cuses Zin</sup>  
ed, as he might easily have done, if he had not <sup>Hag and</sup>  
taken care to prepossess him by false Reports; <sup>his Bro-</sup>  
that all those to whom he had communicated <sup>thers.</sup>  
his Design altogether approved of it, except  
only *Zin Hadfi*; that that confirmed him entire-  
ly in the Opinion, that all the past Circumstan-  
ces of those Troubles had given him more than  
once, viz. that *Zin Hadfi*, and his Brother *Kur-*  
*bauc* were Traitors, and that they held criminal  
Correspondence with *Ilbars Sultan*, by means of  
*Dostum* and *Ischim* their two other Brothers, who  
were the most intimate Confidants of that Prince,  
and who being the Authors of all those Trou-  
bles, could not hope to save their Heads, if *Il-*  
*bars Sultan* happen'd to lose his Life; that he  
had been intirely stript and thrown into a Prison  
like a Beggar, but that much worse would yet  
happen to him if he did not for once take up a  
Resolution to remedy it, and that he would re-  
pent afterwards too late of his unwillingness to  
follow his Counsel.

But *Arap Mahamet Chan* having constantly <sup>Arap Ma-</sup>  
refused to enter into those Measures, <sup>hamet</sup>  
*Sultan* went to *Isphandiar Sultan* to intreat him <sup>Chan and</sup>  
to go and execute that Design unknown to his <sup>Isphandiar</sup>  
Father; but *Isphandiar Sultan* would have no <sup>Sultan a-</sup>  
hand in it, and desired his Brother to speak no <sup>gainst the</sup>  
more to him about that Affair. In the mean <sup>Proposals</sup>  
time as *Habash* and *Ilbars Sultan* had their Spies  
every where, one of the principal Domesticks  
of *Isphandiar Sultan* having informed *Habash*  
*Sultan* of the Project which *Abulgazi Sultan* had  
form'd on that Occasion against his Life, he ne-  
ver forgave it *Abulgazi Sultan*. Some time after  
*Arap Mahamet Chan* returning to *Chajuk*, and



*Isphandiar Sultan* to *Hassarassap*, *Habash Sultan* sent privately to *Ilbars Sultan* to let him know that it was time to return immediately, seeing his Father was return'd to *Chajuk*; nevertheless that was not done so secretly, but *Abulgasi Sultan* was appriz'd of it; whereupon he repaired to his Father at *Chajuk* for fear of some Accident, and from thence he went to the Town of *Kabt*, which his Father had made over to him.

Arap Ma-  
hamet  
Chan  
marches  
against  
Ilbars and  
Habash  
Sultan.

Five Months after, *Arap Mahamet Chan* beginning to repent his not having follow'd the Advice of *Abulgasi Sultan*, sent his Orders to *Isphandiar* and *Abulgasi Sultan* to assemble all the Troops they could and come to join him immediately; and as *Sbariph Mahamet Sultan* arriv'd just in that Interval at *Chajuk* to pay a Visit to his Mother, he kept him also with him. While *Isphandiar* and *Abulgasi Sultan* were gathering their Troops, *Arap Mahamet Chan* sent to tell *Habash* and *Ilbars Sultan* that they had in their Attendance ten Persons who never ceased giving them evil Counsel against him; that provided they would deliver up to him those ten Persons, he would willingly pardon them all that was past; but that in case they would be so obstinate as to keep them about them, he would not own them from that time forward for his Children. Upon the Princes refusing to deliver him up the Persons in question, he was fain to have recourse to Arms, and *Arap Mahamet Chan* advanced for that purpose with his Troops as far as the Burrow of *Candum*, which is not far from *Chajuk*, with a Resolution to wait in that Place to be joined by his two Sons.

Abulgazi  
Sultan's  
Advice.

*Abulgasi Sultan* having assembled his Troops, caused them to march leisurely towards the Place of Rendezvous; but for his own part he advanced before and came and joined his Father late



late in the Evening after he had lain down, informing him that he left *Kabt* that Morning: Whereupon his Father having asked him where he had left his Troops, he answer'd they were on the March to join him, but that he was in haste to see him alone, in order to propose to him, that when *Isphandiar Sultan* had joined him with his Troops, he should march without Noise along the right Bank of the River, while he with the eight hundred Men which were with him should oblige all the *Turkmanns* which incamped in the Desert, more than the half of which were his Subjects, to join him; and that in case those among the *Turkmanns*, who were the Subjects of *Habash* and *Ilbars Sultan*, should be restif, he would destroy them intirely, and would order it in short in such a manner, that no *Turkman* should join the Princes, being very certain that without the *Turkmanns* they could not equip four hundred Men; that all he had to do was to see whether he would follow his Counsel or not, and that in this last Case he would wash his Hands from all the Mischief that should come of it: But his Father answer'd him, that he could not approve of his Counsel, and that all he had to do was to advance with his Troops; which having been executed, they joined *Arap Mahamet Chan* in a Place called *Castmunum*; and *Isphandiar Sultan* being likewise arrived with his Troops, they enter'd into the Country of *Ikzi-Kumani* \*.

In that Place *Abulgasi Sultan* came again to set upon his Father, to persuade him to detach him or his Brother *Sbariph Mahamet Sultan* to make a Diversion among the *Turkmanns*, without being able to get him to hearken to Reason

*Arap Mahamet Chan rejects the Advice of Abulgasi Sultan.*

[\* Probably so called from the Cumanians.]



*Is taken  
Prisoner a  
second  
time by  
his Rebel  
Sons.*

thereupon, tho he might see plainly enough the great Prejudice he did himself thereby. Advancing afterwards by slow Marches as far as a small Canal, called *Tasbli Germish*, which *Aly Sultan* had also caused to be cut for the Convenience of his Lands, the two Princes who had time to get all their Forces together, came and charged him so briskly, that his Men not being able to withstand so smart an Attack, began presently to fly, and left that unfortunate Prince a second time Prisoner in the Hands of his Sons, who sent him immediately under a strong Guard to the Place of their usual Residence. After this Defeat *Isphandiar Sultan* retired to *Hassarassap*, and *Abulgasi Sultan* to *Kabt*, and from thence into Great Bucharía, to *Imam Culi Chan*, who had succeeded *Abdalmomin Chan*\*. *Imam Culi Chan*, was the Son of *Jar Mahamet Sultan*, Son of *Mankishlak Sultan*, Son of *Sarak Sultan*, Son of *Mahamet Chan*, Son of *Timur Sultan*, Son of *Timur Kattalak Oglan*, Son of *Timur-beg Oglan*, Son of *Kutlak Timur Oglan*, Son of *Tumgan*, Son of *Abai*, Son of *Avas Timur*, Son of *Togai Timur*, Son of *Zuzi Chan*, Son of *Zingis Chan*; but let us return to the History.

*Chowarazm possessed by Ilbars and Habash Sultan.*

*Isphandiar Chan* having shut himself up with his Brothers *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, and *Charass'm Chan Sultan* in the Town of *Hassarassap*, *Ilbars* and *Habash Sultan* came and besieged them; but after forty days Siege they came to an Accommodation together: After which *Isphandiar Sultan* retiring to the *Shah* of *Persia's* Court, under pretence of going to pay his Devotions

\* *Abdalmomin Chan was the last Prince of the Posterity of Sheybani Chan, who reigned in Great Bucharía; for after having been assassinated, the Descendants of Togai Timur, youngest Son of Zuzi Chan, possessed the Throne of that Country.*



at *Mechka*, *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* remained in *Mecca*. Possession of the Town of *Hassarassap*: *Charass'm Chan Sultan* was then but twelve Years old, and his Brother *Augan Sultan*, who was brought up with his Mother at *Chajuk*, was but ten. *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* having likewise quitted the Town of *Hassarassap*, after possessing it four Months, repaired to his Brother *Abulgasi Sultan* in *Great Bucharia*, and by his Departure, *Habash* and *Ilbars Sultan* became possessed of all the Country of *Charass'm*: After which those two Princes divided between them the Dominions of their Father, in such wise that *Habash Sultan* had for his Share the Towns of *Urgens* and *Vasir*, with their Dependences; and *Ilbars Sultan*, *Chajuk* and *Hassarassap*, with their Appendages. They assigned to their Father the little Town of *Kumkula*, to live there with his three Wives and his two youngest Sons; but a Year after *Ilbars Sultan* having sent for his Father, with two Brothers aforesaid, without the Knowledge of his Brother *Habash Sultan*, *Ilbars* caused him to be put to death with his Son *Sultan Charass'm Sultan*, and sent *Augan Sultan* the youngest, to *Habash Sultan*, to the end he might in like manner order him to be executed: But *Habash Sultan* unwilling to imbrue his Hands in the innocent Blood of his Brother, was satisfy'd to send him to the *Czar* of the *Urusses*, where he died in process of Time. As to the two Sons of *Isphandiar Sultan*, the eldest of which was at that time but three Years old, and the youngest but one and a half, *Ilbars Sultan* had them educated at *Chajuk*. *Arap Mahamet Chan* lost his Life in the Year 1031, called *It*, or the *Dog*, after having reigned twenty Years.



## C H A P. X.

*Of the Reign of Isphandiar Chan, and  
of that of his Brother Shariph Mahamet Chan.*

Isphandiar  
Sultan re-  
pairs to  
Chowazm.

THE News of the Death of *Arap Mahamet Chan* having reach'd the Court of the *Shah* of *Persia*, the *Shah* gave three hundred chosen Men to *Isphandiar Sultan*, to go try if he could put himself in possession of his Father's Dominions: *Isphandiar Sultan* having been joined on the Road by seventy *Turkmans* of the Tribe of *Taka*, and by a hundred others of the Tribe of *Jamut*, advanced with his small Troops directly forward to the Town of *Tuk*, in the Neighbourhood of which he knew *Habash Sultan* at that time incamped: but arriving about Midnight at his Camp, he found him not there, because a Lord of his Vassals had given him a Feast that very Day; *Habash Sultan* had also resolv'd to spend the Night with that Lord, when he heard of a sudden the Trumpet sound, which having given him to understand there were Enemies in the Neighbourhood, seeing it is forbidden to sound the Trumpet upon any other Account, he mounted Horse as fast as he could and fled for Shelter to his Brother *Ilbars Sultan*; after which all those who still retained any Veneration for the Memory of *Arap Mahamet Chan*, as well as those who had been before of the Number of the Subjects of *Abulgasi Sultan*, and of *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* his Sons, came and joined *Isphandiar Sultan*, and his Affairs were taking the best Turn in the World, when the



the Malice of one *Nasar Chodsa* intirely changed the Face of them.

This Man who was descended of the Posterity of a holy Man of the Country of *Bakirgan*,<sup>His Design defeated by Nasir Choga.</sup> called *Sagidatta*, was intirely devoted to *Ilbars Sultan*, who had marry'd his Daughter; and seeing the Storm which was rising against his Son-in-Law, he sent to bid him take Courage, and to tell him that he would be with him in two days, with all the Men he could get together in his Neighbourhood. For this purpose, having armed in haste fifty Men, to which he still joined all the People he met upon the Road, he went and possessed himself of the Ford of the River *Khesill*, which was on that side, to obstruct the Passage of the Men that had a mind to join *Isphandiar Sultan*; after which he took the *Coran* in his Hands and began to curse *Isphandiar Sultan* with a loud Voice, giving out that he had embraced the Religion of the *Persians*, and that wherever he came he put to the Sword all the Men, and condemned the Women and Children to slavery; and to the end they might the more easily give Credit to what he said, he confirmed it with the solemnest Oaths he would devise. This Discourse made such Impression on many of the common People, who could not believe that a Man of his Birth would make use of the *Coran* and all that was sacred to abuse them; that instead of going to join *Isphandiar Sultan*, as they at first designed, they went to reinforce the Troops of the two Princes, and the rest resolved to leave them to agree among themselves without meddling in the Matter.

*Ilbars* and *Habash Sultan* by this means found themselves soon in a Condition to go in quest of their eldest Brother, and the two Armies<sup>Isphandiar Sultan retires towards Mankishlak.</sup> meeting<sup>Y 4</sup>lak.



Death of  
Ilbars and  
Habash  
Sultan.

Isphandiar  
Sultan pro-  
claimed  
Chan,  
An. Dom.  
1622.  
Isphandiar  
Chan  
chastises  
the Us-  
becks a-  
bout Cha-  
juk.

meeting, *Isphandiar Sultan* had the worst, and was obliged after a new bloody Action to retire towards *Mankishlak*: In that Place he was joined a-new by much People, and among the rest by three thousand *Turkmans* of that Neighbourhood, as well as by a great Number of *Usbecks* who began to be weary of the Government of *Habash* and *Ilbars Sultan*. With this Reinforcement he went back again, and his Brothers having advanced to meet him with a considerable Army, they were continually fighting for twenty two days together: but at length *Isphandiar Sultan* having carry'd the Victory, and taken his Brother *Ilbars Sultan* Prisoner, he caused him to be put to death immediately. *Habash Sultan* took Refuge among the *Mankatts*, who inhabit along the Banks of the *Sirr*; but not thinking himself safe enough with them, he retired to a Lord of the *Mankatts* called *Sharnik Mirsa*, who dwelt about the Banks of the *Jemm*, hoping that the Remembrance of what he did while he reigned at *Urgens*, as having sent back all the Prisoners of the *Mankatts* which were in his Domains, would procure him a good Reception with the chief of that Tribe: but *Sharnik Mirsa* detesting his Perfidiousness caused him to be arrested, and sent him to his Brother *Isphandiar Sultan*, who had him put to death without delay; such was the End of *Habash* and *Ilbars Sultan*, and they both lost their Lives without leaving Heirs behind them: After which *Isphandiar Sultan* was solemnly acknowledged in quality of *Chan*, which happened in the Year 1032, called *Tongus*, or the Hog.

Two Years after *Isphandiar Chan* prepared to chastise the *Usbecks* within the Jurisdiction of *Chajuk*, whom he look'd upon as the Authors of all the past Misfortunes of his Family; but those who



who suspected his Design, fled some to the *Mankatts* and the *Casats*, and others to the Country of *Ma-urenner*. Three Years after, some of the *Usbecks*, who had fled to the *Mankatts* and the *Casats*, having returned to the Number of three thousand Families, went to settle near the Shores of the Sea of *Ma-sanderan* about the Mouth of the River *Amu*: Upon this News, some of those who had taken Refuge in the Country of *Ma-urenner* designed likewise to return, and to that purpose began their Journey about eight hundred in Number: But *Isphandiar Chan* who always distrusted them, having been informed of it, came upon them by surprize with some Troops upon the Banks of the River *Khesill*, towards the Town of *Kabt*, and put them all to the Sword.

*Isphandiar Chan* died the first Day of the Dies *A.D.* Year 1044, called *Gilki*, or the Horse, after 1634. having reigned twelve Years. After his Death, his Brother *Sbariph Mahamet Sultan* took the Quality of *Chan*, and fixt his Residence at *Urgens*; that Prince was much at Variance with the *Callmaks*, who came in his Time and seized a great part of the Country of *Chahars'm*. He died in the Year 1052.

*Callmaks*  
seize part  
of Chow-  
arazm.

*An. Dom.*  
1642.





## C H A P. XI.

Concerning the first Years of the Life of  
Abulgasi Chan.

An. Dom.  
1605.

Cosaks  
of Jaigik  
invade  
Chowa-  
razm.

**A** Bulgasi Sultan was born at Urgens in the Year 1014, called *Tausban*, or the Hare, on Monday in the Month of *Asfet*, at Sun-rise. It happen'd the same Year, some time after the Birth of *Abulgasi Sultan*, that ten Merchants of the Town of *Urgens* being on the Road going to traffick with the *Urusses*, they fell into the Hands of the *Cosaks*, towards the Banks of the River *Jaigik*; who after having slain eight, gave the two others their Lives on Condition they inform'd them exactly of the present Condition of the Town of *Urgens*; and if it was true that there were no Soldiers in that Town during the Summer; whereupon one of the two Merchants, who was a Stranger, originally of *Turkestan*, having assured them that there were no armed Men all the Summer in the Town, but many a days Journey from thence, and that there was a Desert on one side of the Town, by which they might easily enter without being perceived by any body, the *Cosaks* resolved to go thither with a Party of 1000 Men, and to make use of that Man for a Guide.

Cosaks  
surprize  
Urgens.

At their Arrival at *Urgens*, they enter'd directly into the City by the Gate of *Mirsa*, [or of the Prince] which opens to the Desert, and that with so little Noise, that going to kill a Butcher, who was the first Man they met in the Town, he began to revile them, believing them to have been the *Chan's* People, bawling out, "What are you going to do, you *Armenians*! I will go and complain to the *Chan* of you, who will have you hang'd." But the *Cosaks* for all that kill'd him



him, and a thousand other Inhabitants of the Town. *Arap Mahamet Chan* hearing of their *Cofaks de* Invasion in his Summer-Camp upon the Banks<sup>feated.</sup> of the River *Amu*, went and cut off their Retreat and handled them in the manner we have related above: Forty days after this happen'd, *Abulgasi Sultan* came into the World, which made his Father *Arap Mahamet Chan* say, that Child will be very happy because his Enemies were defeated before he was born; and in regard the Mother of the Infant was descended from the Branch of the *Gasi's*, he gave him the Name of *Abulgasi Bayadur*.

*Abulgasi Bayadur Sultan* was the Son of *Arap* <sup>Genealogy</sup> *Mahamet Chan*, Son of *Hadfim Chan*, Son of <sup>of Abulga-</sup> *Akattai Chan*, Son of *Amunak*, Son of *Jadigar* <sup>zi Bayadur</sup> *Chan*, Son of *Timur Sbeich Chan*, Son of *Hadfi* *Taulai*, Son of *Arab Shab*, Son of *Fulat*, Son of *Mengu Timur Chan*, Son of *Badikull*, Son of *Zuzi Buga*, Son of *Bayadur Chan*, Son of *Sheybani Chan*, Son of *Zuzi Chan*, Son of *Zingis Chan*, Son of *Jessugi Bayadur Chan*, Son of *Bortan Chan*, Son of *Cabull Chan*, Son of *Tumana Chan*, Son of *Bassicar Chan*, Son of *Kaydu Chan*, Son of *Dutumin Chan*, Son of *Tocha Chan*, Son of *Budensir Mogak*, Son of the Widow *Alancu*, Grand-daughter of *Juldufs Chan* by his Son, who dying young, *Alancu* was brought up in the House of his Grandfather *Juldufs Chan*, who was the Son of *Mengli Chodsa*, Son of *Temirtash Chan*, Son of *Kaymazu Chan*, Son of *Simsanzi Chan*, Son of *Bukbendu Chan*, Son of *Menkoazin Borell Chan*, Son of *Kipzi Mergan Chan*, Son of *Bizin Kajan Chan*, Son of *Kaw-idill Chan*, Son of *Bertezena Chan*, between whom and the Founder of his House called *Kajan*, there is an Interval of 450 Years, which takes in the time that the *Moguls* were confined among the Mountains of *Irgana-*  
*kon.*



kon. *Kajan* was the Son of *Ill Chan*, Son of *Tinjis Chan*, Son of *Mengli Chan*, Son of *Julduz Chan*, near Relation of *Ay Chan*, Brother of *Kiun Chan*, Son of *Ogus Chan*, Son of *Cara Chan*, Son of *Mogull* or *Mung'l Chan*, Son of *Alenza Chan*, Son of *Kajuk Chan*, Son of *Dibbakui Chan*, Son of *Jelza Chan*, Son of *Taunak Chan*, Son of *Turk*, Son of *Japhis*, Son of the Prophet *Nui*, Son of *Zamach*, Son of *Matushlach*, Son of the Prophet *Idris*, Son of *Berdi*, Son of *Melabil*, Son of *Shinan*, Son of *Anus*, Son of the Prophet *Shifs*, Son of the Prophet *Adam*, sur-named *Saphi Jula*.

*Safi Allah*. The Mother of *Abulgasi Sultan* was called *Mirbanu Chanum*, and was the Daughter of *Dsangasi Sultan*, Son of *Shirgasi Sultan*, Son of *Sultan Gasi*, Son of *Ilbars Chan*, Son of *Burga Sultan*, Son of *Jadigar Chan*; infomuch that *Abulgasi Sultan* being descended by his Mother from *Burga Sultan*, eldest Son of *Jadigar Chan*, and by his Father from *Amunak*, third Son of *Jadigar Chan*, it happen'd that he descended, as well by the Father's as the Mother's side, from the Mother of *Zingis Chan*. *Abulgasi* having lost his Mother when he was six Years old, his Father had him brought up in his House at *Urgens*, until entring into his sixteenth Year, he marry'd him, and granted him the half of the Town of *Urgens*; whereof at the same time, he assigned the other half to his Brother *Habash Sultan*. A Year after, upon some Differences which *Abulgasi Sultan* had with his Brothers *Habash* and *Ilbars Sultan*, he went to his Father at *Chajuk*, who gave him the Town of *Kabt* for his Portion. Some time after, having been obliged by the Command of his Father to come and join him with his Troops against *Habash* and *Ilbars Sultan*, they came to a bloody Battle, in

Marry'd  
at 16.

An. 1030.

An. 1031.



in which *Abulgasi Sultan* fought with so much bravery, that at the third Charge he found himself so hemm'd in by the Enemy, that he was upon the Point of being made Prisoner ; when in the nick of time he was brought off by six of his own Men, and with this Reinforcement he deliver'd himself out of the Hands of forty Men, who had surrounded him : On this Occasion he had the Misfortune to receive a Shot with an Arrow in the Mouth, which wounded him in such sort that he was obliged afterwards to have some little Bone of the Jaw taken away on the side which the Arrow had fractur'd.

*Abulgasi Sultan* going to fly after the Loss of *Abulgasi* the Battle, fell with his Horse ; but one of his Men having brought him another Horse, he made towards a River which he was obliged to cross by Swimming. On his Arrival at the River side, he there found three of his own Men, who help'd him to put off his Coat of Mail the better to pass the Stream : But he had scarce got it off before they came running after him, crying kill ! kill ! Whereupon throwing himself briskly into the River, he ran great Risk of being drown'd, the Current being very rapid in that Place, if giving the Horse his Head, and holding by the Main, he had not found means to redouble the Vigour of his Horse, and in that manner happily to gain the other side of the River. 'Tis true, they did not fail to send many Arrows after him ; but none of them reach'd him. On the other side he was rejoined by the three Men of his Party, who had pass'd the River with the same good Fortune as himself. After which he took the Road to *Kabt*, where he found ten more of his Men, and staying only to change Horses in that Town, he went and cross'd the Country of *Ma-urenner*

*Sultan flies into Great Bucharla.*



to Samarkant, in order to go to *Imam Culi Chan* in *Great Bucharía*. That Prince receiv'd him very well, and advis'd him not to lay too much to heart the Misfortunes of his House; that being young, and full of Spirit, he would infallibly find in time some favourable Occasion to return with Honour into his own Country, in case God spar'd him Life.

Returns to  
Urgens.

We have declar'd amply before, the Consequences of those Troubles which oblig'd *Isphandiar Sultan* to retire into *Persia*, and *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* to repair to his Brother into *Great Bucharía*. After *Abulgasi Sultan* and his Brother had spent two Years in that Country, they learned that *Isphandiar Sultan* had vanquish'd his two Rebel Brothers, and had re-enter'd into the Possession of his Father's Dominions; whereupon they took leave of *Imam Culi Chan*, and return'd to *Urgens*. At their Arrival in that Town, they caus'd *Isphandiar Sultan* to be proclaimed in quality of *Chan*, and divided among them the Dominions of their Father, in such sort, that *Isphandiar Chan* had the Towns of *Chajuk*, *Hassarassap* and *Kakt*, *Abulgasi Sultan* the Town of *Urgens*, with its Dependencies, and *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* the Town of *Vasir*; *Abulgasi Sultan* was then just nineteen Years of Age.

An. Dom.  
1033.  
Abulgazi  
Sultan  
proposes to  
kill the  
Turk-  
manns.

The Year after, all the principal among the Subjects of *Isphandiar Chan* having gone in the Autumn to pay their Court to the *Chan*, *Abulgasi Sultan* design'd to go thither also; but before his Departure he invit'd *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, with three Lords of his Vassals to his House, and at their Arrival he ask'd *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, in Presence of two of his Vassal Lords, if perchance there was not some Animosity between him and *Isphandiar Chan*: and *Shariph*



*Shariph Mahamet Sultan* having assured him there was not, he took an Oath of his Brother and the five other Lords who assisted at this Conference, that they should not divulge to any one what he was going to trust with them; after which, he told them he could not comprehend what *Isphandiar Chan* meant by keeping the *Turkmanns* about him a whole Year; that may be his Design was to put to the Sword all the *Usbecks* about *Chajuk*, to revenge himself on them for having always favour'd *Ilbars Sultan*, and that being so, he would not fail to demand Help of them at their Arrival at *Chajuk*; that for that reason he believ'd the best Course they could take on that Occasion was not to go thither at all, and that probably that might divert him from such a Resolution; but in Case they would absolutely go there, it was his Advice to cause all the *Turkmanns* to be kill'd which they should meet upon the Road, and afterwards to go and present themselves before *Isphandiar Chan* with Ropes about their Necks, to implore Pardon for having caused those *Turkmanns* to be slain without his Knowledge: That the Remembrance of the usual Treachery of that Nation, and the great occasions of Complaint which they have had against them in time past, of which the *Chan* was as well apprised as themselves, had moved them to that Action; and that inasmuch as the thing being done there was no Remedy, they came to put themselves at his Mercy, to do with them what seem'd good unto him: but *Sharif Mahamet Sultan* not being of that Opinion, propos'd killing *Isphandiar Chan*, and to cause *Abulgasi Sultan* to be received as *Chan* in his room.

That



Proposal to  
kill the  
Chan re-  
jected.

Abulgazi  
Sultan ar-  
rested by  
the Chan's  
Order.

The Vigurs  
and Nai-  
manns put  
to the  
Sword.

That Proposal was approv'd by four of the Lords who were present at that Conference; but the fifth, who was one of the Vassals of *Abulgazi Sultan*, broke all their Measures: for not satisfy'd with absolutely rejecting that Proposal, he protested that if ever he heard any more mention of such a Project against the Life of the *Chan*, he would not fail to be their Accuser; and that Lord, who was of the Tribe of the *Vigurs*, was called *Curban Hadfi*: That Accident having obliged them to change their Resolution, they went to *Chajuk*, and having staid there three days, they intended to return the fourth; when *Isphandiar Chan* having caused *Abulgazi Sultan* to be arrested, had all the *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* put to the Sword who were then at *Chajuk*; and notwithstanding he had forbid any harm to be done to those of the other Tribes of the *Usbecks*, yet the Men to whom he had committed the execution of that Affair, slew on that Occasion 100 other *Usbecks*, tho they were neither Relations nor Friends of the *Vigurs*, or the *Naimanns*; there perish'd in this manner above 500 *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* in the Town of *Chajuk* only. After which *Isphandiar Chan* who was resolv'd intirely to destroy those two Tribes, having sent Troops towards the Habitations which they possessed about *Chajuk*, with Orders to kill as many *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* as fell into their Hands; the Commanders of those Troops, notwithstanding the precise Orders of the *Chan*, put to the Sword all the *Usbecks* which dwelt from *Hassarassap*, almost as far as the Tower which is upon the Bank of the River *Amu*, without sparing the Infants at the Breast, and afterwards destroy'd all their Dwellings.



One sees upon the side of the River *Amu*, a <sup>Stone Tower</sup> very high Tower built with Stones, about which <sup>er where</sup> inhabits a Branch of the *Vigurs* called *Cara Vigurs* <sup>the River</sup> *Tokai*; and 'tis near the Habitations of this Branch <sup>Amu divides</sup> of the *Vigurs* that the River *Amu* divides it self into two Arms, one of which passes before the said Tower, and is called *Tokai*; and the other, which is the greatest, having quitted for some time past its old Bed, throws it self by a large Channel into the River *Khesill*, near the Town of *Fuk*, which has done much Injury to the City of *Urgens*, at present no better than a Desert; since by that Accident the antient Channel of the River *Amu*, which runs along by the Town, is become entirely dry; nevertheless the *Chan* continues still to reside there during the Winter, but at the beginning of Spring he usually goes to encamp towards the Banks of the River *Amu* with the best part of his Subjects, who have almost all Lands on that side, which they cultivate in Summer, and at the end of Autumn he returns to *Urgens*. But let us return to the History.

*Isphandiar Chan* not satisfy'd with letting the *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* about *Chajuk* and *Hassaras* <sup>and Naimanns of</sup> *Jap* feel the Effects of his Anger in the manner <sup>Urgens</sup> we have related, sent *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* to <sup>stand on</sup> *Urgens*, with Orders also to cause the Throats <sup>their De-</sup> to be cut of all the *Vigurs* and *Naimanns* within <sup>fence</sup> the Dependence of that City; but on his Arrival at *Urgens*, the People of those two Tribes gave him to understand that they did not intend to let themselves be massacred with Impunity, and that if he persisted in the Resolution to take away their Lives, they had taken all the necessary Measures to sell them very dear; but that if the *Chan* was satisfy'd with their leaving the Country, they were ready to go into *Great Bucharia*, or some where else, where they might



find some Settlement; and that if the *Chan* would leave them in the quiet Possession of their Habitations, they offer'd to receive among them *Abulgasi Sultan*, with one of the most trusty Servants of the *Chan* called *Mahamet Sainbeg*, to have an Eye upon their Conduct. *Sbariph Mahamet Sultan* finding these Proposals reasonable, sent a *Turkmann* called *Tangrebirdi* to *Isphandiar Chan* to make a Report of them, and to receive his Orders thereupon. *Isphandiar Chan* having pitch'd upon the last Expedient, gave Command out of hand to *Mahamet Sainbeg* to go thither with *Abulgasi Sultan*, and carefully observe the Motions of the *Usbecks* of *Urgens*.

*Abulgazi Sultan sent to watch the Usbecks.*

*Abulgasi Sultan* being arriv'd among the *Usbecks* of those two Tribes, found there was no Place fit for his Abode thereabouts, because Water was very scarce; wherefore he went and settled himself towards the Banks of the River *Kbeill*, in the Neighbourhood of *Tuk*, in a Place where there were then no Dwellings of the *Usbecks*; and he had that Place fortify'd the best he could for his Security. A few days after *Sbariph Mahamet Sultan* arriving also there, went to lodge with his Brother *Abulgasi Sultan*; and *Mahamet Sainbeg* having afterwards repaired there also, took up his Quarters in the House of a *Sart*. At his Arrival eighty *Turkmanns*, who were come thither in the Train of *Sbariph Mahamet Sultan*, quitted that Prince and went to join *Mahamet Sainbeg*. In the mean time the *Usbecks* who had their Habitations on the other side the River *Kbesill*, having been inform'd of the Arrival of *Abulgasi Sultan* in their Neighbourhood, thirty of the most considerable among them came to welcome him, and on that Occasion they offer'd him a thousand choice Men to be imploy'd in his Service against *Isphandiar*



*phandiar Chan*: That for that end they would begin by surprizing *Mahamet Sainbeg* and his eighty *Turkmanns*, who had quitted *Shariph Mahamet* to go over to him; and that they would take good heed that not one of them should escape, because they ought to look upon them, and all the rest of the *Turkmanns*, as the only Authors of the Massacre of their Brethren; that afterwards they would go and besiege *Chajuk* during the Winter, and put to the Sword all the *Turkmanns* about that Town.

But *Abulgazi Sultan* found this Proposal altogether impracticable, being persuaded that the eighty *Turkmanns* would not fail to be upon their Guard; and that as soon as they should perceive in the least the Approach of the *Usbecks*, they would take Flight; insomuch that before they could arrive before *Chajuk*, all the People about the Town would have sufficient time to retire with their Effects; and that while they were detain'd at the Siege of *Chajuk*, the *Callmaks* would have the best Opportunity in the World to come and carry off their Wives and Children, and set Fire to their Habitations. Wherefore he was of Opinion they ought to treat *Mahamet Sainbeg* and his eighty *Turkmanns* kindly, and send them back with all sorts of Civilities in order to lull the *Chan* asleep; that for this purpose *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* might go and pass the Winter at the little Town of *Kajuk*, near *Urgens*; whilst the *Usbecks* on the other side of the River labour'd continually upon a good Intrenchment for their Security, as if they were in great Dread of the *Callmaks*; and that upon the two Roads which lead to the Country of the *Callmaks* they should place good Guards, as tho to observe what pass'd on that side; but that towards the beginning of the

Abulgazi  
Sultan's  
Project to  
destroy the  
Turk-  
manns.



Spring, a Man, whom Care had been taken to instruct, should come running full speed from towards those Guard-Houses, with the News that the *Callmaks* had carry'd off three days before some of their Centries; and as the Men who had been sent to discover them were able to perceive by the many Fires they made in the Night, that a great Number of them was arriv'd, the Commanders of the Guard-Houses had resolv'd upon a Retreat, and had dispatch'd him to give notice to *Abulgasi Sultan*; that they had given him three Horses for more Expedition, two of which they had kill'd on the Road, and that the third had much ado to bring him so far, he had rid so hard: That on this Advice they should off-hand get together Troops under pretence of going to meet the *Callmaks*, but that in the March *Sbaripb Mahamet Sultan* should come to join them with his Men at a Place agreed upon with him; after which they should turn of a sudden towards *Chajuk*, and put to the Sword all the *Turkmanns*; that they should meet with the less Difficulty in the Execution of that Project, because the *Turkmanns* of *Chajuk* were accusom'd to go and incamp every Spring, about the Season that the Sheep brought forth their Lambs, in the neighbouring Forests, where they found Pasture for them; and that the *Sarts* of *Chajuk* went usually about the same time to the Parts where they had their Lands which they cultivated; insomuch that *Ispbandiar Chan* might then keep at most fifty or sixty Men about him, and that there was all the Probability in the World that he would know nothing of it before they should be in the City.

Mahamet  
Sainbeg  
and the  
Turk-  
manns re-  
tire.

But the *Usbecks* having no mind to depart from their Enterprize upon the Person of *Mahamet Sainbeg*, and the eighty *Turkmanns* which were



were with him; *Mahamet Sainbeg* who found it out, retir'd with his eighty Men at the beginning of the Night, when every body was gone to rest; and the *Usbecks* arriving after his Departure, *Abulgasi Sultan* represented to them, that as on all Occasions the shortest Follies are the best, his Advice was to send some body to *Isphandiar Chan* to assure him they knew not the Reason of the sudden Departure of *Mahamet Sainbeg*, forasmuch as they had not given him any Cause to complain of them; and that if they had any ill Design against him, it would have been very easy to have hinder'd his Departure from among them. This Proposal how reasonable soever it was, not being relish'd by *Shariph Mahamet* and *Abulgasi Sultan* and the *Usbecks*, who maintain'd that he had no other Measures to take but to go with all their Forces to *Chajuk*; *Abulgasi Sultan* suffer'd himself at length to be drawn in by the Majority, notwithstanding that great Precipitancy did not altogether please him; after which they set forward towards *Chajuk*, and after two days March they came in the Evening to the Bridge of *Tash-kupruk*, in the Country of *Chika*, where they halted the space of forty days; and in the time of their Stay in that Place, they kill'd some *Turkmanns* who dwelt thereabout, but they did no hurt to the *Sarts*: Whereupon all the other *Turkmanns* of those Parts retreated to *Chajuk*.

In the mean time the *Callmaks* having surpriz'd one Part of the Camp of the *Usbecks*, and carry'd away a great Number of them into slavery, it extremely disconcerted their Projects, and many of them deserted the Army, because they began to have a bad Opinion of the Success of their Enterprize. Upon the News of this Revolt of the *Usbecks*, the *Turkmanns*, who



dwelt about the Mountain of *Abulchan*, and at *Mankishlak*, coming to join *Isphandiar Chan* at *Chajuk*, he took the Field in his Turn, and having encounter'd the *Usbecks* in the aforesaid Place, he intirely defeated them. *Abulgasi Sultan* seeing the Battle lost, began to cry out to his Men that they should all retire into the Intrenchment which they had rais'd to cover their Baggage; and being come there afterwards himself, he found four or five hundred of his own Men who were busy packing up their Auls to be gone: but having stop'd them, and all those that follow'd him, he obliged them to stand their Ground, and after he had made them dismount and fasten the Horses well together, to take from them intirely all hope of saving themselves by Flight, he waited for the Enemy without stirring. *Isphandiar Chan* did not fail in the Evening to draw near his Intrenchment, but *Abulgasi Sultan* having sally'd out of it on Foot at the Head of five hundred Men, receiv'd him in such a manner, that not daring to return a second time, he contented himself with intrenching himself likewise on his side, at a small distance from the Intrenchment of *Abulgasi Sultan*; and after they had look'd at one another in this manner for six days, without either of the Parties daring to renew the Fight, they came the seventh Day to an Accommodation. After which each of the two Brothers prepared to return to the Place of his usual Residence; nevertheless with this Difference, that *Abulgasi Sultan* and the *Usbecks* went away in good earnest, whereas *Isphandiar Chan* only feign'd to return; for perceiving that he could not force *Abulgasi Sultan* in his Intrenchment, he had set this Treaty on Foot only with the View to draw him into the open Plain, where he promis'd himself he should

Usbecks

defeated

by Isphan-

diar Chan.

Accommo-

dation be-

tween the

Chan and

Abulgazi

Sultan.



should find no Difficulty to put him to the Sword, with all his Men: but as he durst not open his Design to any body, for fear of its taking Wind before the time, it happen'd that the *Turkmanns* were gone to pillage a Burrow inhabited by the *Sarts*, called *Chanaka*, at the time that *Abulgasi Sultan* and his Men went out of their Intrenchment. *Isphandiar Chan* vexed at having miss'd his Aim, as soon as the *Turkmanns* were return'd, set himself to pursue *Abulgasi Sultan* with 5000 Men.

*Abulgasi Sultan*, who had in all but 540, seeing him make up to him suspected his Design; and having caused in haste an Inclosure to be form'd of his Chariots, he defended himself with so much Resolution and good Fortune, that *Isphandiar Chan* was obliged to come to a second Treaty, after having had eighty Men killed, and two thousand wounded in this last Action; whereas *Abulgasi Sultan* had but twenty dead and a hundred wounded. After which *Abulgasi Sultan*, and his Brother *Sbariph Mahamet Sultan*, being come to make their Abode at *Urgens*, all the *Usbecks* which dwelt before on both sides of the River *Amu*, came to settle themselves about that City.

Some time after, a Comet having appear'd in the Sky, the common People were persuaded, considering the extraordinary Animosity which reigned among their Princes, it could not but portend great Calamaties to them; and in that Persuasion they went by Troops, which they called *Top, Top*, some into Great *Bucharia*, and others into the Country of *Turkestan*; *Abulgasi Sultan* did in truth all he was able to remedy that Evil, but he could by no means stop their Flight; for while he sent after one Party which went out on one side, two or three others went out



another way; insomuch that having already by  
 Ramadan. the last Day of the Month of *Ramejan*, lost three  
 considerable Troops of his Subjects, one of which  
 retired into *Great Bucharia*, and the other two  
 among the *Casats* and *Mankatts*, he was con-  
 strained, that he might not remain alone at the  
 Mercy of *Isphandiar Chan*, to go seek likewise  
 Abulgazi Sultan re- Refuge elsewhere. *Sbaripb Mahamet Sultan*,  
 tures also to who was in the same Case, went on this Occasion  
 Turkestan. into *Great Bucharia*; but *Abulgasi Sultan* retir'd  
 towards *Casatschia Orda*, and went to visit *Ischim*  
*Chan* at *Turkestan*, where he staid three Months;  
 after which *Ischim Chan* going to *Tashkant* to pay  
 his Respects to *Tursum Chan*, who was the reign-  
 ing Prince of those Provinces, he carry'd *Abul-*  
*gasi Sultan* with him. On his Arrival at the  
 Court of *Tursum Chan*, he presented *Abulgasi*  
*Sultan* to him, saying this is *Abulgasi Sultan*,  
 Son of *Arap Mahamet Chan*, whose Ancestors  
 have been Benefactors to many of our Relations  
 who have been obliged to fly to them for Re-  
 fuge, tho never any of their Family have come  
 to us: Wherefore it is both just and reasonable,  
 that in Consideration of the Obligations which  
 we owe to his House, you should allow him  
 wherewithal to subsist according to his Birth at  
 your Highnesses Court at *Tashkant*, till he can  
 return into his own Country; whereupon *Tur-*  
*sum Chan* receiv'd him at his Court, and treated  
 him with much Distinction. But two years after,  
 Ischim Chan of Turkestan massacres Tursum Chan of Tashkant. *Ischim Chan* having massacred *Tursum Chan*, to-  
 gether with all those of the Tribe of the *Cataguns*,  
 who were his antient Subjects, *Abulgasi Sultan*  
 could not forbear telling *Ischim Chan* that he had  
 always flatter'd himself with drawing powerful  
 Succours from him and *Tursum Chan*; but see-  
 ing there was no less Discord between their Fa-  
 milies



milies than there was in his own, he would repair to *Imam Culi Chan*.

On his Arrival in *Great Bucharìa* he found a very cold Reception from *Imam Culi Chan*, be-<sup>Abulgazi Sultan</sup> cause he came not directly to his Court; but had <sup>retires into</sup> chosen rather to retire to that of *Tursum Chan*, <sup>Great Bu-</sup> who had always been an Enemy to *Imam Culi Chan*; which made him resolve to acquaint the *Usbecks* who were retir'd into *Great Bucharìa*, that not being so well receiv'd at the Court of *Imam Culi Chan* as he had reason at first to hope, he saw himself obliged to hearken to the *Turkmanns*, who had propos'd to him, that provided he would forget what was past they would receive him with open Arms whenever he had a mind to come among them: Whereupon the *Usbecks* assur'd him, that notwithstanding they had retir'd from him at the time of the Apparition of the Comet, he might always depend upon their Zeal for his Service; that in return they flatter'd themselves on their side that he would not change with regard to them, but would always continue his Protection to them, that they had the more need of it, as they clearly saw he could have no dependence on the Promise of his Brother *Sbariph Mahamet Sultan*, who was naturally so unconstant, that supposing they should follow him, they should always be in fear, lest one time or other he should side with the *Turkmanns*, and leave them in the Lurch, which they were in no fear of from him, whose Stedfastness was sufficiently known to them: Lastly, that he had no more to do but go over to the *Turkmanns* upon the first Invitation, and that he might assure himself that they would all repair to him in proper time.

Shortly



Abulgazi  
Sultan in-  
vited by  
the Turk-  
manns, re-  
pairs to  
Chajuk.

Shortly after there came a new Deputy from the *Turkmanns* to *Abulgazi Sultan*, with the News that his Brother *Isphandiar Chan* being inform'd that the *Turkmanns* had invited him to their Quarters was frighten'd thereat, and retir'd to *Hassarassap*, fearing some Surprize; upon which *Abulgazi Sultan*, follow'd only by five or six Persons, went directly to *Chajuk*, where he was immediately joined by Numbers of People who flock'd to him from all Parts. Two Months after, he learned that his Brother *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* being reconciled with *Isphandiar Chan*, was arriv'd at *Hassarassap*, and that they intended to turn all their Forces against him.

Defeats  
Isphandiar  
Chan and  
Sharif Ma-  
hamet Sul-  
tan.

Upon this Advice *Abulgazi Sultan* immediately took the Field with what Troops he had, and the two Armies coming to Blows, that of *Abulgazi Sultan* had the better, which obliged the two Brothers to sign a Treaty of Peace. Six Months after *Abulgazi Sultan* being at *Chajuk*, where he kept his usual Residence, since his return into the Country of *Charass'm*; and suspecting no Treachery from his Brothers, they came on a sudden with their Troops to besiege the Town, and all the *Turkmanns* thereabouts joined with them; insomuch that they had above fifteen thousand Men, whereas *Abulgazi Sultan* had only six hundred; nevertheless he did not lose Courage, but defended himself so vigorously, that he obliged them at length to return with much Loss.

Is besieged  
by his  
Brothers  
in Chajuk.

Defeats  
Sharif  
Mahamet  
Sultan.

After their Retreat he sent a Party of forty Men towards *Hassarassap*, who having slain some People upon the Frontiers of the Territory of that Town, return'd with a great Number of Cattle which they had taken in that Inroad; but *Isphandiar Chan* having been inform'd of it, sent *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* with some Troops







*Incens-  
es the Turk-  
manns a-  
gainst A-  
bulgazi  
Sultan.*

*Abulgazi  
Sultan  
seized in  
his Bed.*

as if he did it of his own Head, and unknown to *Isphandiar Chan*. Next Day after the Departure of *Shariph Mahamet Sultan*, several of the principal *Turkmanns* coming early in the Morning to visit him on that Occasion, *Isphandiar Chan* protested to them very solemnly that it was without his Knowledge that his Brother had undertaken that Voyage, but that without being a Conjuror he could tell them that it was a Plot of *Abulgazi Sultan*. After he had incensed them by these Insinuations against his Brother, he represented to them that it was *Abulgazi Sultan* who had recalled the *Usbecks* from *Great Bucharia*, in order to settle them in the Country of *Arall*, purely with an Intention to make use of them afterwards against them; that it was he also who had persuaded his Brother *Shariph Mahamet Sultan* to go to the *Usbecks*, who were already settled in the Country of *Arall*, to prepare the Wood till they should come and set Fire to it: that these things giving them to understand that he was contriving some great Plot against them, he judged they had no other Course to take on this Occasion but to prevent him and secure his Person, desiring their Opinion thereon.

This Proposal of *Isphandiar Chan* having been approv'd of by all the Assembly, he caused the Gates of the Castle to be shut immediately, and sent to arrest *Abulgazi Sultan*; who far from thinking to defend himself against so many with his small Retinue of five or six Persons, was still fast asleep when they came to seize him. After which *Isphandiar Chan* set forward in Person with his Brother to carry him into *Persia*; but as soon as he arriv'd at *Jaurfurdi* he put him into the Hands of the Governor of that Town, and order'd him to send him under a strong Guard into *Persia*. The Governor of *Jaurfurdi*



*furdi*, not daring to trust his Prisoner with any body, went himself with him to *Hamadan*, where *Shah-sefi*\* of the *Persians*, who succeeded *Shah Hiabas Masi* in the Throne of *Persia*, was at that time; and that Prince order'd that he should be conducted immediately to *Ispahan*, where he assigned him a good House, and ten thousand *Tanga* a Year for his Expence; but at the same time he had him very carefully watch'd, that he might have no Opportunity of escaping.

*Abulgasi Sultan* having pass'd ten Years in that Condition, propos'd at length to three of his Domesticks whom they had always left about him, that provided they would be faithful to him, he did not despair of finding Means to escape; whereupon they all three declared that they desired no better than to return to their Country, and that he should always find them of undoubted Fidelity: Assured on that side, *Abulgasi Sultan*, who had form'd the Plan of his Design, called to him the Man who had the Guard of him that Day, and whose Friendship he had purchased for some time by means of Presents; and after he had order'd him to take a Horse, which had been sent him for his Kitchen, and carry to the Butcher in order that he should kill it, and send the Meat home; he said to him, here are a thousand *Tanga*, of which I make you a Present, go and buy yourself a pretty Slave, I give you leave to pass the Night with her, and

\* *Shah Sefi* was Grandson of *Shah Abbas the Great*, by *Sefi Mirsa* his eldest Son, which his too severe Father caused to be put to death on account of some Practices real or supposed, against his Person. *Shah Sefi* ascended the Throne of *Persia* in the Year 1629, at the Age of sixteen Years, and died in 1642. This was a Prince of much Vivacity and Wit; but he addicted himself too much to Cruelty and all sorts of Debaucheries, which sent him to his Grave in the Flower of his Age, after a Reign of 13 Years.



*Disguises  
himself  
and his  
Men.*

*Leaves  
Ispahan.*

*Comes to  
Bastam.*

in the Morning you shall give me an Account. His Man being gone very joyfully with that Sum of Money and the Horse, *Abulgasi Sultan* went in the Evening, with three of his Domesticks, and took eight Horses out of a neighbouring Stable, and brought them without Noise into his House: After which he caused the Beard of himself and his three Men to be shaved; and at the Entrance of the Night, when every body was laid down, he made one of his Domesticks put on his best Cloaths, who could speak the *Turkish* and *Persian*, because he was to represent the Master. He disguised also the second Domestick as a sort of Gentleman: he caused the third to put on a Garb suitable to a common Valet; and himself was in the Disguise of a Groom.

In this Equipage they lead the Horses very softly out of the House, and mounting at Midnight when they beat the Drum according to the usual Custom, they arrived at the Gate of the Town the very Moment it was opened; they afterwards continued their Journey very prosperously as far as *Bastam*, which they passed thorough in the Evening without any Accident; but three of their Horses failing on the other side of that Town, they were obliged to stop at a Village which was on the Road, and *Abulgasi Sultan* having learned from some People who were burying a Corpse near to it, that that Village was called *Boiish*, and that the Inhabitants of the Village were *Sagits*, he gave ten *Tanga* to one of them, ordering him to go and buy them Oats at the Village, and to learn at the same time if there were any of the Villagers who would exchange three Horses with them, which being too fat were not able to sustain the Fatigue of so bad a Journey. This Man being gone to the Village to execute his Commission, *Abulgasi Sultan*



*Sultan* follow'd him immediately with his People, and he among them, who pass'd for the Master of the rest, seating himself at the Entrance of the Village, upon a Carpet which the Man to whom they had given the Money had spread for that Purpose before the Gate, one of the Valets stood continually behind to wait on him, while the other held the Horses. In the mean time *Abulgasi Sultan* being enter'd into the Village to swap the three Horses which were tir'd, there gather'd above two hundred People about him, insomuch that it look'd like a Fair: he presently swap'd off two of them, but an old Man of seventy, with a long grey Beard, who happen'd to be among the Croud, began to suspect something upon *Abulgasi Sultan's* asking the *Sagitt*, at whose House they had lighted, which was the direct Road to the Village of *Magi*, which was known to none thereabouts but to the Inhabitants of that Village [*Boiish*] only; for leaving *Bastam*, one may take two different Roads, viz. the common high Road, and a short Road, which striking directly thro' the Mountains, joins the great Road two days Journey from thence.

*Is suspected at the Village of Boiish.*

The old Man giving Attention to *Abulgasi Sultan's* Question, spoke thus to the rest of the Villagers; " Friends, 'tis not for nothing that these Men inquire after the nearest way to the Village of *Magi*, which scarce one in ten of our selves know, and I have a strong fancy that this is the Sultan of the *Usbecks*, whom our *Shah* detains Prisoner, who having found a way to escape is going probably to *Samar-kant*; and as in case it be so, there will be infallibly Couriers after him to-morrow or next day, those who swap Horses with him will have a bad time of it; wherefore my Advice to you is, that you make him a Prisoner, and carry him to *Bastam*; or if you dare not

*Speech of one of the Villagers to the rest.*

" seize



Abulgazi  
Sultan's  
Answer.

“ feize him at least, don't exchange Horfes  
 “ with him.” Upon this Discourse *Abulgazi*  
*Sultan*, who understood perfectly the Language  
 of the Country, answer'd him, “ My good  
 “ old Man, I have listen'd a good while to  
 “ your imprudent Arguments without saying  
 “ any thing; but because 'tis impossible to bear  
 “ your Follies with Patience any longer, I must  
 “ tell you who we are: We are obliged to take  
 “ the shortest Road, because the *Shah* has late-  
 “ ly receiv'd News from the Frontiers of *Cho-*  
 “ *rassan*, importing, that the *Zagatais* having  
 “ besieged *Candabar*, and made an Irruption  
 “ into the Lands of *Bast*, our Troops which  
 “ are on the Frontiers have fought with them,  
 “ and receiv'd a Repulse; wherefore he has  
 “ sent Orders every where to assemble Troops  
 “ to oppose the Enemy,” pointing at the same  
 time to him who personated the Master:  
 “ Know you, says he, that the Lord who  
 “ sits there, is of the Nation of the *Zerkafs*,  
 “ and called *Mahamet Culi Beg*, and I am a  
 “ Native of *Ispahan*, of the Quarter called *Ha-*  
 “ *sana*; I lost my Father soon after I was born,  
 “ but my Mother is living still, and being very  
 “ aged, she said to me when I was upon my  
 “ Departure with this Master, whom I have  
 “ served these three Years; my Son, you may  
 “ remember that a Man of the Village of *Magi*  
 “ study'd twenty Years here at *Ispahan*, and  
 “ that all that time he dieted at my House; ever  
 “ since his Departure we heard from him duly  
 “ till within these five Years that he has for-  
 “ born writing to us; wherefore I desire you  
 “ may go to that Village to inquire if he be  
 “ still alive, and why he writes no more to us:  
 “ If he be dead, you shall make Commemo-  
 “ ration of his Soul in your Prayers; and if  
 “ you



“ you do not what I order you on this Occa-  
 “ sion, I will give you my Curse; therefore I  
 “ have prevailed on my Master to take this  
 “ Road, and this is a reason why I want to in-  
 “ form my self of the shortest way.” Where-  
 upon all those who heard *Abulgasi Sultan* an-<sup>The Villa-</sup>  
 swer'd unanimously, “ What you say is true,<sup>gers side</sup>  
 “ that Man has been hinder'd to write by a Fall<sup>with A-</sup>  
 “ from his Horse, stumbling under him, which<sup>bulgazi</sup>  
 “ broke one of his Legs, and that Misfortune<sup>Sultan.</sup>  
 “ has confined him to his Bed these two Years;  
 “ his Name is *Mullba Shab Aly*, and is a Man  
 “ very exemplary for his Honesty and Piety:  
 “ He has also told us very often, that while he  
 “ was at *Ispahan* performing his Studies, he  
 “ lodg'd with an old Woman, who had but  
 “ one Son.”

This Explanation having obliged the old Man <sup>His Ad-</sup>  
 to hold his Peace, tho he was still of his first O-<sup>venture</sup>  
 pinion, he went to the Valet of the Overseer of<sup>with a Va-</sup>  
 the Village, and bid him take Horse and go<sup>let.</sup>  
 tell his Master, “ That there were Deserters  
 “ there, and that he would do well to have  
 “ them seized.” The Valet being come up to  
*Abulgasi Sultan* just as he was about swapping the  
 third Horse, laid hold twice of the Bridle, say-  
 ing to him, “ You, Robber, where are you go-  
 “ ing?” Whereupon *Abulgasi Sultan* turning to-  
 wards him, asked him with a great deal of  
 Presence of Mind, whether he was serious in  
 what he said, or meant only to joke? But the  
 other replying that he was in downright earnest,  
*Abulgasi Sultan* said to him, “ Probably you  
 “ are weary of carrying a Nose; do you know  
 “ my Master who sits yonder, at the Entrance  
 “ of the Village; it is *Mahamet Culi Beg*, Bro-  
 “ ther of *Russuf*, one of the greatest Lords of  
 “ the *Shah's* Court, go speak to him a little,  
 “ and



“and if he does not cause your Nose to be cut  
 “off that Instant, then say I’m a Lyar.” Seeing  
 at the same time two cover’d Chariots with  
 several loaded Camels passing over the Plain at  
 some distance from the Village; “My Master,  
 “adds he, has no Heirs, and his Wife having  
 “this long time teiz’d him to let her go a  
 “Pilgrimage to the City of *Meshed* to the  
 “Tomb of the holy Man *Imam Ali Ufi Risa*,  
 “to see if she might not have Children by his  
 “Intercession, he is determin’d at last to car-  
 “ry her with him in that Journey;” and point-  
 ing to the Chariots and Camels which passed a-  
 long; “Observe those, says he; in the Cha-  
 “riot covered with green is my Master’s Wife,  
 “and in the other covered with yellow is one of  
 “his Friends; wherefore it will be your wisest  
 “way to speak so low that he may not under-  
 “stand your foolish Discourse; for upon hear-  
 “ing the least word of what you have said, he  
 “would send you to *Bastam* immediately, and  
 “have your Nose and Ears cropt off.” Upon  
 which the Valet clapping him gently upon the  
 Shoulder, desired him to be silent, saying,  
 What he did was only in Raillery: After which  
 he brought him a Present of a Basen full of  
 Figs, and begg’d Pardon for what had passed.

Abulgazi  
 Sultan  
*pursues his  
 Journey.*

*Abulgazi Sultan* having in the mean while  
 swap’d his third Horse, and informed himself  
 sufficiently about the Road, departed immediate-  
 from that Village with his pretended Master;  
 and having made great Expedition to pass the  
 Frontiers of *Chorassan*, he arrived at length in  
 the Neighbourhood of *Cara-cum*, at a Place  
 where he found two different Roads; and judg-  
 ing at first sight that one led to *Mankishlak*, and  
 the other to the Mountain of *Kuran*, he resolved  
 instead of keeping the Fields any longer, as he  
 had



had till then done, to avoid meeting much People, to enter the first Village he found on the Road to get Intelligence; arriving afterwards at a Village which was inhabited by *Turkmanns*, without his knowing it, he asked a Lad whom he saw near the Road what sort of People inhabited that Village; and the Boy having reply'd we are *Kifilafaks*; *Abulgasi Sultan* said to him, "How then came ye here, since you belong to *Mankishlak*?" To which the Boy answer'd, "That is true; but the *Callmaks* having driven us out of our Habitations three Years ago, we came to settle here, and did not build us Houses till this Year." After which *Abulgasi Sultan* inquiring who were their Neighbours, the Lad named five or six *Turkman* Families of the Tribe of *Irsari*, of *Abulgasi Sultan's* Acquaintance, which dwelt not far from thence. *Abulgasi Sultan* being extremely glad to find by what the Boy told him that he had pass'd out of the Dominions of the *Persians*, went directly to the Village, and making himself known to the Inhabitants, was receiv'd by them with extreme Joy, and at their Intreaty determin'd to pass the Winter with them; but as soon as Spring came he repair'd to the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Taka*, who dwell near the Banks of the River *Amu*, at the Foot of the Mountain of *Kuran*: With these last he staid two whole Years, and from thence he went to *Mankishlak*, where he found no more than seven hundred Families which were reduced under the Obedience of the *Callmaks*. The *Chan* of the *Callmaks* receiving an Account of the Arrival of *Abulgasi Sultan* in his Dominions, sent to him forthwith one of his principal Officers to invite him to his Court\*. *Part of Chowarazm in the hands of the Callmaks.*

[\* 'Twas at this time *Abulgasi Sultan* learned the Mogul Language, in which he wrote his History.]



*bulgasi Sultan* accepting of the Invitation, the *Chan* of the *Callmaks* received him kindly, and treated him with all imaginable Distinction the whole Year he remain'd with him; after which *Abulgasi Sultan* having form'd a Design of going to *Urgens*, he suffer'd him to depart with many Marks of Friendship and Regard.



## C H A P. XII.

*Of the Reign and Death of Abulgasi Chan.*

*Abulgazi Sultan* proclaimed *Chan* *An. Dom.* 1643. *An. Dom.* 1644. *An. Dom.* 1642. *An. Dom.* 1634.

**A** *Bulgasi Chan* arriving at *Urgens* in the Year 1053, (called *Gilan* or the Serpent) the *Turkmanns* proclaimed him *Chan* six Months after in the Country of *Arall*, towards the Entrance of the River *Amu*, into the Sea of *Masanderan*, which happen'd in the Year 1054, called *Choi* or the Sheep. *Shariph Mahamet Chan* his Brother died in the Year 1052. *Imam Culi Chan* of *Great Bucharria* died also during that time, and his Brother *Nadir Mahamet Chan* had assumed the Scepter after him. *Isphander Chan*, who was dead since the Year 1044, had left his two Sons called *Yusban Sultan*, and *Ashraf Sultan*, who was in possession of *Cajuk* and *Hassarassap*. *Abulgasi Chan* seeing himself secured in the Possession of the Towns of *Urgens* and *Vasir*, press'd the *Turkmanns* who dwelt within the Domains of the Princes his Nephews, to submit to him, but they absolutely refused to do it, and put themselves under the Protection of *Nadir Mahamet Chan* of *Great Bucharria*, after



after sending *Asbraf Sultan*, youngest Son of *Isphandiar Chan*, to the Court of the *Shah* of *Persia* to be brought up there: Upon which *Abulgasi Chan* having sent twice to pillage the Habitations of the Subjects of *Chajuk*, *Nadir* <sup>Abulgazi</sup> *Mahamet Chan* placed Commanders and strong <sup>Chan</sup> Garisons in the Towns of *Chajuk* and *Hassaras* <sup>marches to</sup> *sap*, and sent the Widow of *Isphandiar Chan* to <sup>attack</sup> *Chajuk*. dwell in the Country of *Kanski*; having afterwards conferr'd the Government of those two Towns, and the Lands of their Dependence, with all their Revenues, on his Grandson *Kasim Sultan*, Son of his eldest Brother *Chisseran Sultan*, *Abulgasi Chan* resolved to pay him a Visit: To this purpose, having in the Evening embark'd his Infantry in the Country of *Arall*, with Orders to reascend the River of *Kbesill* as far as the Bridge of *Tash Kupruck*, and wait for him there, he follow'd by Land with his Cavalry; but arriving at the Place of Rendezvous, he took only such few Infantry as he found had debark'd, and having order'd his Cavalry to wait in that Place for the rest of his Infantry, he advanced towards a Burrough not far from *Chajuk*, called *Candum*, where he arriv'd at Day-break; and passing a Brook which was betwixt him and *Chajuk*, he hid a hundred and eighty of his Men on his Left in a Valley, and with sixty Archers and twenty Musketeers advanced directly up to the Town, with Orders to his Men not to fire till they saw him fire first.

The Enemy perceiving that there was a <sup>The</sup> Party of the Troops of *Abulgasi Chan* in the <sup>Enemy</sup> Neighbourhood of the Town, made a Sally <sup>sally.</sup> upon them with a thousand Men, of whom there were seven hundred in Coats of Mail, tho there were not above five so accoutred in all



*Are put  
to flight.*

*Here Abul-  
gazi Chan  
ends his  
History.*

*Revolution  
in Great  
Bucharica.*

*An. Dom.  
1640.*

his Troop. *Abulgasi Chan*, without being dismay'd at the Numbers of his Enemies, drew them very dextrously to the Place where he design'd, and thus resolutely marching up to them, his Archers and Musketeers gave them so rude a Salutation at twenty Paces distance, that having drop'd many of them, the Enemy lost much of their first Fury; and those who lay hid in the Valley coming to charge them at the same time in flank, they fell into Confusion, and fled towards the Town, *Abulgasi Chan* who had only Infantry, not being able to pursue them; and as after this Action the Enemy kept themselves shut up within the Walls of the Town, *Abulgasi Chan* return'd to *Tashkupruk*, and having caused several Villages about *Chajuk* to be plunder'd, he sent his Troops into Quarters.

The Reader is to be inform'd that thus much of this Book hath been written by *Abulgasi Chan*, and that being hinder'd by a grievous Sicknes from finishing it intirely, he gave the Care of it at his Death to *Anissha Mahamet Bayadur Chan*; who, to obey his Father's Orders, has added that which follows.

Some time after *Nadir Mahamet Chan*, having recalled his Grandson *Kasim Sultan* from *Chajuk*, sent one of his Lords called *Yacup*, to *Hassarassap*, to take on him the Government of what he possessed in the Country of *Charass'm*: Upon which the *Turkmanns* who dwelt at *Chajuk*, and thereabouts, all retir'd to the Country of *Tarchan*; in the mean time *Nadir Mahamet Chan*, having been driven from the Throne by his vassal Lords, on account of his harsh Treatment of them, they set up his Son *Abdulasis Sultan* in his Place. Upon the News of this Revolution, *Abulgasi Chan* marching to *Chajuk* in the Year 1056, called *Tauk*, or the  
Hen,



Then, he found no difficulty to possess himself <sup>Abulgazi</sup> of it; after which he caused Proclamation to <sup>Chan</sup> be made that all the *Turkmanns* who had quitted <sup>takes Cha-</sup> their Habitations on account of the late Trou- <sup>juk.</sup> bles, might freely return home, upon his Promise never to think for the future of their past faults. Upon these Assurances, those of the *Turkmanns* who were dispersed about the Country on the other side of *Hassarassap*, sent to him three of their Chiefs called *Juslum Bayadur*, *Din Mahamet Onbegi*, and *Urus Onbegi*, at the Head of eight other Deputies from their Body, to represent to him that they were his oldest Servants, and that they had never submitted to any other Authority, after they had once promised him fealty at his Return from *Great Bucharria*: Lastly, that they believ'd they had reason to hope that he would receive them into his Favour. Upon which *Abulgazi Chan* gave them to understand in answer, that he was going to take Possession of *Hassarassap*, and that there all the *Turkmanns* who had sent them in quality of their Deputies might come to him to tender their Faith and Homage. Departing afterwards for *Hassarassap*, he caused his Tents to be set up before the Town, and the *Turkmanns* repairing thither according to his Orders, he sent them word, that intending next Day to give a great Feast, he desir'd they would provide his Kitchen on that occasion with Store of Milk, and all sorts of Beasts; which having been executed to his Satisfaction, <sup>Causes</sup> he treated them at first very splendidly; but to- <sup>2000</sup> wards the Evening, he caused them all to be <sup>Tur-</sup> kill'd, to the Number of 2000 Persons: and <sup>manns to</sup> after he had sent to plunder their Habitations, <sup>be killed</sup> he return'd to *Chajuk*, <sup>a Feast.</sup>



Gomada  
Awal.

*Abulgasi Chan*, not satisfy'd with extirpating these, went in the Month *Dsamadi* *Awall*, of the Year *It*, or the *Dog*, with some Troops to the Country of *Tarchan*, to find out the *Turkmanns* who had quitted *Chajuk* after the Departure of *Kasim Sultan*. At his Arrival in the Country of *Tarchan*, the greatest part of them fled to the Country of *Bamaburinak*; and the rest having been put to the Sword, he return'd to *Chajuk*. *Abulgasi Chan*, in the Year *Zizkan*, or the *Mouse*, entring into the Country of *Bamaburinak*, to dislodge the *Turkmanns* who had fled thither from the Country of *Tarchan*; those of them who knew not where else to go, sent their Wives and Children to the Country of *Arall*, and retrench'd themselves among the Ruins of some old Walls under the Command of one of their Chiefs called *Chabar Chodsa*, with a Resolution to sell their Lives dear. *Abulgasi Chan* finding them in this Situation, made them some Proposals of Accommodation; but as they durst not trust him, they resolv'd to march a foot out of their Intrenchments, and to throw themselves desperately upon the Troops of the *Chan*; but they were so well receiv'd, that not one of them escaped. The Day after this Action, *Abulgasi Chan* detach'd some of his Men towards the Country of *Arall*, in quest of the Wives and Children of the *Turkmanns*, who had lost their Lives on this Occasion, and return'd himself to *Chajuk*.

Callmaks  
defeated.

In the Year *Sigir*, or of the *Cow*, a Lord of the *Callmaks*, of the Tribe of the *Kurlauts*\*, being come with some Troops to *Kabt*, caused much People to be killed, and carry'd a great Number of the Inhabitants of that Town into

† The Tribe of the *Kurlauts*, is sprung from the *Mogulls*, according to what our Author relates, P. 53.

slavery,



slavery. Soon after another *Callmak* of Distinction, of the Tribe of the *Torgauts*\*, called *Boyan*, coming into the Country of *Charafs'm* to traffick, and with him several other Merchants of his Nation, *Abulgasi Chan* let them finish their Business quietly; but fifteen days after their Departure he set out in pursuit of them, and coming up with their Rear on the Frontiers of the Country of *Juguruk-bash*, he defeated them intirely: After which resting some Hours in that Place, to give his Men time to share the Booty, and his Horses to breathe, he went in pursuit of the Body of that Troop. At his Approach the *Callmaks* seeing no possibility of escaping him, resolv'd to give a vigorous Charge; but their Commander *Boyan*, having been wounded in the Shoulder in the beginning of the Action, and the Standard-bearer made Prisoner at the same time, Confusion seized them, and they all took themselves to flight with their Commander, leaving all their Effects a Prey to the Troops of *Abulgasi Chan*; after which that Prince return'd into his Dominions.

The chief of the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Abulgazi* the *Bairatzs*, called *Adi*, having always been Chan *cha-* an Enemy to *Abulgasi Chan*, he resolved in the *stifes the* Year *Tausbkan*, or the Hare, to go and chastise *Turk-* the *Turkmanns* of that Tribe, and put their *manns of* Chief to death. To that purpose, being on his *the Tribe* March with some Troops towards the River *of Bairatzs.* *Kurgan*, about which that Tribe had then their Habitations, he caused all the Villages which he could find of the *Bairatzs* to be intirely ruined; but that where their chief *Adi* resided was so well hid, that *Abulgasi Chan* employ'd se-

\* The Tribe of the *Torgauts*, is a Branch of the *Virats*; agreeable to what our Author relates, p. 41.



veral days in vain looking for it. Nevertheless, as he had caused all the Dwellings of the *Bairatzs* thereabouts to be destroy'd, his Men on that occasion fell into so great a scarcity of Bread, that a Horse was given for a small Loaf, which obliged several out of the Body of his Troops to desert. At length a Merchant of the Tribe of *Taka*, of the *Turkmanns*, called *Avanash*, having fallen into the Hands of a Party of the Troops of *Abulgasi Chan*, that Man who was perfectly acquainted with all the Passages leading to that Village, having gone often there on account of his Trade, conducted *Abulgasi Chan* and his Troops thither; and as *Adi* put himself in a Posture of Defence, he was kill'd in the Action by a Musket-shot, and his Village intirely demolish'd: After which *Abulgasi Chan* return'd to his usual Residence.

Chastises  
other  
Tribes of  
the Turk-  
manns.

*Abulgasi Chan* being resolv'd to reduce the *Turkmanns* so low, that they should not be able to make any Disturbance so easily for the future, he went in the Year *Gilan*, or the Serpent, to chastise the *Turkmanns* of the Tribe of *Gemergemilli*: and in the same Campaign he found occasion to chastise those of the Tribe of *Sarik*; not to mention several other Expeditions which he made on divers other Occasions against the *Turkmanns*, of which he kept no Account, because it was not worth the while.

Invasion  
of the  
Callmaks.

In the Year *Lu*, or of the Crocodile, three Lords of the *Callmaks* of the Tribe of the *Torgauts*, called *Mergan Taisba*, *Ochzutaba* and *Togull*, came with their Troops to make an Invasion upon the Lands of *Hassarassap*, and there intirely ruin'd a Village called *Jesdus*; being inform'd afterwards that there was much Cattle at another Village called *Danigan*, they went thither



thither likewise, and having taken a great Booty both of Prisoners and Cattle, they propos'd to return. *Abulgasi Chan*, who was inform'd that there were many Parties of *Callmaks* on the Frontiers, without knowing they had actually invaded his Territories, was come during these Transactions to *Hassarassap*, intending to make a Journey into *Great Bucharía*; but fearing lest the *Callmaks* should take Advantage of his Absence to fall upon his Dominions, he chang'd his Resolution and sent a Courier to *Abdulasis Chan* of *Great Bucharía*, advising him to be upon his guard, for that the *Callmaks* hover'd upon his Frontiers with strong Parties, and made terrible Havock wherever they came. That Courier having set forward to execute the *Chan's* Orders, learn'd at the Passage of a River which was in his Road, that the three above-mention'd Lords of the *Callmaks* were actually return'd with a considerable Booty which they had taken from the Subjects of his Master; upon which returning in great haste, he arrived ten days after his Departure with that News to *Abulgasi Chan*. Upon this Advice *Abul-*  
*gasi Chan* mounted Horse immediately to pursue them with all the Troops he could get together, notwithstanding all his Officers could do to dissuade him from that Enterprize, by representing to him the little likelihood there was of his coming up with the *Callmaks*, who were ten days March a head of him. Nevertheless *Abulgasi Chan* having travell'd Day and Night to recover what the *Callmaks* had gained of him, came up at length with their Rear-Guard near the Moun-

*Abulgazi Chan de-  
 feats a  
 Party of  
 Callmaks.*



Mountain *Irder*, and falling upon them on a sudden, slew some and took others Prisoners, but the greater part of them saved themselves by flight; understanding afterwards that the gross of the *Callmaks* was not so far advanced but they might yet be overtaken; he caused all the Prisoners to be slain, that they might not embarrass him on the Road, and put on in pursuit of their Comrades.

Overtakes  
another  
Party of  
the *Call-*  
*maks*.

The *Callmaks* seeing him approach them, and being willing to avoid coming to Blows with him, divided themselves into three Parties, who fled by three different Roads; but *Abulgasi Chan* continuing still to press upon them, at length overtook *Ocbzutaba* and *Togull*, two of the *Callmak* Lords in the Country of *Segei-rabat*, where they were so well intrenched, that it was impossible to force them: But as on the other side the *Callmaks* durst not sally forth to continue their Journey, they sent all the Booty they had taken on that Occasion, together with their Bows and Arrows to *Abulgasi Chan*, intreating him to pardon them for having destroyed the two Villages above-mentioned, in regard they did not know they belong'd to his Dominions; that their Design was to make an Invasion into *Great Bucharía*, and that it was only by straying out of the way that they came into his Territories; that they would give him their Oaths, not only never to return any more into his Dominions to do the least Damage, but more than that, if they ever came to know that any other Lords of their Nation took up Arms against him, they would immediately advertise him of it, and even assist him against them in case of need. Where-  
upon



upon *Abulgasi Chan* having called to mind <sup>Lets them</sup> that the *Callmaks* of that Tribe had never <sup>go un-</sup> incommoded the Subjects of his Dominions <sup>punished.</sup> before, he sent them their Arms, and suffer'd them to return home peaceably. At his Return, *Abulgasi Chan* rais'd *Jadigar Inak*, who till then had commanded at *Hassarassap*, to the Dignity of first Lord of his Court; and after he had loaded him with Presents, he carry'd him with him to *Chajuk*, and gave him the Name of *Jadigar Atalik*.

After these several Expeditions, *Abulgasi Subhan Chan* design'd to pass the rest of his days <sup>Culi</sup> in repose, and to regulate the Affairs within <sup>Chan of</sup> his Dominions, when *Subhan Culi Chan* of <sup>Balk,</sup> *Balk* sent an Ambassador to represent to him, <sup>craves As-</sup> that having neither Father nor Brother, he <sup>sistance of</sup> had recourse to him, who was to him in <sup>Abulgazi</sup> place of Father and Brother, in the streights <sup>Chan a-</sup> to which he saw himself reduced by *Abdula-* <sup>gainst A-</sup> *Chan*. <sup>bulaziz</sup> *sis Chan* of *Great Bucharía*, who had taken the Field in order to deprive him of the City of *Balk*, and to put him to death who was the lawful *Chan* \*; concluding, that he

\* The *Sieur Bernier* informs us, that during the Course of that War (between the Chans of *Great Bucharía* and of *Balk*) the *Chan* of *Great Bucharía*, called in on his side the *Great Mogull Shah Gehan* to his Assistance, and that that Monarch actually sent him a good Army under the Command of his Son *Aureng Zeb*; that with these Succours, *Abdulasis Chan* laid Siege to *Balk*; but when he was upon the Point of taking it, he conceived a Jealousy of *Aureng Zeb*, and suspecting that Prince might take a fancy to keep that Town to himself after it was taken, he struck up a Peace all of a sudden with the *Chan* of *Balk*, and sent back *Aureng Zeb*, with his Troops, into his own Country.

conjured



Abulgazi  
Chan in-  
vades  
Great Bu-  
charia.

conjured him to take Arms in his favour against *Abdulasis Chan*. *Abulgasi Chan* considering that *Subhan Culi Chan* was his near Relation, as being marry'd to his Niece, the Daughter of *Sbaripb Mahamet Chan*, and calling to mind at the same time the Treachery with which *Abdula Chan* of Great *Bucharia* had formerly treated the Princes of the Posterity of *Akattai Chan*, his Uncles and near Kinsmen, by putting them inhumanely to death, after he had drawn them by Fraud and false Promises out of the Town of *Vasir*, he thought fit to lend his Assistance to *Subhan Culi Chan*; and advancing in the Year *Koi*, or of the Sheep, with a strong Body of Troops into the Province of *Kogertlik*, which is situate upon the Frontiers of Great *Bucharia*, he detach'd one of his Officers called *Bik Aly Inak*, with a Body of ten thousand choice Men towards the Town of *Carakul*, which belongs to Great *Bucharia*, and went himself in Person to take the Town of *Siuntzbala*, which he caused to be intirely ruin'd, with thirty or forty Villages in the Neighbourhood of that Town; after which he return'd into the Country of *Kogertlik*, where three days after *Bik Aly Inak* came to join him with his Detachment, after having plunder'd the Town of *Carakul*.

Abulgazi  
Chan in-  
vades  
Great Bu-  
charia a  
second

*Abulgasi Chan* after that made a Tour to *Chajuk* to regulate some Domestick Affairs, and returning a while after towards the Frontiers of Great *Bucharia*, he made a second Invasion the same Year into the Lands subject to *Abdulasis Chan*. In this Expedition he went in Person to *Carakul*, which he caus'd



caus'd to be plunder'd a-new, because he found a great Number of the Inhabitants of that Town had return'd thither after the Departure of his Troops: From thence passing on to the Province of *Gordish*, the Lords who were charg'd with the Affairs of Government on the Frontiers, in the Absence of *Abdulasis Chan*, who was at *Carshi*, which also was under his Dominion, came to meet *Abulgasi Chan* with fifteen thousand Men, but he intirely defeated them, insomuch that scarce a thousand of them escaped, a great part of whom having thrown themselves into *Carakul*, *Abulgasi Chan* went in quest of them; and after slaying some of them, and making the rest Prisoners, he caused the few Houses which still remain'd in that Town to be burnt; after which he return'd into his Dominions.

In the Year *Bizin*, or the Ape, *Abulgasi Chan* went to take the Town of *Zardui* which belongs to *Great Buchar*<sup>Several In-vasions of</sup><sub>Abulgazi Chan into</sub><sup>Great Bu-</sup>charia; and after he had intirely ruin'd it, and plunder'd the Country round it, he return'd to *Chajuk*. In the Year *Tauk*, or the Hen, *Abulgasi Chan* having at the beginning of the Spring enter'd again into *Great Buchar*<sup>Several In-vasions of</sup><sub>Abulgazi Chan into</sub><sup>Great Bu-</sup>charia, went and ravag'd the Province of *Jaizi*, which extends from the Town of *Carakul*, to that of *Nersem*, and having taken much Booty, was return'd with a great Number of Prisoners upon his own Frontiers; at the same time that *Abdulasis Chan*, accompany'd with *Kasim Sultan*, was on the March with a numerous Army towards the Country of *Kogertlik* to give him a Diversion; but upon the News which he heard of *Abulgasi Chan's* Return to *Charass'm*,



Carmina.

*rafs'm*, he retired with so much Precipitation, that many of his Men kill'd their Horses, tho no one had Thoughts of pursuing them. In the mean time *Abulgasi Chan* being returned to *Chajuk*, where he had taken a Turn after the Retreat of the Enemies Troops, he made this same Year a second Invasion into *Great Bucharja*, and having taken the Town of *Carmina*, gave it to be pillaged, and returned with considerable Booty and many Prisoners; but in his Retreat, having passed a River over a Bridge which he found there, he caused his Tents to be set up on this side the River, and believing himself very secure in this Place, he order'd that all the loaded Camels and Horses, as well as all the Booty, Cattle, and in general all the Baggage of the Army should begin to march at Midnight, and that the Army should follow at break of Day: After which he laid himself down to rest peaceably, keeping about his Person no more than his usual Guard of a hundred Men, tho his Army consisted of above twenty five thousand.

Abdolaziz  
Chan o-  
vertakes  
Abulgazi  
Chan:

Next Morning, some Hours after his Army had decamp'd, one of his principal Officers called *Chodsam Birdi Atalik*, enter'd into his Tent, and finding him still fast asleep, cry'd to him, "Rise, Sir; is this a time to sleep here?" But the *Chan* made answer, "Who is it that you would have me afraid of, since we have not heard of any Enemies Troops in all this Province?" At the same time one came to inform *Abulgasi Chan* that Troops of the Enemy appear'd on the other side of the River, and in reality it was *Abdulasis Chan*, who was arriv'd at the Head of



of all his Army ; for a Beggar who sat by the way-side, when *Abulgasi Chan* was marching towards *Carmina*, and to whom the *Chan* caused an Alms which he asked to be given, hastened to *Abdulasis Chan*, after the Army of *Abulgasi Chan* was pass'd, and inform'd him that that Prince was advanced with a Body of twenty five thousand Men to take *Carmina* ; whereupon *Abdulasis Chan* began his March that way immediately with his whole Army. *Abulgasi Chan* seeing the Enemy draw towards him, retir'd leisurely towards his Troops, which were employ'd about passing a little marshy Brook ; and in the March he sent Orders to his Commanders, that they should make an end of getting over the Baggage, but that the Troops should halt on this side the Rivulet.

In the mean time all the Enemy's Army, *Abulgazi* to the Number of sixty thousand Men, pursued him closely, and a thousand Horsemen <sup>Chan encountered</sup> in Coats of Mail detach'd from the Body <sup>1000</sup> of the Army, began to press him at the <sup>Horse with 100 Men.</sup> Heels : Upon which *Abulgasi Chan* having gained a Pass which was before him, lighted off his Horse, and made the hundred Horsemen who were with him do the same, to the end they might be better able to make use of their Muskets, with which they were armed. At the same time, he commanded him who carry'd the Ensign to advance in haste towards his Army, the greatest part of which had already passed the Brook, and to cause the Trumpet to sound that they might return : After which he detach'd *Jadigar Atalik*, with thirty Men, to go charge the thousand



*Bravery of*  
*Anushah*  
*Moham-*  
*med Sol-*  
*tān.*

thousand Horsemen of the Enemy at the Entrance of the *Defile*, while he stood ready to support him in Person with the rest of his Men, in case he should be press'd too hard. *Jadigar Atalik* executed those Orders with so much Conduct, that having at first stunn'd the Enemy by a clever Discharge which he caused to be made upon them near hand, he knew so well afterwards how to manage his small Forces, sometimes retiring, sometimes advancing on the Enemy as Occasion served; that he disputed the Passage of that Defile till such time as *Anusha Mahamet Bayadur Sultan*, Son of *Abulgasi Chan*, who was but fourteen Years of Age, coming to his Father's Assistance at the Head of six hundred Horsemen, with three hundred Foot Soldiers behind them, *Abulgasi Chan* found himself in a Condition to march out of the Pass to receive them: But as in the interim the Enemy's Army had time to approach, those thousand Horsemen were soon supported by a great Body of Troops; which having surrounded *Abulgasi Chan* on all sides, would doubtless have mauled him severely, if he had not given four hundred choice Men to his Son *Anusha Mahamet Bayadur Sultan*, with Orders to fall furiously upon the Right of a great Squadron, which block'd up the Road from their Army, while he went in Person at the Head of six hundred Men which remained with him, to throw himself upon the Left of the same Squadron; which was executed with so much Success, that having each of them on their respective sides forced the Enemy's Troops,



Troops, they made their way thro' the midst of them, and happily rejoined their Army; which upon the Report of the Danger the *Chan* was in, advanced with speed to deliver him from it.

As soon as *Abulgasi Chan* had put him-<sup>The two</sup>self at the Head of his Army, he caused it <sup>Armies</sup>to advance forthwith under the Command <sup>engage.</sup>of his Son *Anusba Mahamet Bayadur Sultan*, to attack the Enemy's Army, which began already to appear; and as soon as the rest of his Troops arriv'd, he made them advance to the Right and Left of his Son, in order to sustain him. Then the Engagement becoming general, they fought a long time with equal Fortune; but at length the juvenile Courage of *Anusba Mahamet Bayadur Sultan*, who tho it was the first time he was at such an Entertainment, bore down every thing that stood before him, having turn'd the Balance on *Abulgasi Chan's* side, <sup>Abd al</sup>the Army of *Abdulasis Chan* was beaten, not <sup>Aziz</sup>withstanding its great Superiority, and the <sup>Chan</sup>victorious Troops pursued it as far as the <sup>routed.</sup>above mentioned River. The Rout of the Enemy was so signal on this Occasion, that a great Number of them who could not gain the Bridge, drown'd themselves in the River; and *Abdulasis Chan* himself, tho very much wounded, was obliged to pass the River by swimming, to avoid falling into the Hands of the Vanquisher. After putting an end to the Campaign so gloriously, *Abulgasi Chan* return'd to *Chajuk*, with a great Number of Prisoners which he had taken in this Action from the Enemy. On



his Arrival in that Town, he gave a splendid Feast to all the Lords and great Officers of his Dominions; and after he had in publick greatly commended the Valour which his Son had shewn in the last Battle, he resigned to him the Town of *Hassarassap*, and gave him Subjects in proportion to enable him to defend it.

Abulgazi  
Chan in-  
vades  
Great Bu-  
charia, and  
takes War-  
danfi.

In the Year *It*, or of the Dog, *Abulgazi Chan* having again enter'd into *Great Bucharia*, went and took the Town of *Wardan-  
danfi*; and after he had caused it to be sack'd, he return'd loaden with Booty and Prisoners into his Dominions. In the Year *Bars*, or

Advances  
to the  
Walls of  
Buchara.

the Tyger, he return'd a-new into *Great Bucharia*; and advancing to the very Walls of *Buchara*, the Capital of all the Country, he caused all the Villages of the Territory of that Town to be destroy'd: After which he went and incamp'd before one of the Gates of the City called *Namosga*, which is always shut, except on great Festival days, with a Design to attempt taking of it; but reflecting afterwards that there would be no Glory in making himself Master of the Town, in the Absence of the *Chan* who was at *Samarkant*, and at a time when there were none but Women and *Tadsiks*, or *Burghers*, in the Town, he laid aside the Design till another Opportunity, and return'd into his own Dominions with much Booty and Prisoners.

Makes  
Peace  
with  
Abd al-  
Aziz  
Chan.

*Abulgazi Chan* having by this time arriv'd at the Age of sixty Years, began to consider that there was Blood enough shed to satisfy the Passion of revenging the Murder of the Princes of his House, committed by *Abdula Chan*;



*Chan*; and that whatever Advantage might accrue to him by continuing the War against *Abdulasis Chan*, it would be acting entirely against the Dictates of his Conscience; any more to persist in giving Disturbance to a Prince who was of the same Religion with himself, while he could more usefully employ his Arms against the *Callmaks* and *Persians*. Guided by these Sentiments, he sent Ambassadors to *Abdulasis Chan* with Proposals of Peace: and as *Abdulasis Chan* desir'd no better than to see an end to so unfortunate a War, and to rid himself the best he could of an Enemy who carry'd Fire and Sword to the very Gates of his Residence, he readily agreed to the Conditions of Peace; and upon the Report which the aforesaid Ambassadors made at their Return to *Chajuk*, to *Abulgasi Chan* of the Success of their Commission, he resolv'd to live ever after in good Friendship with *Abdulasis Chan*; and having recalled all his Troops from the Frontiers of *Great Bucharica*, he sent them towards the Borders of the Country of *Chorassan*. After which *Abulgasi Chan* \* seeing his Dominions in Peace, resigned the Throne to his Son *Anussha Mahamet Bayadur Sultan*, with a Design to spend the rest of his days in serving God; but he died not long after

*Resigns the Kingdom to his Son Anusshah Moham-med.*

\* 'Tis the Posterity of this Prince which reigns at present in *Charafs'm*; for it was his Grandson *Hadsi Mahamet Bayadur Chan*, who sent in the Year 1714, a Minister to *Petersburg* to treat of an Alliance with the Court of *Russia*, notwithstanding we know that there has happen'd since then another Revolution in the Government of that Country, without being yet informed of the Circumstances of that Change.



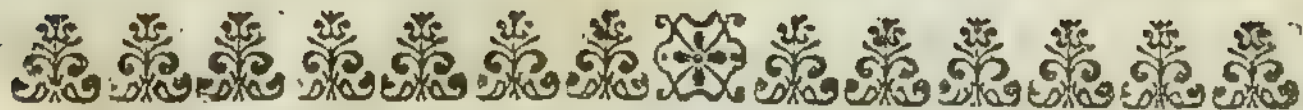
*An. Dom.* in the Month of *Ramesan*, of the Year 1074,  
 1663. called *Tausbkan*, or the Hare, after he had  
 reigned twenty Years.

I *Anusba Mahamet Bayadur Chan*, have put  
 the last Hand to this Book at *Chajuk*, in the  
*A.D.* 1665. Year 1076, called *Gilan*, or the Serpent; and  
 I have been obliged to do it my self, because  
 there are very few Persons of Learning in  
 our Provinces.

*The End of the First Volume.*

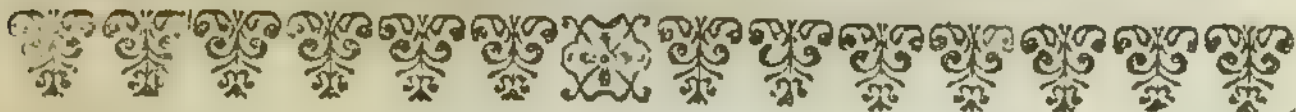






The Reader is desired, before he begins, to correct the following  
E R R A T A.

PAG. 3. for *Safi Jula* in the Margin, r. *Safi Allah*. l. 5. instead of, of the  
Turf, r. Mold; and l. 6. instead of *Earth of the Turf*, r. *Mold of the Earth*.  
P. 46. l. 15. dele *that*. P. 60. l. 3. dele *Chan*. P. 65. l. 3. for *were*, r. *we*  
*are*. P. 123, and 141. for *Gaznehen* in the Margin, r. *Gaznin*, or *Gazna*.  
P. 130. l. 28. for *Kiasudin*, r. *Kiyâsadin*. P. 134. l. 16. for *Mern*, r. *Merv*.  
P. 135. for *Abascum* in the Margin, r. *Aboskun*, or *Abosghun*. P. 143. r. *Dasht*  
for *Dashté*. P. 172. last Line, for 2372, r. 1372. in the first Note, after the  
same, r. *tho not*. P. 187. take away the \* l. 28. and set it after *Ulseitu*. l. 19.  
P. 194. l. 12. for *Uresses*, r. *Urusses*. P. 206. l. 38. for *Tatars*, r. *People of*  
*Tatary*. P. 208. l. 21. for *Kutleg*, r. *Kutlek*. P. 219. l. 34. for *Subjeét*, r.  
*Subjects*. P. 223. insert at the bottom, [*Title of Sofi is improper. See p.*  
*730.*] P. 254. l. 37. for *Suttan*, r. *Sultan*, or *Soltân*. P. 294. l. 17.  
for *Mahamet*, r. *Mahamut*. P. 300. l. 35. after *Mahamut Sultan*, make a  
Comma. P. 325. l. 18. for *Kumkula*, r. *Kumkala*. P. 331. l. 31. for *Sim-*  
*sanzi*, r. *Simfauzi*. l. 32. for *Bukbendu*, r. *Bukbendun*. P. 332. l. 24. dele  
*the Mother of*. P. 357. l. 8. after *Chan*, insert *with her eldest Son*. l. 13. for  
*Brother*, r. *Son*. P. 365. for *Abulaxiz* in the Margin, r. *Abd al Axiz*.





BOOKS Printed for J. and J. Knapton, J. Darby, A. Bettefworth, F. Fayram, J. Osborn and T. Longman, J. Pemberton, C. Rivington, F. Clay, J. Batley, and A. Ward.

F O L I O.

**D**O MAT's Civil Law, in its Natural Order, 2 Vol. both large and small Paper.

Bridgman's Conveyancer, 2 Vol.  
Tyrrel's *Bibliotheca Politica*, both large and small Paper.

Lestranger's *Josephus*, with Maps and Cuts.

Montfaucon's *Travels into Italy*, with Cuts.

Moll's *Geography*, with Maps.

Moral Virtue delineated, both in *French* and *English*, with Cuts.

ABp. Tillotson's Works, 3 Vol.

Bp. Patrick's Commentary on the Historical Books of the Old Testament, 2 Vol.

Dr. Scott's *Christian Life Compleat*.

Pufendorf's *Law of Nature and Nations*, with M. Barbeyrac's Preface at large.

Wood's *Institutes of the Laws of England*, together with his Thoughts on the same.

Jacob's *Law Dictionary*.

Q U A R T O.

Shakespear's Works, 7 Vol. publish'd by Mr. Pope and Dr. Sewel.

Tournefort's *Voyage to the Levant*, 2 Vol. with Cuts.

Stephens's *Spanish Dictionary*, 2d Edit.

Boyer's *French Dictionary*, both Quarto and Octavo.

O C T A V O.

*Acta Regia*, or Mr. Rapin's Account of *Rymer's Fœdera*, 4 Vol.

Abridgment of the Statutes, 6 Vol.

Antiquities of *Westminster*, 2 Vol. with Cuts.

Bailey's *English Dictionary*, 4th Edit.

—his Translation of *Erasmus's Colloquies*.

Boileau's Works in *English*, 3 Vol.

Bruyere's *Characters*, 2 Vol.

Betterton's *Life*, with the Amorous Widow, or Wanton Wife.

Blackmore's *Ecclesiastical Antiquities*, 2 Vol. Abridg'd from Bingham.

Cooke of *Forest-Trees*, 3d Edit.

Cocker's *Decimal Arithmetick*, 6th Edit.

Critical History of the Nobility.

Calamy Benj. his Volume of Sermons, 6th Edit.

Collier's *Antoninus*, 3d Edit.

Du Pin's *Method of studying Divinity*.

Di's *Midwifery*.

The Works of Mons. St. Evremond, publish'd M. Des Maizeaux, 3 Vol. 2d Edit.

Bp. Fleetwood's Sermons, on Relative Duties, 3d Edit.

Hutcheson's *Inquiry into the Ideas of Beauty and Virtue*, 3d Edit.

—Essay on the Nature and Conduct of the Passions.



